# TABLE OF CONTENTS


| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | **Before driving** | Adjusting and operating features such as door locks, mirrors, and steering column. |
| 2 | **When driving** | Driving, stopping and safe-driving information. |
| 3 | **Interior features** | Air conditioning and audio systems, as well as other interior features for a comfortable driving experience. |
| 4 | **Maintenance and care** | Cleaning and protecting your vehicle, performing do-it-yourself maintenance, and maintenance information. |
| 5 | **When trouble arises** | What to do if the vehicle needs to be towed, gets a flat tire, or is involved in an accident. |
| 6 | **Vehicle specifications** | Detailed vehicle information. |
| | **Index** | Alphabetical listing of information contained in this manual. |

RX350_270_EE_48D77E.book 2 ページ ２０１４年１月２４日 金曜日 午前１０時４分



For vehicles with a navigation system, refer to the "Navigation System Owner's Manual" for information regarding the equipment listed below.

- Navigation system
- Air conditioning controls
- Windshield wiper de-icer
- Lexus parking assist monitor
- Audio/video system
- Rear window and outside rear view mirror defogging

## 1 Before driving


**1-1. Key information**

Keys ..... 26

**1-2. Opening, closing and locking the doors**

Smart entry & start system ..... 31
Wireless remote control ..... 53
Side doors ..... 56
Back door ..... 60

**1-3. Adjustable components (seats, mirrors, steering wheel)**

Front seats ..... 73
Rear seats ..... 77
Driving position memory ..... 81
Head restraints ..... 87
Seat belts ..... 89
Steering wheel ..... 94
Anti-glare inside rear view mirror ..... 96
Outside rear view mirrors ..... 98

**1-4. Opening and closing the windows and moon roof**

Power windows ..... 101
Moon roof ..... 104
Electronic sunshade ..... 108

**1-5. Refueling**

Opening the fuel tank cap ..... 110

**1-6. Theft deterrent system**

Engine immobilizer system ..... 115
Double locking system ..... 121
Alarm ..... 122

**1-7. Safety information**

Correct driving posture ..... 129
SRS airbags ..... 131
Child restraint systems ..... 142
Installing child restraints ..... 152
Airbag manual on/off system ..... 163

## 2 When driving


### 2-1. Driving procedures

Driving the vehicle ..... 168
Engine (ignition) switch ..... 180
Automatic transmission ..... 186
Turn signal lever ..... 193
Parking brake ..... 194
Horn ..... 195

### 2-2. Instrument cluster

Gauges and meters ..... 196
Indicators and warning lights ..... 198
Multi-information display ..... 203
Head-up display ..... 212

### 2-3. Operating the lights and windshield wipers

Headlight switch ..... 217
Fog light switch ..... 222
Windshield wipers and washer ..... 223
Rear window wiper and washer ..... 227
Headlight cleaner switch ..... 229

### 2-4. Using other driving systems

Cruise control ..... 230
Dynamic radar cruise control ..... 234
Lexus parking assist-sensor ..... 248
Electronically modulated air suspension ..... 256
Rear view monitor system ..... 263
Driving assist systems ..... 271
All-wheel drive lock switch ..... 277
Hill-start assist control ..... 278
Pre-Crash Safety system ..... 280

### 2-5. Driving information

Utility vehicle precautions ..... 289
Cargo and luggage ..... 293
Winter driving tips ..... 296
Trailer towing (RX350) ..... 300
Trailer towing (RX270) ..... 311

RX350_270_EE_48D77E.book 4 ページ ２０１４年１月２４日 金曜日 午前１０時４分



## 3 Interior features


### 3-1. Using the air conditioning system and defogger

Automatic air conditioning system ..... 314
Rear window defogger switch ..... 321
Windshield wiper de-icer ..... 322

### 3-2. Using the audio system

Audio system ..... 323
Using the radio ..... 326
Using the CD player ..... 330
Playing MP3 and WMA discs ..... 337
Operating an iPod ..... 344
Operating a USB memory ..... 353
Bluetooth® audio system ..... 361
Using the Bluetooth® audio system ..... 366
Operating a Bluetooth® enabled portable player ..... 369
Setting up a Bluetooth® enabled portable player ..... 372
Bluetooth® audio system setup ..... 376
Optimal use of the audio system ..... 377
Using the AUX port ..... 379
Using the steering wheel audio switches ..... 381
Hands-free system for mobile phones ..... 384
Using the hands-free system (for mobile phones) ..... 391
Making a phone call ..... 397
Setting a mobile phone ..... 401
Security and system setup ..... 405
Using the phone book ..... 411

### 3-3. Using the interior lights

Interior lights list ..... 417
• Interior lights ..... 418
• Personal lights ..... 418

### 3-4. Using the storage features

List of storage features ..... 420
• Glove box ..... 421
• Bottle holders/ door pockets ..... 422
• Cup holders ..... 423
• Console box ..... 426
• Coin holder ..... 427
• Auxiliary box ..... 428
• Under tray ..... 429

### 3-5. Other interior features

Sun visors ..... 430
Vanity mirror ..... 431
Clock ..... 432
Outside temperature display ..... 433
Multi-display light control ..... 434
Power outlets ..... 435
Heated steering wheel ..... 437
Seat heaters and ventilators ..... 439
Armrest ..... 441
Coat hooks ..... 442
Assist grips ..... 443
Floor mat ..... 444
Luggage compartment features ..... 446

## 4 Maintenance and care

### 4-1. Maintenance and care

Cleaning and protecting the vehicle exterior ..... 452
Cleaning and protecting the vehicle interior ..... 455

### 4-2. Maintenance

Maintenance requirements ..... 458

### 4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

Do-it-yourself service precautions ..... 461
Hood ..... 465
Positioning a floor jack ..... 466
Engine compartment ..... 468
Tires ..... 483
Tire inflation pressure ..... 495
Wheels ..... 497
Air conditioning filter ..... 499
Electronic key battery ..... 501
Checking and replacing fuses ..... 504
Light bulbs ..... 516

RX350_270_EE_48D77E. book　6 ページ　２０１４年１月２４日　金曜日　午前１０時４分



## 5 When trouble arises


### 5-1. Essential information

Emergency flashers ..... 532
If your vehicle needs to be towed ..... 533
If you think something is wrong ..... 541
Fuel pump shut off system ..... 542

### 5-2. Steps to take in an emergency

If a warning light turns on or a warning buzzer sounds... ..... 543
If a warning message is displayed ..... 552
If you have a flat tire ..... 572
If the engine will not start ..... 587
If the shift lever cannot be shifted from P ..... 589
If you lose your keys ..... 590
If the electronic key does not operate properly ..... 591
If the vehicle battery is discharged ..... 594
If your vehicle overheats ..... 598
If the vehicle becomes stuck ..... 601
If your vehicle has to be stopped in an emergency ..... 603


## 6 Vehicle specifications


### 6-1. Specifications

Maintenance data (fuel, oil level, etc.) ..... 606
Fuel information ..... 620

### 6-2. Customization

Customizable features ..... 622

### 6-3. Initialization

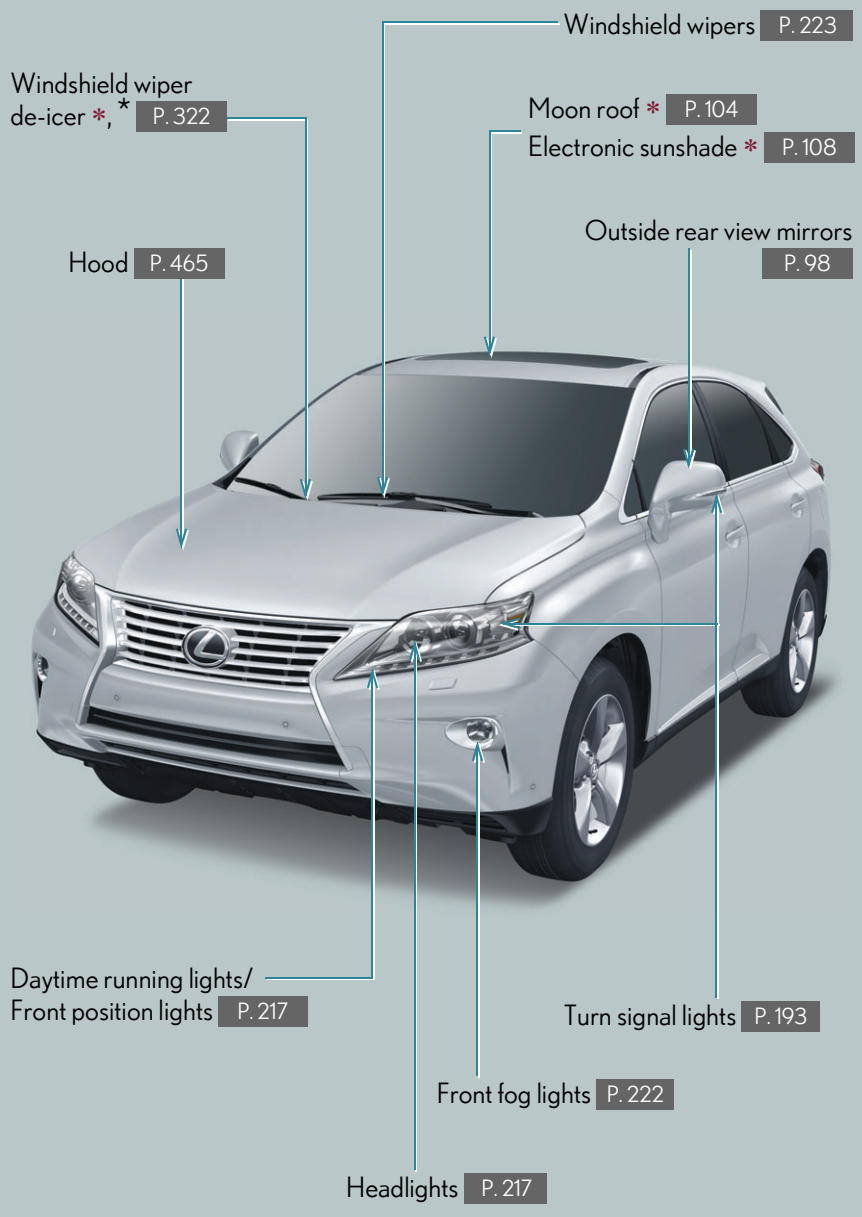
Items to initialize ..... 633

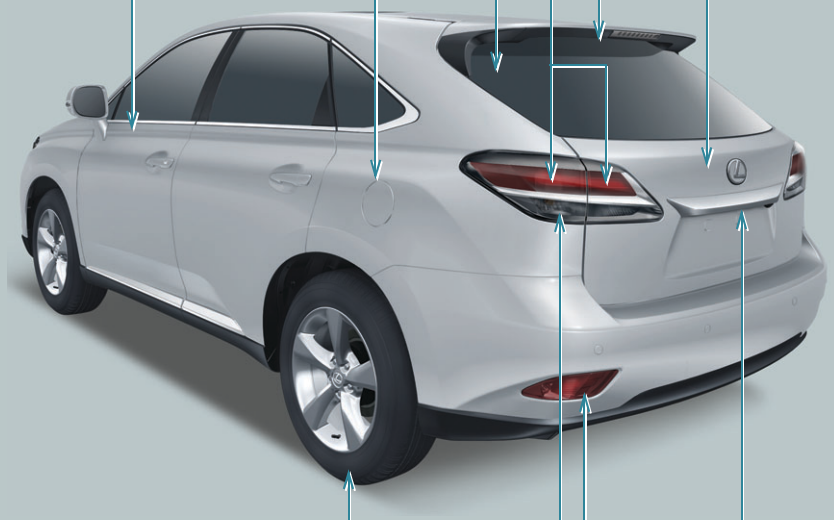

## Index


Abbreviation ..... 636
Alphabetical index ..... 637
What to do if... ..... 650

# Pictorial index

## Exterior



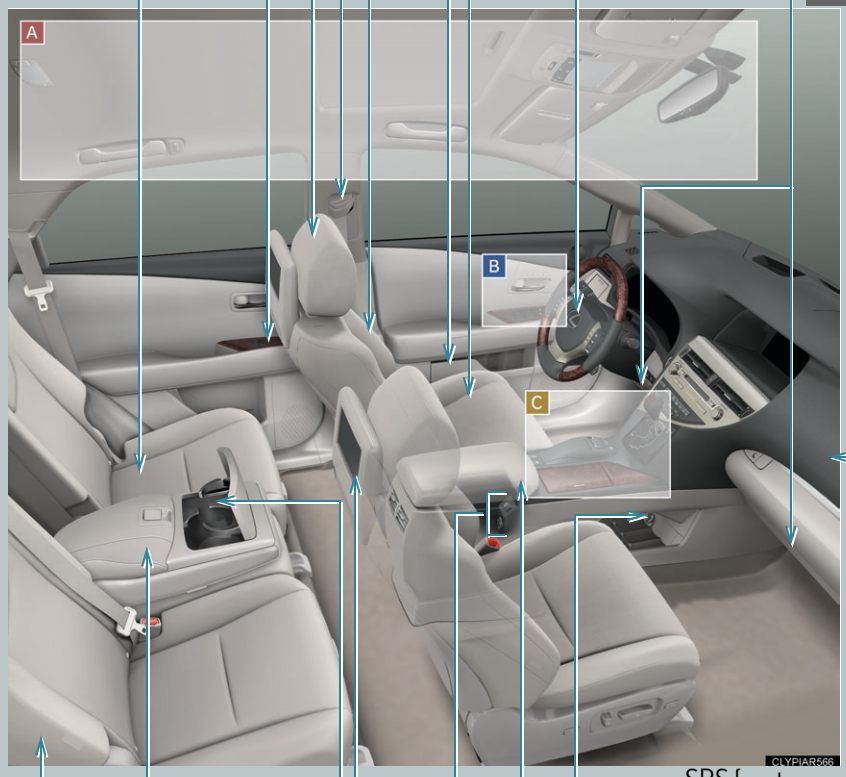



*: If equipped

*: For vehicles with a navigation system, refer to the “Navigation System Owner’s Manual”.

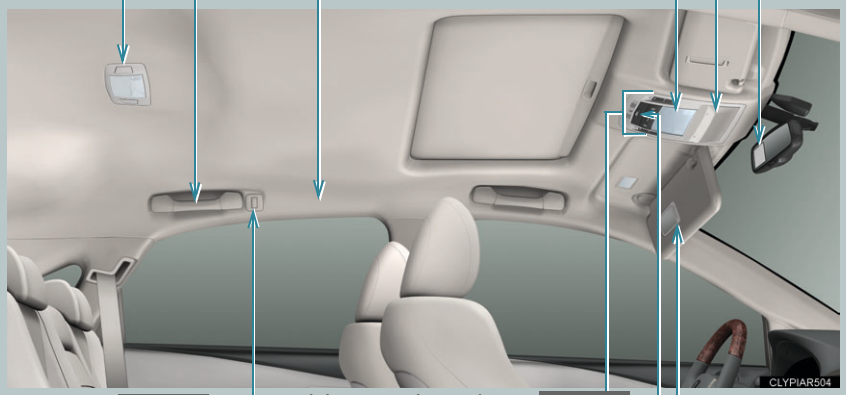
# Pictorial index

## Interior



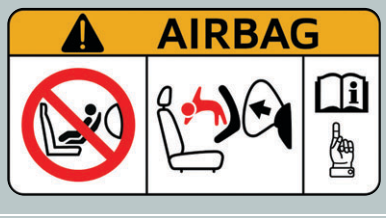

Front SRS side airbags P. 131
Seat belts P. 89
Head restraints P. 87
Power window switches P. 101
Rear seats P. 77
Door pockets P. 422
Bottle holders P. 422
Front seats P. 73
SRS driver airbag P. 131
SRS knee airbags P. 131
Armrest P. 441
Auxiliary box * P. 428
Rear SRS side airbags P. 131
Cup holders P. 423
Rear seat entertainment system *, *2
SRS front passenger airbag P. 131
Power outlet P. 435
Console box P. 426
Power outlet P. 435
AUX port P. 379
USB port *1 P. 344, 353

A

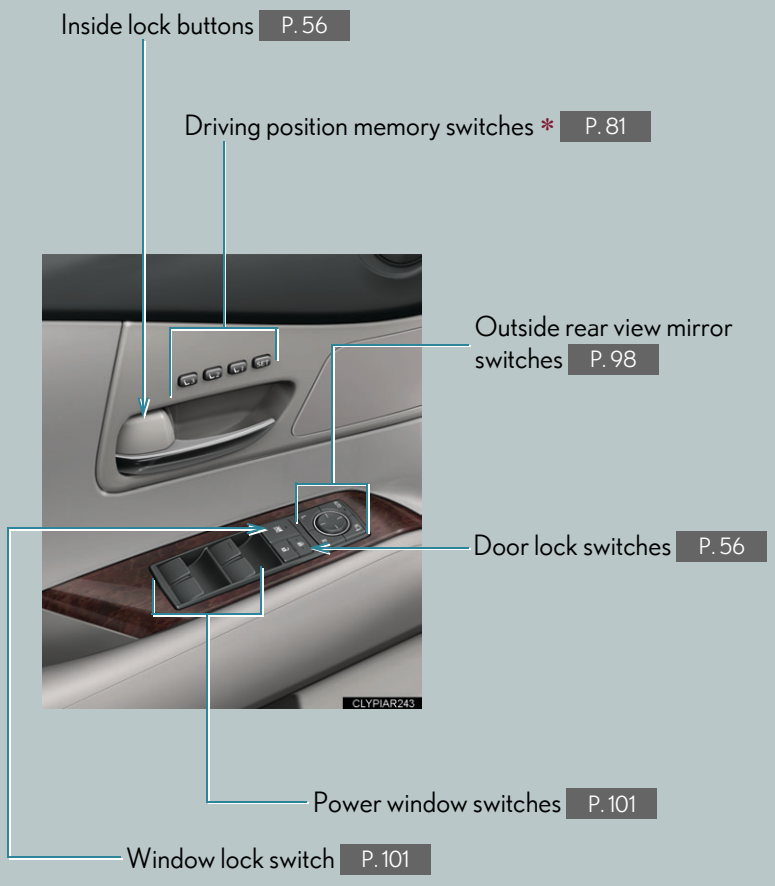



Interior lights P. 418
Personal lights P. 418
Anti-glare inside rear view mirror P. 96
Rear view monitor system * P. 263
Auxiliary box * P. 428
Assist grips P. 443
Interior lights P. 418
Personal lights P. 418
SRS curtain shield airbags P. 131
Coat hooks P. 442
Moon roof switches * P. 104
Electronic sunshade switches * P. 108
Intrusion sensor and tilt sensor cancel switch * P. 122
Sun visors *3 P. 430
Vanity mirrors P. 431

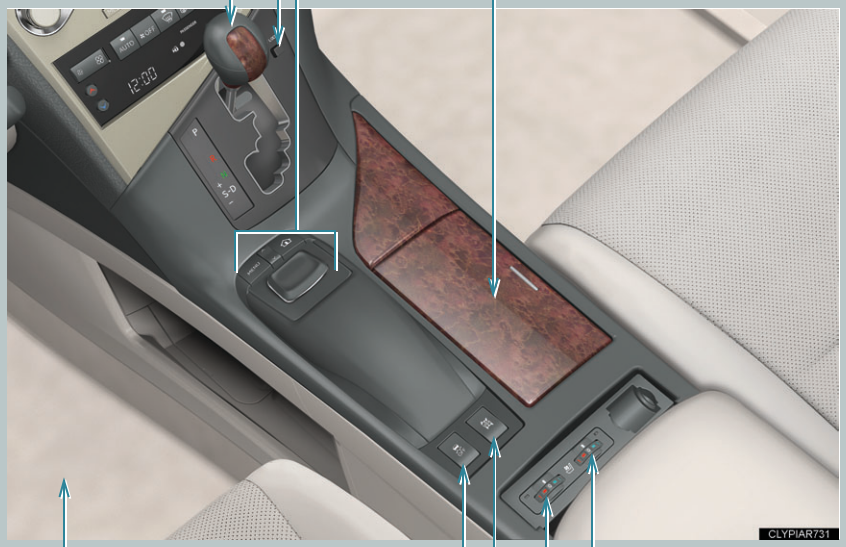
*: If equipped
*1: For vehicles with a navigation system, refer to the “Navigation System Owner’s Manual”.
*2: Refer to the “Navigation System Owner's Manual”.
*3: NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur. (→P. 161)



B


Inside lock buttons P. 56
Driving position memory switches * P. 81
Outside rear view mirror switches P. 98
Door lock switches P. 56
Power window switches P. 101
Window lock switch P. 101
CLYPIAR243

C




*: If equipped
*: Refer to the “Navigation System Owner's Manual”.

# Pictorial index

## Instrument panel

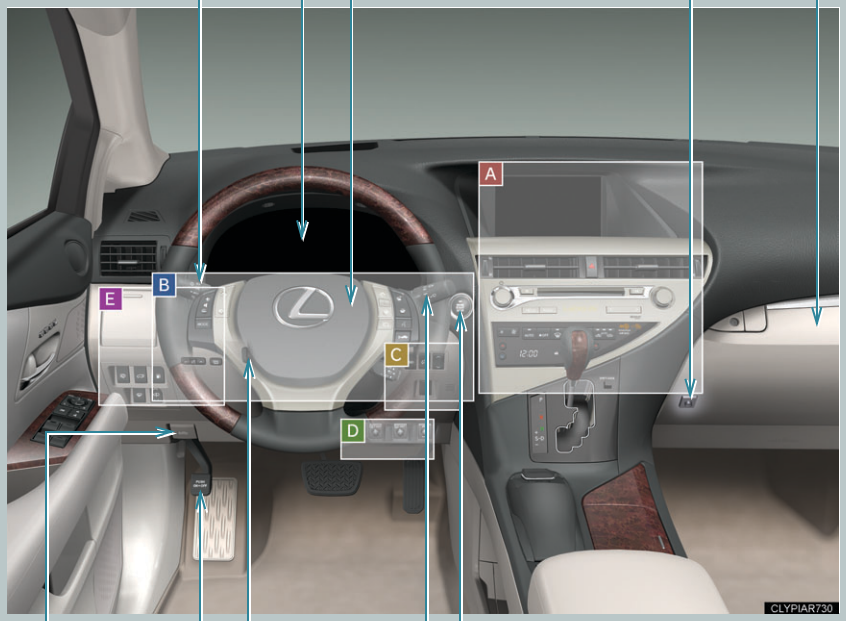
Headlight switch P. 217
Turn signal lever P. 193
Fog light switch P. 222

Glove box P. 421

Power back door main switch * P. 62

Gauges and meters P. 196
Multi-information display P. 203

Horn P. 195




Engine (ignition) switch P. 180

Hood lock release lever P. 465

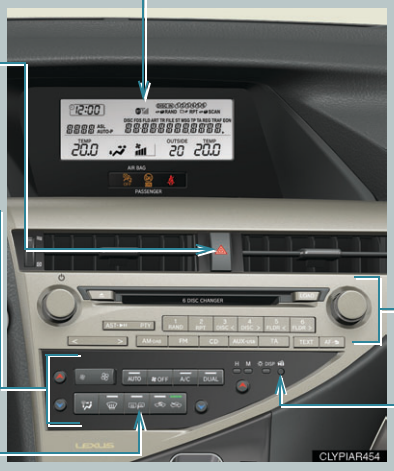
Windshield wipers and washer switch P. 223
Rear window wiper and washer switch P. 227

Tilt and telescopic steering control switch P. 94

Parking brake pedal P. 194

A

▶ **Without navigation system**




Multi display
- Display light control P. 434
- Outside temperature display P. 433
- Clock P. 432
- Air conditioning display P. 314
- Audio display P. 323

Emergency flasher switch P. 532

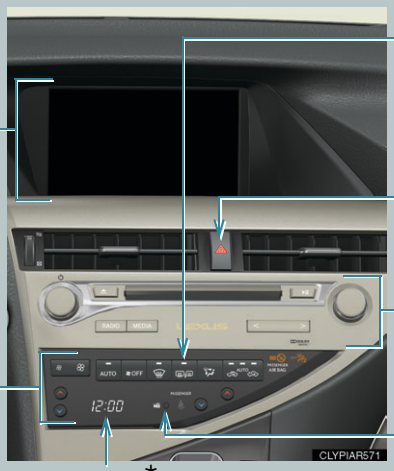
Air conditioning system P. 314

Rear window and outside rear view mirror defogger switch P. 321

Audio system P. 323

Security indicator P. 115, 122

▶ **With navigation system**




Rear window and outside rear view mirror defogger switch*

Navigation system*

Emergency flasher switch P. 532

Air conditioning system*

Audio system*

Security indicator P. 115, 122

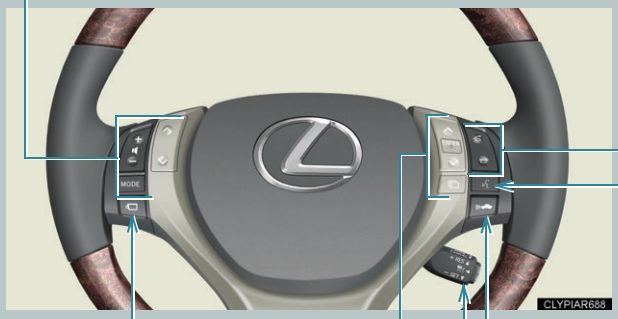
Clock*

*: If equipped

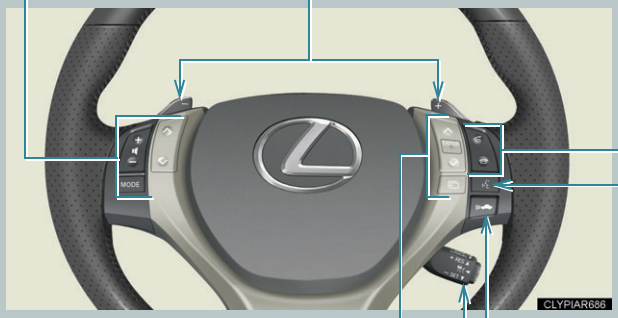
*: Refer to the "Navigation System Owner's Manual".

B

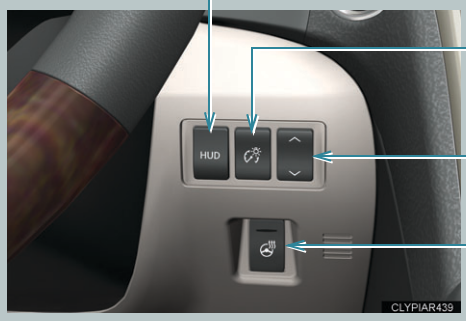
## ▶ Type A




## ▶ Type B



C




Head-up display main switch * P. 212

Display contrast adjustment switch * P. 212

Display position adjustment switch * P. 212

Heated steering wheel switch * P. 437

D



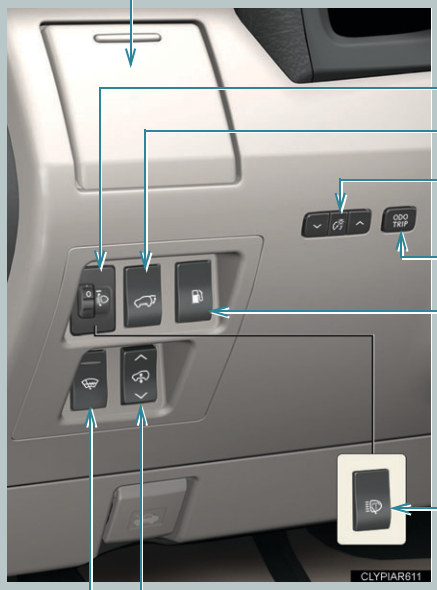

Height control off switch * P. 256

Pre-crash braking off switch * P. 280

Tire pressure warning reset switch * P. 485

*: If equipped
*1: For vehicles with a navigation system, refer to the “Navigation System Owner’s Manual”.
*2: Refer to the “Navigation System Owner's Manual”.

E




Cup holder P. 423

Headlight leveling dial * P. 218

Power back door switch * P. 60

Instrument panel light control buttons P. 197

"ODO/TRIP" button P. 197

Fuel filler door opener P. 110

Headlight cleaner switch * P. 229

Height selector switch * P. 256

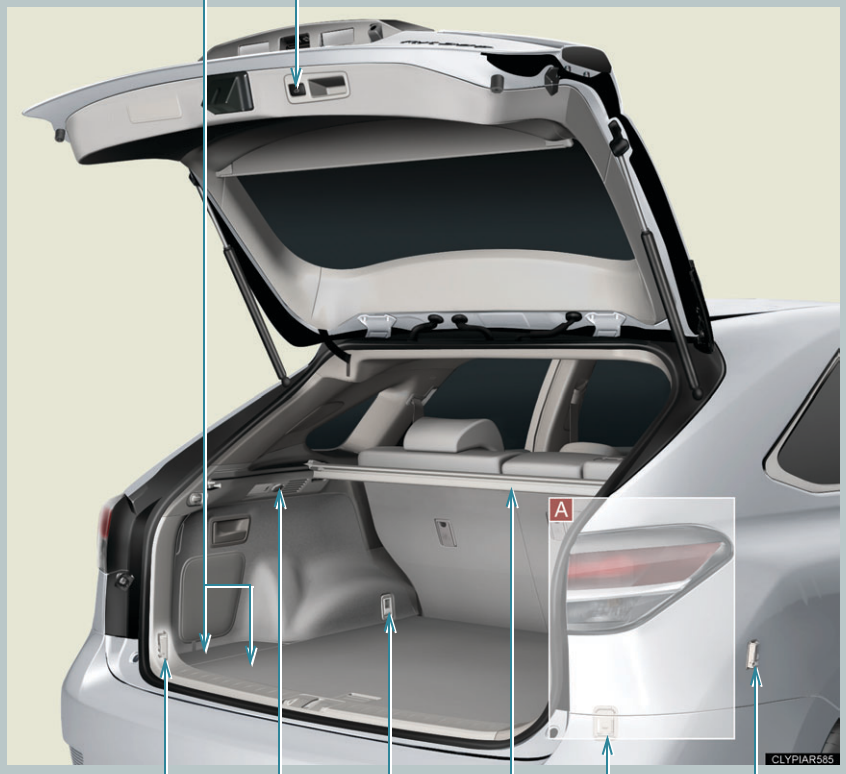
Windshield wiper de-icer switch *, * P. 322

*: If equipped

*: For vehicles with a navigation system, refer to the "Navigation System Owner's Manual".

# Pictorial index

## Luggage compartment




Auxiliary boxes P. 446

Power back door switch * P. 60

Power outlet P. 435

Luggage cover * P. 448

Cargo hooks P. 446

Cargo hooks P. 446

*: If equipped

# Pictorial index

## Luggage compartment

A




Luggage compartment lights P. 63

Rear seatback lock release levers P. 77

Height selector switch * P. 256

*: If equipped

# For your information

## Main Owner's Manual

Please note that this manual covers all models and all equipment, including options. Therefore, you may find some explanations for equipment not installed on your vehicle.

All specifications provided in this manual are current at the time of printing. However, because of the Lexus policy of continual product improvement, we reserve the right to make changes at any time without notice.

Depending on specifications, the vehicle shown in the illustrations may differ from your vehicle in terms of color and equipment.

## Accessories, spare parts and modification of your Lexus

Both genuine Lexus and a wide variety of other spare parts and accessories for Lexus vehicles are currently available on the market. Should it be determined that any of the genuine Lexus parts or accessories supplied with the vehicle need to be replaced, Toyota Motor Corporation recommends that genuine Lexus parts or accessories, be used to replace them. Other parts or accessories of matching quality can also be used. Lexus cannot accept any liability or guarantee spare parts and accessories which are not genuine Lexus products, nor for replacement or installation involving such parts. In addition, damage or performance problems resulting from the use of non-genuine Lexus spare parts or accessories may not be covered under warranty.

## Installation of an RF-transmitter system

The installation of an RF-transmitter system in your vehicle could affect electronic systems such as:

- Multiport fuel injection system/sequential multiport fuel injection system
- Cruise control system
- Dynamic radar cruise control system
- Anti-lock brake system
- SRS airbag system
- Seat belt pretensioner system

Be sure to check with any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional for precautionary measures or special instructions regarding installation of an RF-transmitter system.

Further information regarding frequency bands, power levels, antenna positions and installation provisions for the installation of RF-transmitters, is available on request at any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

## Scrapping of your Lexus

The SRS airbag and seat belt pretensioner devices in your Lexus contain explosive chemicals. If the vehicle is scrapped with the airbags and seat belt pretensioners left as they are, this may cause an accident such as fire. Be sure to have the systems of the SRS airbag and seat belt pretensioner removed and disposed of by a qualified service shop or by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional, before you scrap your vehicle.

## ⚠ CAUTION

**■ General precautions while driving**

Driving under the influence: Never drive your vehicle when under the influence of alcohol or drugs that have impaired your ability to operate your vehicle. Alcohol and certain drugs delay reaction time, impair judgment and reduce coordination, which could lead to an accident that could result in death or serious injury.

Defensive driving: Always drive defensively. Anticipate mistakes that other drivers or pedestrians might make and be ready to avoid accidents.

Driver distraction: Always give your full attention to driving. Anything that distracts the driver, such as adjusting controls, talking on a cellular phone or reading can result in a collision with resulting death or serious injury to you, your occupants or others.

**■ General precaution regarding children's safety**

Never leave children unattended in the vehicle, and never allow children to have or use the key.

Children may be able to start the vehicle or shift the vehicle into neutral. There is also a danger that children may injure themselves by playing with the windows, the moon roof, or other features of the vehicle. In addition, heat build-up or extremely cold temperatures inside the vehicle can be fatal to children.



Your vehicle contains batteries and/or accumulators. Do not discard them into the environment but cooperate with separate collection (Directive 2006/66/EC).

# Symbols used throughout this manual

## Cautions & Notices

**⚠ CAUTION**

This is a warning against something which, if ignored, may cause injury to people. You are informed about what you must or must not do in order to reduce the risk of injury to yourself and others.

**⚠ NOTICE**

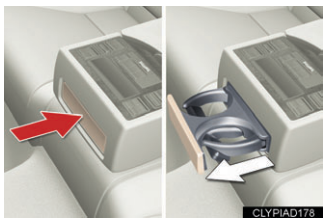
This is a warning against something which, if ignored, may cause damage to the vehicle or its equipment. You are informed about what you must or must not do in order to avoid or reduce the risk of damage to your Lexus and its equipment.

## Symbols used in illustrations



### Safety symbol

The symbol of a circle with a slash through it means “Do not”, “Do not do this”, or “Do not let this happen”.




### Arrows indicating operations

➡ Indicates the action (pushing, turning, etc.) used to operate switches and other devices.

⇨ Indicates the outcome of an operation (e.g. a lid opens).

# Before driving 1


**1-1. Key information**

Keys ..... 26

**1-2. Opening, closing and locking the doors**

Smart entry & start system ..... 31

Wireless remote control ..... 53

Side doors ..... 56

Back door ..... 60

**1-3. Adjustable components (seats, mirrors, steering wheel)**

Front seats ..... 73

Rear seats ..... 77

Driving position memory ..... 81

Head restraints ..... 87

Seat belts ..... 89

Steering wheel ..... 94

Anti-glare inside rear view mirror ..... 96

Outside rear view mirrors ..... 98

**1-4. Opening and closing the windows and moon roof**

Power windows ..... 101

Moon roof ..... 104

Electronic sunshade ..... 108

**1-5. Refueling**

Opening the fuel tank cap ..... 110

**1-6. Theft deterrent system**

Engine immobilizer system ..... 115

Double locking system ..... 121

Alarm ..... 122

**1-7. Safety information**

Correct driving posture ..... 129

SRS airbags ..... 131

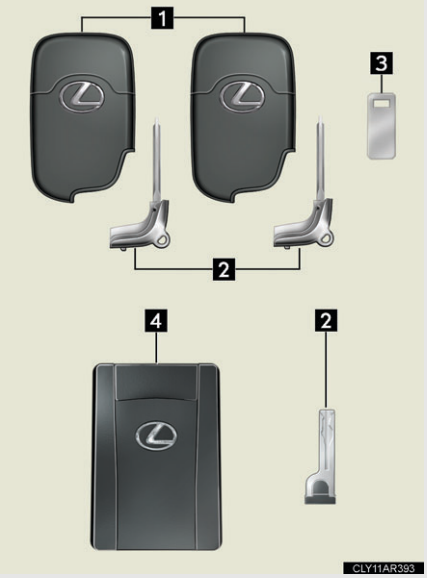
Child restraint systems ..... 142

Installing child restraints ..... 152

Airbag manual on/off system ..... 163

# Keys

**The following keys are provided with the vehicle.**




1 Electronic keys
- Operating the smart entry & start system (→P. 31)
- Operating the wireless remote control function (→P. 53)

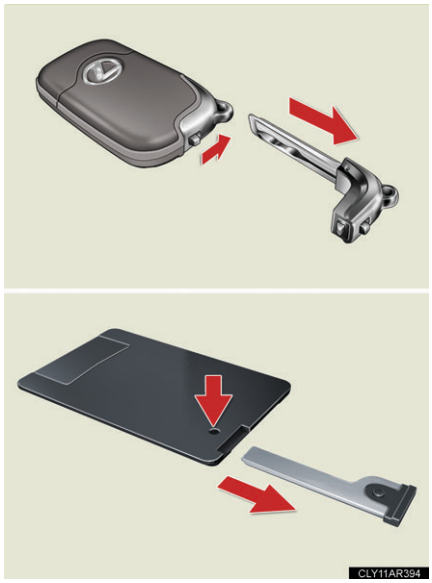
2 Mechanical keys

3 Key number plate

4 Card key (electronic key) (if equipped)

Operating the smart entry & start system (→P. 31)

## Using the mechanical key




To take out the mechanical key:

Electronic keys: Slide the release lever and take the key out.

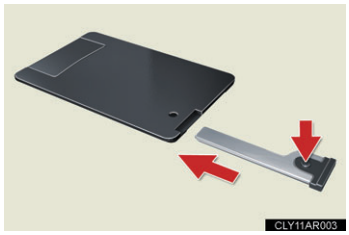
Card key: Press the lock release button and take the key out.

If the key cannot be inserted in a lock cylinder, turn it over and re-attempt to insert it. The mechanical key with grooves on one side can be inserted in one direction only.

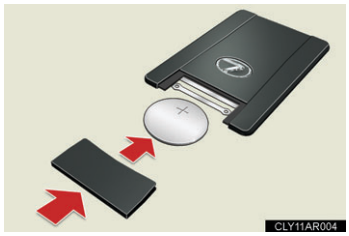
After using the mechanical key, store it in the electronic key. Carry the mechanical key together with the electronic key. If the electronic key battery is depleted or the entry function does not operate properly, you will need the mechanical key. (→P. 591)

### Card key (if equipped)

- The mechanical key that is stored inside the card key should be used only if a problem arises, such as when the card key does not operate properly.
- If it is difficult to take out the mechanical key, press down the lock release button using a pen tip etc. If it is still difficult to pull it out, use a coin etc.




- To store the mechanical key in the card key, insert it while pressing the lock release button.




- If the battery cover is not installed and the battery falls out or if the battery was removed because the key got wet, reinstall the battery with the positive terminal facing the Lexus emblem.
- The card key is not waterproof.

### When required to leave the vehicle's key with a parking attendant

Lock the glove box as circumstances demand. (→P. 421)
Remove the mechanical key for your own use and provide the attendant with the electronic key only.

### Key number plate

Keep the plate in a safe place such as your wallet, not in the vehicle. In the event that a mechanical key is lost, a new key can be made by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional using the key number plate. (→P. 590)

### When riding in an aircraft

When bringing an electronic key onto an aircraft, make sure you do not press any buttons on the electronic key while inside the aircraft cabin. If you are carrying an electronic key in your bag etc., ensure that the buttons are not likely to be pressed accidentally. Pressing a button may cause the electronic key to emit radio waves that could interfere with the operation of the aircraft.

## NOTICE

**To prevent key damage**

Observe the following:

- Do not drop the keys, subject them to strong shocks or bend them.
- Do not expose the keys to high temperatures for a long period of time.
- Do not get the keys wet or wash them in an ultrasonic washer etc.
- Do not attach metallic or magnetic materials to the keys or place the keys close to such materials.
- Do not disassemble the keys.
- Do not attach a sticker or anything else to the surface of the electronic key.
- Do not place the keys near objects that produce magnetic fields, such as TVs, audio systems, induction cookers, or medical electrical equipment, such as low-frequency therapy equipment.

**Carrying the electronic key on your person**

Carry the electronic key 10 cm (3.9 in.) or more away from electric appliances that are turned on. Radio waves emitted from electric appliances within 10 cm (3.9 in.) of the electronic key may interfere with the key, causing the key to not function properly.

**In case of a smart entry & start system malfunction or other key-related problems**

Take your vehicle with all the electronic keys provided with your vehicle, including the card key, to any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

**When a vehicle key is lost**

If the key remains lost, the risk of vehicle theft increases significantly. Visit any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional immediately with all remaining electronic keys and the card key that was provided with your vehicle.

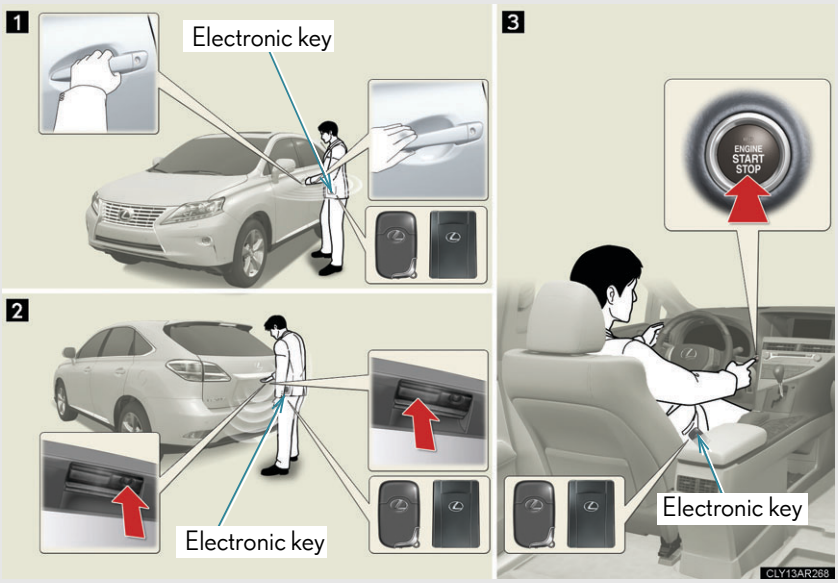
## NOTICE

### Precautions for handling the card key

- Do not apply excess force when inserting the mechanical key into the card key. Doing so may damage the card key.
- If the battery or card key terminals get wet, the battery may corrode and the card key may stop working.
  If the key is dropped into water, or if drinking water etc. is spilled on the key, immediately remove the battery cover and wipe the battery and terminals. (To remove the battery cover, lightly grasp and pull it.) If the battery is corroded, have any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional, replace the battery.
- Do not crush the battery cover or use a screwdriver to remove the battery cover. Forcibly removing the battery cover may bend or damage the key.
- If the battery cover is frequently removed, the battery cover may become loose.
- When installing the battery, make sure to check the direction of the battery. Installing the battery in the wrong direction may cause the battery to deplete rapidly.
- The surface of the card key may be damaged, or its coating may peel off in the following situations:
  - The card key is carried together with hard objects, such as coins and keys.
  - The card key is scraped with a sharp object, such as the tip of a mechanical pencil.
  - The surface of the card key is wiped with thinner or benzene.

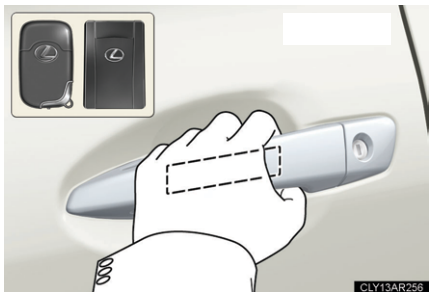
# Smart entry & start system

The following operations can be performed simply by carrying the electronic key (including the card key) on your person, for example in your pocket.
(The driver should always carry the electronic key.)




1 Locks and unlocks the side doors (→P. 32)
2 Locks and unlocks the back door (→P. 32)
3 Starts the engine (→P. 180)

## Unlocking and locking the side doors (front door handles only)




Grip the handle to unlock the doors.

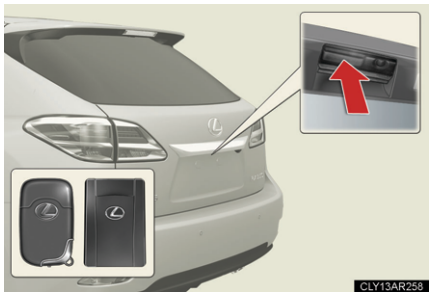
Make sure to touch the sensor on the back of the handle.

The doors cannot be unlocked for 3 seconds after the doors are locked.



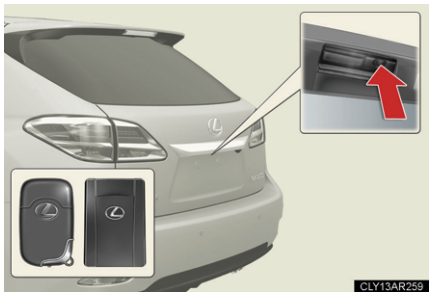

Touch the lock sensor (the indentation on the upper part of the door handle) to lock the doors.

## Unlocking and locking the back door




Press the button to unlock the door.

The door cannot be unlocked for 3 seconds after the door is locked.

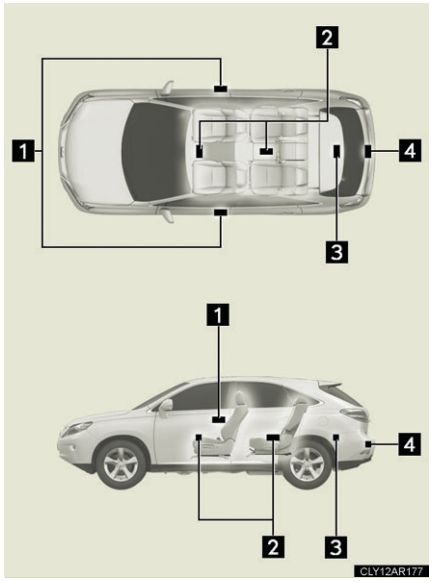



Press the button to lock the door.



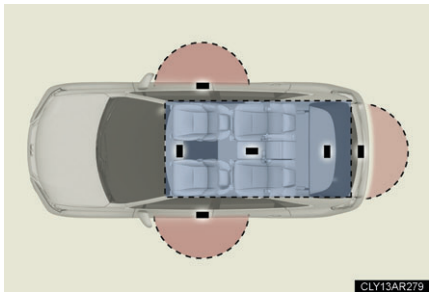
## Antenna location and effective range

### Antenna location




1 Antennas outside the cabin
2 Antennas inside the cabin
3 Antenna inside the luggage compartment
4 Antenna outside the luggage compartment

## Effective range (areas within which the electronic key is detected)




- When locking or unlocking the doors

  The system can be operated when the electronic key is within about 0.7 m (2.3 ft.) of an outside door handle. (Only the doors detecting the key can be operated.)

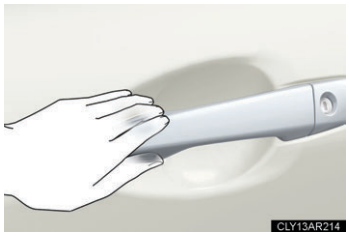
- When starting the engine or changing "ENGINE START STOP" switch modes

  The system can be operated when the electronic key is inside the vehicle.

### Operation signals

The emergency flashers flash to indicate that the doors have been locked/unlocked. (Locked: Once; Unlocked: Twice)

### When the door cannot be locked by the lock sensor on the upper part of the door handle




Touch both lock sensors on the upper and lower part of the door handle simultaneously.

### Alarms and warning indicators

A combination of exterior and interior alarms as well as warning messages shown on the multi-information display is used to prevent theft of the vehicle and accidents resulting from erroneous operation. Take appropriate measures in response to any warning message on the multi-information display. (→P. 552)

The following table describes circumstances and correction procedures when only alarms are sounded.

| Alarm | Situation | Correction procedure |
|---|---|---|
| Exterior alarm sounds once for 5 seconds. | An attempt was made to lock the vehicle while a door was open. | Close all of the doors and lock the doors again. |
| Interior alarm pings repeatedly | The “ENGINE START STOP” switch was turned to ACCESSORY mode while the driver's door is open (The driver's door was opened when the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is in ACCESSORY mode.) | Close the driver's door. |
| | The “ENGINE START STOP” switch was turned off while the driver's door is open. | Close the driver's door. |

### Security feature

If a door is not opened within approximately 30 seconds after the vehicle is unlocked, the security feature automatically locks the vehicle again.

### Battery-saving function

If the vehicle is parked for a long period of time, the battery-saving function is activated in order to prevent the vehicle battery from being discharged and the electronic key battery from being depleted.

- In the following circumstances, unlocking the vehicle using the entry function may take longer than usual:
  - When the entry function has not been used for 5 days or more
  - When the electronic key has been left within approximately 2 m (6 ft.) of the vehicle for 10 minutes or more
- If the entry function has not been used for 14 days or more, the vehicle cannot be unlocked by a door other than the driver's door. To unlock the vehicle, grip the driver's door handle or use the wireless remote control or the mechanical key.

The system will resume operation when:

- The vehicle is locked using the lock sensor.
- The vehicle is locked/unlocked using the wireless remote control function. (→P. 53)
- The vehicle is locked/unlocked using the mechanical key. (→P. 591)

## Conditions affecting operation

The smart entry & start system uses weak radio waves. In the following situations, the communication between the electronic key and the vehicle may be affected, preventing the smart entry & start system, wireless remote control and immobilizer system from operating properly.
(Ways of coping: →P. 591)

- When the electronic key battery is depleted
- Near a TV tower, electric power plant, gas station, radio station, large display, airport or other facility that generates strong radio waves or electrical noise
- When carrying a portable radio, cellular phone, cordless phone or other wireless communication device
- When the electronic key is in contact with, or is covered by the following metallic objects
  - Cards to which aluminum foil is attached
  - Cigarette boxes that have aluminum foil inside
  - Metallic wallets or bags
  - Coins
  - Hand warmers made of metal
  - Media such as CDs and DVDs
- When multiple electronic keys are in the vicinity
- When another wireless key (that emits radio waves) is being used nearby
- When carrying the electronic key together with the following devices that emit radio waves
  - Another vehicle's electronic key or a wireless key that emits radio waves
  - Personal computers or personal digital assistants (PDAs)
  - Digital audio players
  - Portable game systems
- If window tint with a metallic content or metallic objects are attached to the rear window

### Note for the entry function

- Even when the electronic key is within the effective range (detection areas), the system may not operate properly in the following cases:
  - The electronic key is too close to the window or outside door handle, near the ground, or in a high place when the doors are locked or unlocked.
  - The electronic key is on the instrument panel, luggage cover or floor or in the glove box.
- Do not leave the electronic key on top of the instrument panel or near the door pockets when exiting the vehicle. Depending on the radio wave reception conditions, it may be detected by the antenna outside the cabin and the door will become lockable from the outside, possibly trapping the electronic key inside the vehicle.
- As long as the electronic key is within the effective range, the doors may be locked or unlocked by anyone. However, only the doors detecting the electronic key can be used to unlock the vehicle.
- The doors may lock or unlock if the electronic key is within the effective range and a large amount of water splashes on the door handle, such as in the rain or in a car wash. The doors will automatically be locked after approximately 30 seconds if a door is not opened and closed.
- If the wireless remote control is used to lock the doors when the electronic key is near the vehicle, there is a possibility that the door may not be unlocked by the entry function. (Use the wireless remote control to unlock the doors.)

### Notes for locking the doors

- Touching the door lock sensor while wearing gloves may delay or prevent lock operation. Remove the gloves and touch the lock sensor again.
- If the door handle becomes wet while the electronic key is within the effective range, the door may lock and unlock repeatedly. Place the key in a position 2 m (6 ft.) or more separate from the vehicle while the vehicle is being washed. (Take care to ensure that the key is not stolen.)
- If the electronic key is inside the vehicle and a door handle becomes wet during a car wash, a message may be shown on the multi-information display and a buzzer will sound outside the vehicle. To turn off the alarm, lock all the doors.
- The lock sensor may not work properly if it comes into contact with ice, snow, mud, etc. Clean the lock sensor and attempt to operate it again, or use the lock sensor on the lower part of the door handle.
- Fingernails may scrape against the door during operation of the door handle. Be careful not to injure fingernails or damage the surface of the door.

### Notes for the unlocking function

- Gripping the door handle when wearing a glove may not unlock the door.
- A sudden approach to the effective range or door handle may prevent the doors from being unlocked. In this case, return the door handle to the original position and check that the doors unlock before pulling the door handle again.
- If there is another electronic key in the detection area, it may take slightly longer to unlock the doors after the door handle is gripped.

### When the vehicle is not driven for extended periods

- To prevent theft of the vehicle, do not leave the electronic key within 2 m (6 ft.) of the vehicle.
- The smart entry & start system can be deactivated in advance. (→P. 622)

### To operate the system properly

Make sure to carry the electronic key when operating the system. Do not get the electronic key too close to the vehicle when operating the system from the outside of the vehicle.

Depending on the position and holding condition of the electronic key, the key may not be detected correctly and the system may not operate properly. (The alarm may go off accidentally, or the door lock prevention function may not operate.)

■ **If the smart entry & start system does not operate properly**

- Locking and unlocking the doors: Use the mechanical key. (→P. 591)
- Starting the engine: →P. 592

■ **Electronic key battery depletion**

- The standard battery life is 1 to 2 years. (The card key battery life is about a year and a half.)
- If the battery becomes low, an alarm will sound in the cabin when the engine stops. (→P. 563)
- As the electronic key always receives radio waves, the battery will become depleted even if the electronic key is not used. The following symptoms indicate that the electronic key battery may be depleted. Replace the battery when necessary. (→P. 501)
  - The smart entry & start system or the wireless remote control does not operate.
  - The detection area becomes smaller.
  - The LED indicator on the key surface does not turn on.
- To avoid serious deterioration, do not leave the electronic key within 1 m (3 ft.) of the following electrical appliances that produce a magnetic field:
  - TVs
  - Personal computers
  - Cellular phones, cordless phones and battery chargers
  - Recharging cellular phones or cordless phones
  - Induction cookers
  - Table lamps

■ **When the electronic key battery is fully depleted**

→P. 501

■ **Customization**

Settings (e.g. smart entry & start system) can be changed.
(Customizable features →P. 622)

## Certification for the smart entry & start system

Hereby, Tokai Rika Co., Ltd., declares that this B74EA is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.

Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. vakuuttaa täten että B74EA tyyppinen laite on direktiivin 1999/5/EY oleellisten vaatimusten ja sitä koskevien direktiivin muiden ehtojen mukainen.

Hierbij verklaart Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. dat het toestel B74EA in overeenstemming is met de essentiële eisen en de andere relevante bepalingen van richtlijn 1999/5/EG.

Par la présente Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. déclare que l'appareil B74EA est conforme aux exigences essentielles et aux autres dispositions pertinentes de la directive 1999/5/CE.

Härmed intygar Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. att denna B74EA står I överensstämmelse med de väsentliga egenskapskrav och övriga relevanta bestämmelser som framgår av direktiv 1999/5/EG.

Undertegnede Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. erklærer herved, at følgende udstyr B74EA overholder de væsentlige krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.

Hiermit erklärt Tokai Rika Co., Ltd., dass sich das Gerät B74EA in Übereinstimmung mit den grundlegenden Anforderungen und den übrigen einschlägigen Bestimmungen der Richtlinie 1999/5/EG befindet.

ΜΕ ΤΗΝ ΠΑΡΟΥΣΑ Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. ΔΗΛΩΝΕΙ ΟΤΙ B74EA ΣΥΜΜΟΡΦΩΝΕΤΑΙ ΠΡΟΣ ΤΙΣ ΟΥΣΙΩΔΕΙΣ ΑΠΑΙΤΗΣΕΙΣ ΚΑΙ ΤΙΣ ΛΟΙΠΕΣ ΣΧΕΤΙΚΕΣ ΔΙΑΤΑΞΕΙΣ ΤΗΣ ΟΔΗΓΙΑΣ 1999/5/ΕΚ.

Con la presente Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. dichiara che questo B74EA è conforme ai requisiti essenziali ed alle altre disposizioni pertinenti stabilite dalla direttiva 1999/5/CE.

Por medio de la presente Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. declara que el B74EA cumple con los requisitos esenciales y cualesquiera otras disposiciones aplicables o exigibles de la Directiva 1999/5/CE.

Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. declara que este B74EA está conforme com os requisitos essenciais e outras disposições da Directiva 1999/5/CE.

Hawnhekk, Tokai Rika Co., Ltd., jiddikjara li dan B74EA jikkonforma mal-ħtiġijiet essenzjali u ma provvedimenti oħrajn relevanti li hemm fid-Dirrettiva 1999/5/EC.

Käesolevaga kinnitab Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. seadme B74EA vastavust direktiivi 1999/5/EÜ põhinõuetele ja nimetatud direktiivist tulenevatele teistele asjakohastele sätetele.

Alulírott, Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. nyilatkozom, hogy a B74EA megfelel a vonatkozó alapvetõ követelményeknek és az 1999/5/EC irányelv egyéb elõírásainak.

Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. týmto vyhlasuje, že B74EA spĺňa základné požiadavky a všetky príslušné ustanovenia Smernice 1999/5/ES.

Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. tímto prohlašuje, že tento B74EA je ve shodě se základními požadavky a dalšími příslušnými ustanoveními směrnice 1999/5/ES.

Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. izjavlja, da je ta B74EA v skladu z bistvenimi zahtevami in ostalimi relevantnimi določili direktive 1999/5/ES.

Šiuo Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. deklaruoja, kad šis B74EA atitinka esminius reikalavimus ir kitas 1999/5/EB Direktyvos nuostatas.

Ar šo Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. deklarē, ka B74EA atbilst Direktīvas 1999/5/EK būtiskajām prasībām un citiem ar to saistītajiem noteikumiem.

Niniejszym Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. oświadcza, że B74EA jest zgodny z zasadniczymi wymogami oraz pozostałymi stosownymi postanowieniami Dyrektywy 1999/5/EC.

Hér með lýsir Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. yfir því að B74EA er í samræmi við grunnkröfur og aðrar kröfur, sem gerðar eru í tilskipun 1999/5/EC.

Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. erklærer herved at utstyret B74EA er i samsvar med de grunnleggende krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.

С настоящето, Tokai Rika Co., Ltd., декларира, че B74EA е в съответствие със съществените изисквания и другите приложими разпоредби на Директива 1999/5/EC.

Prin prezenta, Tokai Rika Co., Ltd., declară că aparatul B74EA este in conformitate cu cerinţele esenţiale şi cu alte prevederi pertinente ale Directivei 1999/5/CE.

Ovim, Tokai Rika Co., Ltd., izjavljuje da ovaj B74EA je usklađen sa bitnim zahtjevima i drugim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC.

Nepermjet kesaj, Tokai Rika Co., Ltd., deklaroj qe ky B74EA eshte ne pajtim me kerkesat thelbesore dhe dispozitat e tjera perkatese te Direktives 1999/5/EC.

Ovim Tokai Rika Co., Ltd., izjavljuje da je B74EA u sklau s bitnim zahtjevima i drugim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC i Pravilnika o RiTT opremi (NN 25/2012).

Ovim, Tokai Rika Co., Ltd., deklariše da je B74EA u skladu sa osnovnim zahtevima i ostalim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC.

The DECLARATION of CONFORMITY (DoC) is available at the following address:
http://www.tokai-rika.co.jp/pc/

CE

Hereby, Tokai Rika Co., Ltd., declares that this B81UA is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.

Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. vakuuttaa täten että B81UA tyyppinen laite on direktiivin 1999/5/EY oleellisten vaatimusten ja sitä koskevien direktiivin muiden ehtojen mukainen.

Hierbij verklaart Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. dat het toestel B81UA in overeenstemming is met de essentiële eisen en de andere relevante bepalingen van richtlijn 1999/5/EG.

Par la présente Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. déclare que l'appareil B81UA est conforme aux exigences essentielles et aux autres dispositions pertinentes de la directive 1999/5/CE.

Härmed intygar Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. att denna B81UA står I överensstämmelse med de väsentliga egenskapskrav och övriga relevanta bestämmelser som framgår av direktiv 1999/5/EG.

Undertegnede Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. erklærer herved, at følgende udstyr B81UA overholder de væsentlige krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.

Hiermit erklärt Tokai Rika Co., Ltd., dass sich das Gerät B81UA in Übereinstimmung mit den grundlegenden Anforderungen und den übrigen einschlägigen Bestimmungen der Richtlinie 1999/5/EG befindet.

ΜΕ ΤΗΝ ΠΑΡΟΥΣΑ Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. ΔΗΛΩΝΕΙ ΟΤΙ B81UA ΣΥΜΜΟΡΦΩΝΕΤΑΙ ΠΡΟΣ ΤΙΣ ΟΥΣΙΩΔΕΙΣ ΑΠΑΙΤΗΣΕΙΣ ΚΑΙ ΤΙΣ ΛΟΙΠΕΣ ΣΧΕΤΙΚΕΣ ΔΙΑΤΑΞΕΙΣ ΤΗΣ ΟΔΗΓΙΑΣ 1999/5/ΕΚ.

Con la presente Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. dichiara che questo B81UA è conforme ai requisiti essenziali ed alle altre disposizioni pertinenti stabilite dalla direttiva 1999/5/CE.

Por medio de la presente Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. declara que el B81UA cumple con los requisitos esenciales y cualesquiera otras disposiciones aplicables o exigibles de la Directiva 1999/5/CE.

Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. declara que este B81UA está conforme com os requisitos essenciais e outras disposições da Directiva 1999/5/CE.

Hawnhekk, Tokai Rika Co., Ltd., jiddikjara li dan B81UA jikkonforma mal-ħtiġijiet essenzjali u ma provvedimenti oħrajn relevanti li hemm fid-Dirrettiva 1999/5/EC.

Käesolevaga kinnitab Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. seadme B81UA vastavust direktiivi 1999/5/EÜ põhinõuetele ja nimetatud direktiivist tulenevatele teistele asjakohastele sätetele.

Alulírott, Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. nyilatkozom, hogy a B81UA megfelel a vonatkozó alapvetõ követelményeknek és az 1999/5/EC irányelv egyéb elõírásainak.

Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. týmto vyhlasuje, že B81UA spĺňa základné požiadavky a všetky príslušné ustanovenia Smernice 1999/5/ES.

Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. tímto prohlašuje, že tento B81UA je ve shodě se základními požadavky a dalšími příslušnými ustanoveními směrnice 1999/5/ES.

Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. izjavlja, da je ta B81UA v skladu z bistvenimi zahtevami in ostalimi relevantnimi določili direktive 1999/5/ES.

Šiuo Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. deklaruoja, kad šis B81UA atitinka esminius reikalavimus ir kitas 1999/5/EB Direktyvos nuostatas.

Ar šo Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. deklarē, ka B81UA atbilst Direktīvas 1999/5/EK būtiskajām prasībām un citiem ar to saistītajiem noteikumiem.

Niniejszym Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. oświadcza, że B81UA jest zgodny z zasadniczymi wymogami oraz pozostałymi stosownymi postanowieniami Dyrektywy 1999/5/EC.

Hér með lýsir Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. yfir því að B81UA er í samræmi við grunnkröfur og aðrar kröfur, sem gerðar eru í tilskipun 1999/5/EC.

Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. erklærer herved at utstyret B81UA er i samsvar med de grunnleggende krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.

С настоящето, Tokai Rika Co., Ltd., декларира, че B81UA е в съответствие със съществените изисквания и другите приложими разпоредби на Директива 1999/5/EC.

Prin prezenta, Tokai Rika Co., Ltd., declară că aparatul B81UA este in conformitate cu cerințele esențiale şi cu alte prevederi pertinente ale Directivei 1999/5/CE.

Ovim, Tokai Rika Co., Ltd., izjavljuje da ovaj B81UA je usklađen sa bitnim zahtjevima i drugim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC.

Nepermjet kesaj, Tokai Rika Co., Ltd., deklaroj qe ky B81UA eshte ne pajtim me kerkesat thelbesore dhe dispozitat e tjera perkatese te Direktives 1999/5/EC.

Ovim Tokai Rika Co., Ltd., izjavljuje da je B81UA u sklau s bitnim zahtjevima i drugim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC i Pravilnika o RiTT opremi (NN 25/2012).

Ovim, Tokai Rika Co., Ltd., deklariše da je B81UA u skladu sa osnovnim zahtevima i ostalim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC.

The DECLARATION of CONFORMITY (DoC) is available at the following address:
http://www.tokai-rika.co.jp/pc/

CE

-Replace only with the same or equivalent type recommended by the manufacturer.
-Dispose of used batteries according to the local laws.

CE The latest "DECLARATION of CONFORMITY" (DoC) is available at the following address:
http://www.globaldenso.com/en/products/oem/index.html

Hereby, DENSO CORPORATION declares that this 14AEX is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.

DENSO CORPORATION vakuuttaa täten että 14AEX tyyppinen laite on direktiivin 1999/5/EY oleellisten vaatimusten ja sitä koskevien direktiivin muiden ehtojen mukainen.

Hierbij verklaart DENSO CORPORATION dat het toestel 14AEX in overeenstemming is met de essentiële eisen en de andere relevante bepalingen van richtlijn 1999/5/EG.

Par la présente DENSO CORPORATION déclare que l'appareil 14AEX est conforme aux exigences essentielles et aux autres dispositions pertinentes de la directive 1999/5/CE.

Härmed intygar DENSO CORPORATION att denna 14AEX står I överensstämmelse med de väsentliga egenskapskrav och övriga relevanta bestämmelser som framgår av direktiv 1999/5/EG.

Undertegnede DENSO CORPORATION erklærer herved, at følgende udstyr 14AEX overholder de væsentlige krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.

Hiermit erklärt DENSO CORPORATION, dass sich das Gerät 14AEX in Übereinstimmung mit den grundlegenden Anforderungen und den übrigen einschlägigen Bestimmungen der Richtlinie 1999/5/EG befindet.

ΜΕ ΤΗΝ ΠΑΡΟΥΣΑ DENSO CORPORATION ΔΗΛΩΝΕΙ ΟΤΙ 14AEX ΣΥΜΜΟΡΦΩΝΕΤΑΙ ΠΡΟΣ ΤΙΣ ΟΥΣΙΩΔΕΙΣ ΑΠΑΙΤΗΣΕΙΣ ΚΑΙ ΤΙΣ ΛΟΙΠΕΣ ΣΧΕΤΙΚΕΣ ΔΙΑΤΑΞΕΙΣ ΤΗΣ ΟΔΗΓΙΑΣ 1999/5/ΕΚ.

Con la presente DENSO CORPORATION dichiara che questo 14AEX è conforme ai requisiti essenziali ed alle altre disposizioni pertinenti stabilite dalla direttiva 1999/5/CE.

Por medio de la presente DENSO CORPORATION declara que el 14AEX cumple con los requisitos esenciales y cualesquiera otras disposiciones aplicables o exigibles de la Directiva 1999/5/CE.

DENSO CORPORATION declara que este 14AEX está conforme com os requisitos essenciais e outras disposições da Directiva 1999/5/CE.

Hawnhekk, DENSO CORPORATION, jiddikjara li dan 14AEX jikkonforma mal-ħtiġijiet essenzjali u ma provvedimenti oħrajn relevanti li hemm fid-Dirrettiva 1999/5/EC.

Käesolevaga kinnitab DENSO CORPORATION seadme 14AEX vastavust direktiivi 1999/5/EÜ põhinõuetele ja nimetatud direktiivist tulenevatele teistele asjakohastele sätetele.

Alulírott, DENSO CORPORATION nyilatkozom, hogy a 14AEX megfelel a vonatkozó alapvetõ követelményeknek és az 1999/5/EC irányelv egyéb elõírásainak.

DENSO CORPORATION týmto vyhlasuje, že 14AEX spĺňa základné požiadavky a všetky príslušné ustanovenia Smernice 1999/5/ES.

DENSO CORPORATION tímto prohlašuje, že tento 14AEX je ve shodě se základními požadavky a dalšími příslušnými ustanoveními směrnice 1999/5/ES.

DENSO CORPORATION izjavlja, da je ta 14AEX v skladu z bistvenimi zahtevami in ostalimi relevantnimi določili direktive 1999/5/ES.

Šiuo DENSO CORPORATION deklaruoja, kad šis 14AEX atitinka esminius reikalavimus ir kitas 1999/5/EB Direktyvos nuostatas.

Ar šo DENSO CORPORATION deklarē, ka 14AEX atbilst Direktīvas 1999/5/EK būtiskajām prasībām un citiem ar to saistītajiem noteikumiem.

Niniejszym DENSO CORPORATION oświadcza, że 14AEX jest zgodny z zasadniczymi wymogami oraz pozostałymi stosownymi postanowieniami Dyrektywy 1999/5/EC.

Hér með lýsir DENSO CORPORATION yfir því að 14AEX er í samræmi við grunnkröfur og aðrar kröfur, sem gerðar eru í tilskipun 1999/5/EC.

DENSO CORPORATION erklærer herved at utstyret 14AEX er i samsvar med de grunnleggende krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.

С настоящето, DENSO CORPORATION, декларира, че 14AEX е в съответствие със съществените изисквания и другите приложими разпоредби на Директива 1999/5/ЕС.

Prin prezenta, DENSO CORPORATION, declară că aparatul 14AEX este in conformitate cu cerinţele esenţiale şi cu alte prevederi pertinente ale Directivei 1999/5/CE.

Ovim, DENSO CORPORATION, izjavljuje da ovaj 14AEX je usklađen sa bitnim zahtjevima i drugim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC.

Ovim, DENSO CORPORATION, deklariše da je 14AEX u skladu sa osnovnim zahtevima i ostalim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC.

Ovim DENSO CORPORATION, izjavljuje da je 14AEX u sklau s bitnim zahtjevima i drugim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC i Pravilnika o RiTT opremi (NN 25/2012).

**TOYOTA**

**TOYOTA MOTOR CORPORATION**

1, TOYOTA-CHO, TOYOTA, AICHI, 471-8571, JAPAN TEL:+81-565-28-2121

## R&TTE Declaration of Conformity

We,

Manufacturer's Name: TOYOTA MOTOR CORPORATION
Manufacturer's Address: 1, Toyota -cho, Toyota, Aichi, 471-8572, Japan

hereby declare under our sole responsibility that the product:

Product Name: LF Oscillator
Product Model: TMLF8-6
to which this declaration relates is in conformity with the essential requirements and other relevant requirements of the R&TTE Directive (1999/5/EC). The product is compliant with the following standards and/or other normative documents:

| | |
|---|---|
| -Health & safety requirements: | EN 60950-1 |
| -EMC requirements | EN 301 489-01 & EN 301 489-03 |
| -Effective uses of radio spectrum: | EN 300 330-2 |

Supplementary information:

| | |
|---|---|
| * CE mark | CE |
| * Member states intended for use | EU and EFTA |

Date: February 25, 2013

Signature: Tetsuya Matsuo

Tetsuya Matsuo

Hereby, Toyota Motor Corporation, declares that this TMLF8-6 is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.

Toyota Motor Corporation vakuuttaa täten että TMLF8-6 tyyppinen laite on direktiivin 1999/5/EY oleellisten vaatimusten ja sitä koskevien direktiivin muiden ehtojen mukainen.

Hierbij verklaart Toyota Motor Corporation dat het toestel TMLF8-6 in overeenstemming is met de essentiële eisen en de andere relevante bepalingen van richtlijn 1999/5/EG.

Par la présente Toyota Motor Corporation déclare que l'appareil TMLF8-6 est conforme aux exigences essentielles et aux autres dispositions pertinentes de la directive 1999/5/CE.

Härmed intygar Toyota Motor Corporation att denna TMLF8-6 står I överensstämmelse med de väsentliga egenskapskrav och övriga relevanta bestämmelser som framgår av direktiv 1999/5/EG.

Undertegnede Toyota Motor Corporation erklærer herved, at følgende udstyr TMLF8-6 overholder de væsentlige krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.

Hiermit erklärt Toyota Motor Corporation, dass sich das Gerät TMLF8-6 in Übereinstimmung mit den grundlegenden Anforderungen und den übrigen einschlägigen Bestimmungen der Richtlinie 1999/5/EG befindet.

ΜΕ ΤΗΝ ΠΑΡΟΥΣΑ Toyota Motor Corporation ΔΗΛΩΝΕΙ ΟΤΙ TMLF8-6 ΣΥΜΜΟΡΦΩΝΕΤΑΙ ΠΡΟΣ ΤΙΣ ΟΥΣΙΩΔΕΙΣ ΑΠΑΙΤΗΣΕΙΣ ΚΑΙ ΤΙΣ ΛΟΙΠΕΣ ΣΧΕΤΙΚΕΣ ΔΙΑΤΑΞΕΙΣ ΤΗΣ ΟΔΗΓΙΑΣ 1999/5/ΕΚ.

Con la presente Toyota Motor Corporation dichiara che questo TMLF8-6 è conforme ai requisiti essenziali ed alle altre disposizioni pertinenti stabilite dalla direttiva 1999/5/CE.

Por medio de la presente Toyota Motor Corporation declara que el TMLF8-6 cumple con los requisitos esenciales y cualesquiera otras disposiciones aplicables o exigibles de la Directiva 1999/5/CE.

Toyota Motor Corporation declara que este TMLF8-6 está conforme com os requisitos essenciais e outras disposições da Directiva 1999/5/CE.

Hawnhekk, Toyota Motor Corporation, jiddikjara li dan TMLF8-6 jikkonforma mal-ħtiġijiet essenzjali u ma provvedimenti oħrajn relevanti li hemm fid-Dirrettiva 1999/5/EC.

Käesolevaga kinnitab Toyota Motor Corporation seadme TMLF8-6 vastavust direktiivi 1999/5/EÜ põhinõuetele ja nimetatud direktiivist tulenevatele teistele asjakohastele sätetele.

Alulírott, Toyota Motor Corporation nyilatkozom, hogy a TMLF8-6 megfelel a vonatkozó alapvetõ követelményeknek és az 1999/5/EC irányelv egyéb elõírásainak.

Toyota Motor Corporation týmto vyhlasuje, že TMLF8-6 spĺňa základné požiadavky a všetky príslušné ustanovenia Smernice 1999/5/ES.

Toyota Motor Corporation tímto prohlašuje, že tento TMLF8-6 je ve shodě se základními požadavky a dalšími příslušnými ustanoveními směrnice 1999/5/ES.

Toyota Motor Corporation izjavlja, da je ta TMLF8-6 v skladu z bistvenimi zahtevami in ostalimi relevantnimi določili direktive 1999/5/ES.

Šiuo Toyota Motor Corporation deklaruoja, kad šis TMLF8-6 atitinka esminius reikalavimus ir kitas 1999/5/EB Direktyvos nuostatas.

Ar šo Toyota Motor Corporation deklarē, ka TMLF8-6 atbilst Direktīvas 1999/5/EK būtiskajām prasībām un citiem ar to saistītajiem noteikumiem.

Niniejszym Toyota Motor Corporation oświadcza, że TMLF8-6 jest zgodny z zasadniczymi wymogami oraz pozostałymi stosownymi postanowieniami Dyrektywy 1999/5/EC.

Hér með lýsir Toyota Motor Corporation yfir því að TMLF8-6 er í samræmi við grunnkröfur og aðrar kröfur, sem gerðar eru í tilskipun 1999/5/EC.

Toyota Motor Corporation erklærer herved at utstyret TMLF8-6 er i samsvar med de grunnleggende krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.

С настоящето, Toyota Motor Corporation, декларира, че TMLF8-6 е в съответствие със съществените изисквания и другите приложими разпоредби на Директива 1999/5/EC.

Prin prezenta, Toyota Motor Corporation, declară că aparatul TMLF8-6 este in conformitate cu cerinţele esenţiale şi cu alte prevederi pertinente ale Directivei 1999/5/CE.

Ovim, Toyota Motor Corporation, izjavljuje da ovaj TMLF8-6 je usklađen sa bitnim zahtjevima i drugim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC.

Nepermjet kesaj, Toyota Motor Corporation, deklaroj qe ky TMLF8-6 eshte ne pajtim me kerkesat thelbesore dhe dispozitat e tjera perkatese te Direktives 1999/5/EC.

Ovim Toyota Motor Corporation, izjavljuje da je TMLF8-6 u sklau s bitnim zahtjevima i drugim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC i Pravilnika o RiTT opremi (NN 25/2012).

Ovim, Toyota Motor Corporation, deklariše da je TMLF8-6 u skladu sa osnovnim zahtevima i ostalim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC.

## ⚠ CAUTION

**■ Caution regarding interference with electronic devices**

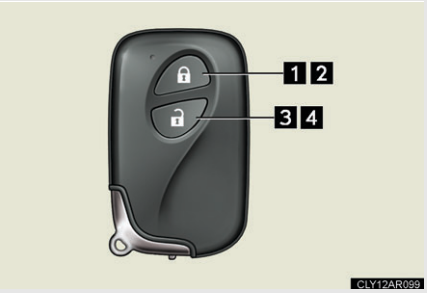
- People with implantable cardiac pacemakers, cardiac resynchronization therapy-pacemakers or implantable cardioverter defibrillators should maintain a reasonable distance between themselves and the smart entry & start system antennas. (→P. 34)
  The radio waves may affect the operation of such devices. If necessary, the entry function can be disabled. Ask any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional for details, such as the frequency of radio waves and timing of the emitted radio waves. Then, consult your doctor to see if you should disable the entry function.
- User of any electrical medical device other than implantable cardiac pacemakers, cardiac resynchronization therapy-pacemakers or implantable cardioverter defibrillators should consult the manufacturer of the device for information about its operation under the influence of radio waves. Radio waves could have unexpected effects on the operation of such medical devices.

Ask any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional for disabling the entry function.

# Wireless remote control

**The wireless remote control can be used to lock and unlock the vehicle. It also opens and closes the back door.**

▶ Vehicles without a power back door




1 Locks all the doors
2 Closes the windows and moon roof (press and hold)*
3 Unlocks all the doors
4 Opens the windows and moon roof (press and hold)*

*: This setting must be customized at any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

▶ Vehicles with a power back door




1 Locks all the doors
2 Closes the windows and moon roof (press and hold)*
3 Unlocks all the doors
4 Opens the windows and moon roof (press and hold)*
5 Opens and closes the back door (press and hold)

*: This setting must be customized at any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

■ **Operation signals**

Doors:
The emergency flashers flash to indicate that the doors have been locked/unlocked. (Locked: Once; Unlocked: Twice)

Power back door (if equipped):
A buzzer sounds to indicate that the back door is opening/closing.

Windows and moon roof:
A buzzer sounds to indicate that the windows and moon roof are opening.

■ **Door lock buzzer**

If an attempt to lock the doors is made when a door is not fully closed, a buzzer sounds continuously. Fully close the door to stop the buzzer, and lock the vehicle once more.

■ **Security feature**

→P. 36

■ **Back door operation**

The back door will not be locked automatically after it has been opened and then closed. Lock the back door again when you leave the vehicle.

■ **Alarm**

Using the wireless remote control to lock the doors will set the alarm system. (→P. 122)

■ **Reversing the operation of the power back door**

Pressing the wireless remote control switch again while the power back door is operating will cause the operation to reverse.

■ **Conditions affecting operation**

→P. 37

■ **If the wireless remote control does not operate properly**

Locking and unlocking the doors: Use the mechanical key. (→P. 591)

■ **Electronic key battery depletion**

→P. 40

■ **When the electronic key battery is fully depleted**

→P. 501

■ **Customization**

Settings (e.g. door unlocking function) can be changed.
(Customizable features →P. 622)

**⚠ CAUTION**

■ **When closing the windows or moon roof using wireless remote control**

Observe the following precautions.
Failing to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Check to make sure that all passengers do not have any part of their body in a position where it could be caught when a window or moon roof is being operated.
- To prevent inadvertent power windows and moon roof operation, never let a small child have and use the wireless remote control.

■ **Jam protection function**

- Never try jamming any part of your body to activate the jam protection function intentionally.
- The jam protection function may not work if something gets caught just before the window or moon roof fully closes.

# Side doors

The vehicle can be locked and unlocked using the entry function, wireless remote control or door lock switches.

## Entry function

→P. 32

## Wireless remote control

→P. 53

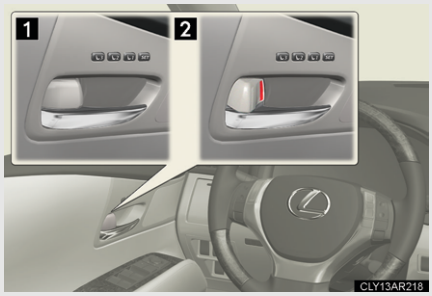
## Door lock switches




1 Locks all the doors

2 Unlocks all the doors

## Inside lock buttons




1 Locks the door

2 Unlocks the door

On some models: The front doors can be opened by pulling the inside handle even if the lock button is in the lock position.

## Locking the front door from the outside without a key

STEP 1 Move the inside lock button to the lock position.

STEP 2 Close the door while pulling the door handle.

The door cannot be locked if the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode, or the electronic key is left inside the vehicle.

The key may not be detected correctly and the door may be locked.

## Rear door child-protector lock




The door cannot be opened from inside the vehicle when the lock is set.

1 Unlock

2 Lock

These locks can be set to prevent children from opening the rear doors. Push down on each rear door switch to lock both rear doors.

■ **Impact detection door lock release system**

In the event that the vehicle is subject to a strong impact, all the doors are unlocked. Depending on the force of the impact or the type of accident, however, the system may not operate.

■ **Using the mechanical key**

The doors can also be locked and unlocked with the mechanical key. (→P. 591)

■ **If a wrong key is used**

The key cylinder rotates freely to isolate inside mechanism.

■ **Customization**

Settings (e.g. unlocking function using a key) can be changed.
(Customizable features →P. 622)

**⚠ CAUTION**

■ **To prevent an accident**

Observe the following precautions while driving the vehicle.
Failure to do so may result in a door opening and an occupant falling out, resulting in death or serious injury.

- Always use a seat belt.
- Ensure that all the doors are properly closed.
- Do not pull the inside handle of the doors while driving.
  The doors may be opened and the passengers are thrown out of the vehicle and it may result in serious injury or death.

  Be especially careful with the front doors, as the door may be opened even if the inside lock button is in the locked position.
- Set the rear door child-protector locks when children are seated in the rear seats.

## ⚠ CAUTION

**■ When opening or closing a door**

Check the surroundings of the vehicle such as whether the vehicle is on an incline, whether there is enough space for a door to open and whether a strong wind is blowing.When opening or closing the door, hold the door handle tightly to prepare for any unpredictable movement.

# Back door

**The back door can be locked/unlocked and opened/closed by the following procedures:**

## Locking and unlocking the back door

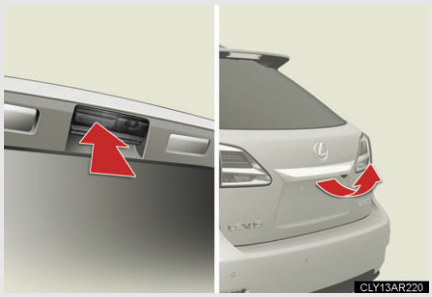
▶ Door lock switches
→P. 56

▶ Entry function
→P. 32

▶ Wireless remote control
→P. 53

## Opening the back door from outside the vehicle

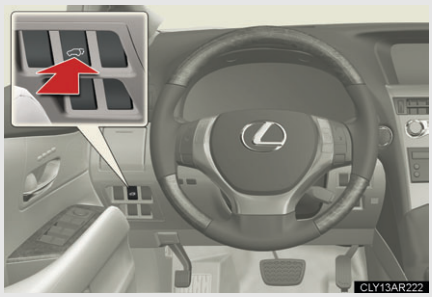
▶ Back door opener button




Raise the back door while pressing the back door opener to release the lock to open the back door.

▶ Wireless remote control (vehicles with a power back door)
→P. 53

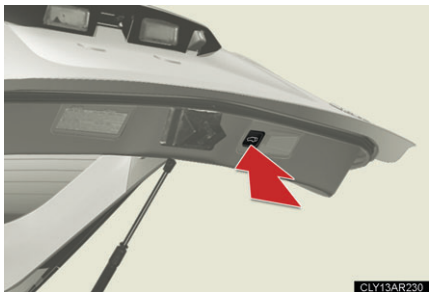
## Opening the back door from inside the vehicle (vehicles with a power back door)




Press and hold the switch to open/close the back door.

Pressing the switch again while the power back door is operating will cause the operation to reverse.

## Power back door switch (vehicles with a power back door)

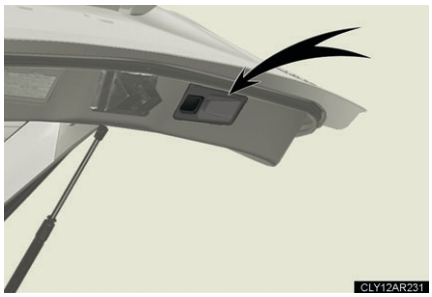



Press the switch to close the back door.

Pressing the switch again while the power back door is closing will cause it to open again.

However, the reverse operation cannot be performed for the first second after automatic operation starts even if the switch is pressed again.

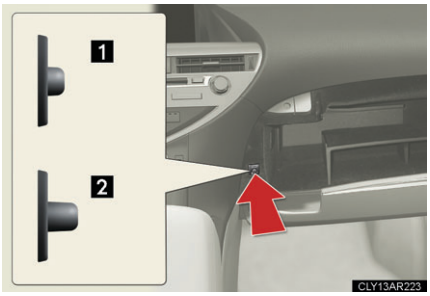
## When closing the back door




Lower the back door using the back door handle, and make sure to push the back door down from the outside to close it.

## Canceling the power back door system (vehicles with a power back door)

Turn off the main switch in the glove box to disable the power back door system.




1 On

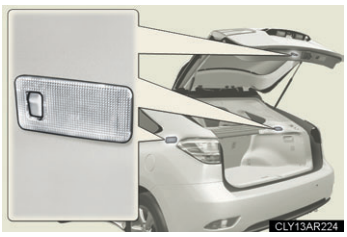
2 Off

The back door cannot be operated even with the wireless remote control or power back door switch.

### The power back door can be operated when (vehicles with a power back door)

- The back door is unlocked.
- The power back door main switch is on.
- To open the power back door when the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is in IGNITION ON mode, the power back door main switch must be on, the vehicle speed must be lower than 3 km/h (1 mph) and the shift lever must be in P. (When using the back door opener button only)
- The “ENGINE START STOP” switch is turned off. (When using the wireless remote control only)

### Luggage compartment lights




The luggage compartment lights turn on when the back door is opened with the luggage compartment light switch on.

When the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned off, the lights will go off automatically after 20 minutes.

### Back door closer (vehicles with a power back door)

In the event that the back door is left slightly open, the back door closer will automatically close it to the fully closed position.

- The back door closer will operate regardless of the "ENGINE START STOP" switch mode.
- The back door can be opened while the back door closer is operating by pressing the back door opener button.

### Power back door operation (vehicles with a power back door)

- A buzzer sounds to indicate that the back door is opening/closing.
- The back door can still be opened and closed manually, even when the power back door main switch is off.
- Pressing the back door opener button while the power back door system is operating will cause the back door to switch to manual operation.
- If anything obstructs the power back door while it is closing/opening, a buzzer will sound and the back door will automatically operate in the opposite direction.
- If two or more successive attempts are made to close the back door, a buzzer will sound and the back door will switch to manual operation.

■ **Jam protection function (vehicles with a power back door)**




Sensors are attached to the left and right sides of the power back door. If these sensors detect an obstruction while the power back door is closing, the jam protection function will return the door to the fully open position.

■ **After the back door has been opened and then closed**

Lock the back door again as the back door will not lock automatically.

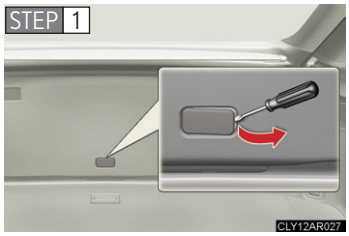
■ **Luggage mode (vehicles with electronically modulated air suspension)**

Pressing the vehicle height selector switch to lower the vehicle height makes loading luggage easier. (→P. 256)

### If the back door opener is inoperative

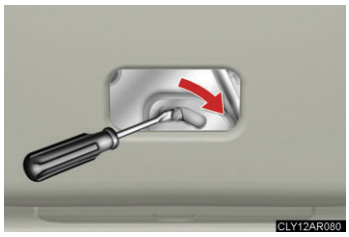
The back door can be opened from the inside.

STEP 1 Remove the cover.

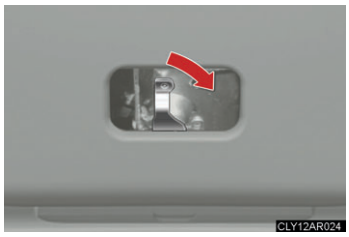



STEP 2 Move the lever.

▶ Vehicles without a power back door




▶ Vehicles with a power back door




### When reconnecting the battery or changing a fuse while the back door is open:

To enable the power back door to operate properly, initialize the system by completely closing the back door manually. If the battery is reconnected or a fuse is changed while the back door is closed, initializing the system is not necessary.

## ⚠ CAUTION

### ■ Caution while driving

- Keep the back door closed while driving.
  If the back door is left open, it may hit near-by objects while driving or luggage may be unexpectedly thrown out, causing an accident.
  In addition, exhaust gases may enter the vehicle, causing death or a serious health hazard. Make sure to close the back door before driving.
- Before driving the vehicle, make sure that the back door is fully closed. If the back door is not fully closed, it may open unexpectedly while driving, causing an accident.
- Never let anyone sit in the luggage compartment. In the event of sudden braking or a collision, they are susceptible to death or serious injury.

### ■ When children are in the vehicle

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Do not allow children to play in the luggage compartment.
  If a child is accidentally locked in the luggage compartment, they could have heat exhaustion or other injuries.
- Do not allow a child to open or close the back door.
  Doing so may cause the back door to move unexpectedly, or cause the child's hands, head, or neck to be caught by the closing back door, which may result in death or serious injury of the child.

## ⚠ CAUTION

### ■ Operating the back door

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may cause parts of the body to be caught, resulting in death or serious injury.

- Remove any heavy loads, such as snow and ice, from the back door before opening it. Failure to do so may cause the back door to suddenly shut again after it is opened.
- When opening or closing the back door, thoroughly check to make sure the surrounding area is safe.
- If anyone is in the vicinity, make sure they are safe and let them know that the back door is about to open or close.
- Use caution when opening or closing the back door in windy weather as it may move abruptly in strong wind.




- The back door may suddenly shut if it is not opened fully. It is more difficult to open or close the back door on an incline than on a level surface, so beware of the back door unexpectedly opening or closing by itself. Make sure that the back door is fully open and secure before using the luggage compartment.




- When closing the back door, take extra care to prevent your fingers etc. from being caught.
- When closing the back door, make sure to press it lightly on its outer surface. If the back door handle is used to fully close the back door, it may result in hands or arms being caught.

## ⚠ CAUTION

- Do not pull on the back door damper stay to close the back door, and do not hang on the back door damper stay.
  Doing so may cause hands to be caught or the back door damper stay to break, causing an accident.
- If a bicycle carrier or similar heavy object is attached to the back door, it may suddenly shut again after being opened, causing someone's hands, head or neck to be caught and injured. When installing an accessory part to the back door, using a genuine Lexus part is recommended.

### ■ Back door closer




- In the event that the back door is left slightly open, the back door closer will automatically close it to the fully closed position. It takes several seconds before the back door closer begins to operate. Be careful not to catch fingers or anything else in the back door, as this may cause bone fractures or other serious injuries.
- Use caution when using the back door closer as it still operates when the power back door system is cancelled.

## ⚠ CAUTION

### ■ Power back door

Observe the following precautions when operating the power back door.
Failure to do so may cause death or serious injury.

- Check the safety of the surrounding area to make sure there are no obstacles or anything that could cause any of your belongings to get caught.
- If anyone is in the vicinity, make sure they are safe and let them know that the back door is about to open or close.
- If the power back door system is turned off with the main switch while the back door is operating automatically, the automatic operation is stopped. The back door then has to be operated manually. Take extra care when on an incline, as the back door may open or close unexpectedly.
- If the operating conditions of the power back door are no longer met, a buzzer may sound and the back door may stop opening or closing. The back door then has to be operated manually. Take extra care when on an incline, as the back door may open or close abruptly.
- On an incline, the back door may suddenly shut after it opens. Make sure the back door is fully open and secure.
- In the following situations, the power back door may detect an abnormality and automatic operation may be stopped. In this case, the back door has to be operated manually. Take extra care when on an incline, as the back door may open or close abruptly.
  - When the back door contacts an obstacle
  - When the battery voltage suddenly drops, such as when the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode or the engine is started during automatic operation
- If a bicycle carrier or similar heavy object is attached to the back door, the power back door may not operate, causing itself to malfunction, or the back door may suddenly shut again after being opened, causing someone’s hands, head or neck to be caught and injured. When installing an accessory part to the back door, using a genuine Lexus part is recommended.

## ⚠ CAUTION

**■ Jam protection function**

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may cause death or serious injury.

- Be careful while the jam protection function is operating. Being hit by the back door may result in an injury.
- Although the back door stops closing when the jam protection function detects an object, take extra care as you may still be injured if part of your body is already caught.
- If anything obstructs the power back door while it is closing, the jam protection function will cause the back door to automatically operate in the opposite direction. However, be careful not to jam body parts in the doorframe, as an injury may result.
- Never use any part of your body to intentionally activate the jam protection function.
- The jam protection function may not work if something gets caught just before the back door fully closes. Be careful not to catch fingers or anything else.
- The jam protection function may not work depending on the shape of the object that is caught. Be careful not to catch fingers or anything else.
- The sensors located on the right and left sides of the power back door detect obstructions and prevent them from becoming jammed in the door. Some objects may not be detected depending on their shape or how they are jammed. Be careful not to get fingers or other body parts caught in the back door while it is operating as this may result in a serious injury.

NOTICE

**Back door damper stays**

The back door is equipped with damper stays that hold the back door in place.

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may cause damage to the back door damper stay, resulting in malfunction.




- Do not attach any foreign objects, such as stickers, plastic sheets, or adhesives to the damper stay rod.
- Do not touch the damper stay rod with gloves or other fabric items.
- Do not attach any accessories other than genuine Lexus parts to the back door.
- Do not place your hand on the damper stay or apply lateral forces to it.

**To prevent back door closer malfunction**

- Do not apply excessive force to the back door while the back door closer is operating.
- If the back door is opened and closed repeatedly in a short amount of time, the back door closer may stop operating. In this case, manually open the back door once and wait for a while before attempting to close it again.

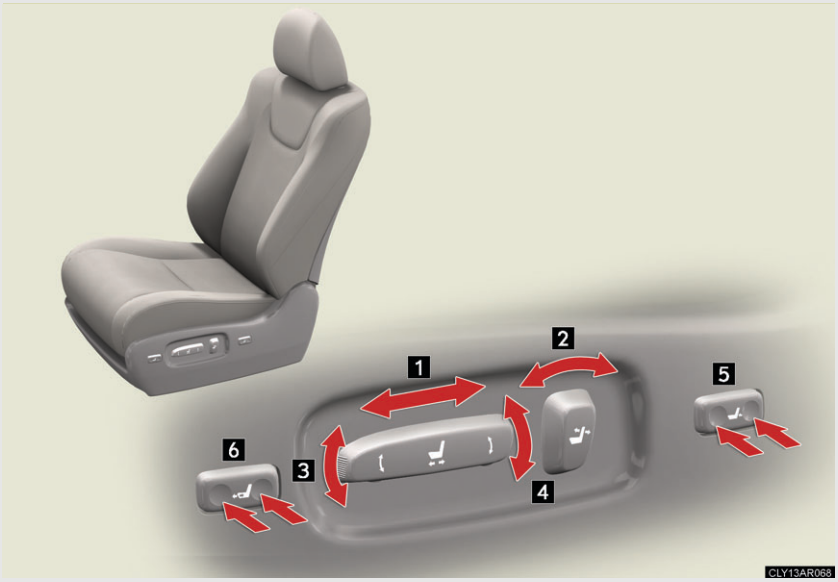
NOTICE

■ To prevent damage to the power back door

- Make sure that there is no ice between the back door and frame that would prevent movement of the back door. Operating the power back door when excessive load is present on the back door may cause a malfunction.
- Do not apply excessive force to the back door while the power back door is operating.
- Take care not to damage the sensors (installed on the right and left edges of the power back door) with a knife or other sharp object. If the sensor is disconnected, the power back door will not operate in automatic operation.
- When manually closing the back door immediately after the power back door has been automatically opened fully, some resistance may be felt.

# Front seats






1 Seat position adjustment switch
2 Seatback angle adjustment switch
3 Seat cushion (front) angle adjustment switch
4 Vertical height adjustment switch
5 Lumbar support adjustment switch
6 Seat cushion length adjustment switch (if equipped)

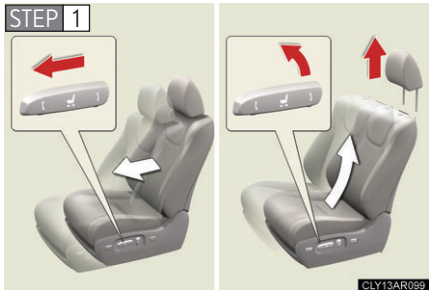
## Flattening the front seatbacks

### Before flattening the front seatbacks

Slide the rear seats as far back as possible. (→P. 77)

### Flattening the front seatbacks

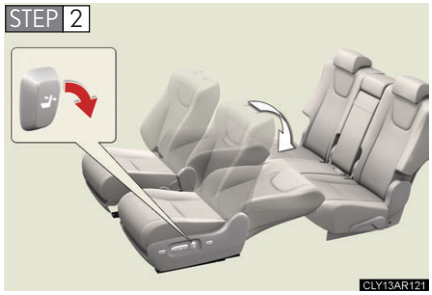
STEP 1




Move the front seat forward, raise the seat, and remove the head-restraint. (→P. 87)

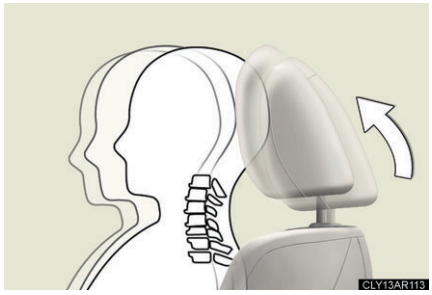
After returning the seat to its original position, make sure to replace the head restraint.

STEP 2




Move the seatback angle adjustment switch backward to flatten the seatback.

## Active head restraints

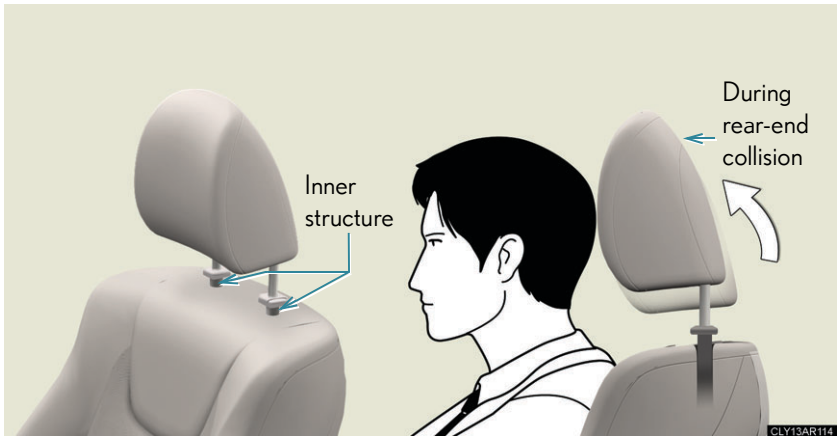



When the occupant's lower back presses against the seatback during a rear-end collision, the head restraint moves slightly forward and upward to help reduce the risk of whiplash to the seat occupant.



### Active head restraints

Even small forces applied to the seatback may cause the head restraint to move. Pushing up a locked head restraint forcibly may appear the head restraint inner structure. These do not indicate problems.



## ⚠ CAUTION

**■ Seat adjustment**

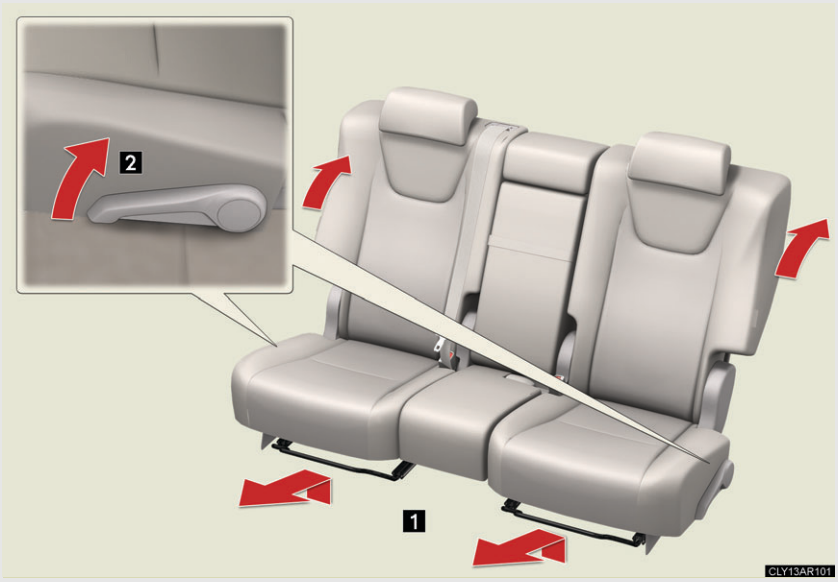
- To reduce the risk of sliding under the lap belt during a collision, do not recline the seat more than necessary.
  If the seat is too reclined, the lap belt may slide past the hips and apply restraint forces directly to the abdomen, or your neck may contact the shoulder belt, increasing the risk of death or serious injury in the event of an accident.
- Adjustments should not be made while driving as the seat may unexpectedly move and cause the driver to lose control of the vehicle.

**■ While driving**

Do not allow passengers to ride on the flattened seat.

# Rear seats

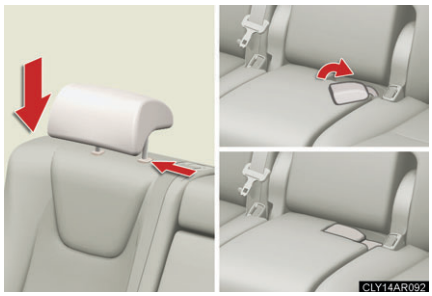





1 Seat position adjustment lever
2 Seatback angle adjustment lever

## Folding down the rear seatbacks

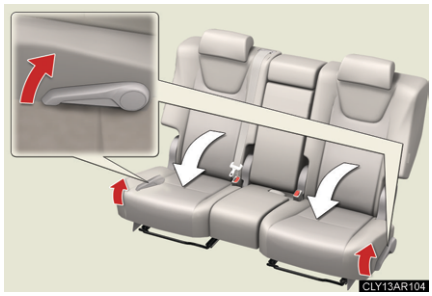
### Before folding down the rear seatbacks




Stow all the head restraints and the rear center seat belt buckle.

## Folding down rear seatbacks

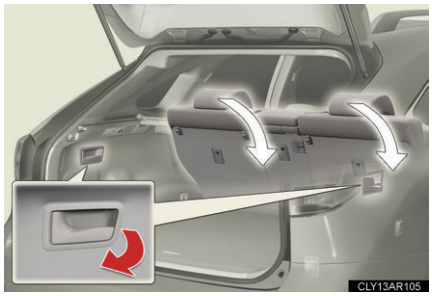
▶ From inside




Pull the seatback angle adjustment lever.

To return the rear seatbacks to their original positions, lift them up until they lock.

▶ From outside



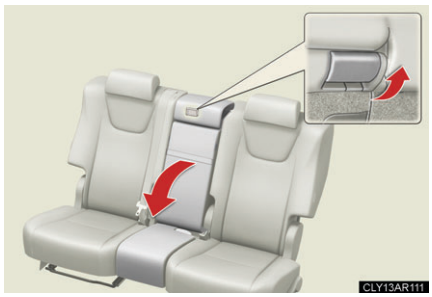

Pull the levers.

Left side lever: Folds down the left side rear seat

Right side lever: Folds down the right side and center rear seats

To return the rear seatbacks to their original positions, lift them up until they lock.

## Folding down the rear center seatback




Pull the center seatback angle lever behind the seatback and fold the seatback down.

To return the rear center seatback to its original position, lift it up until it locks.

### CAUTION

**When folding the rear seatbacks down**

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Do not fold the seatbacks down while driving.
- Do not fold seatbacks down while passengers are seated or luggage is placed on the seats.
- Stop the vehicle on level ground, set the parking brake and shift the shift lever to P.
- After folding the seatback, lightly move the seat back and forth to lock it in place.
- Do not allow anyone to sit on a folded seatback or in the luggage compartment while driving.
- Do not allow children to enter the luggage compartment.

**Seat adjustment**

- To reduce the risk of sliding under the lap belt during a collision, do not recline the seat more than necessary.
  If the seat is too reclined, the lap belt may slide past the hips and apply restraint forces directly to the abdomen, or your neck may contact the shoulder belt, increasing the risk of death or serious injury in the event of an accident.
- Adjustments should not be made while driving as the seat may unexpectedly move and cause the driver to lose control of the vehicle.

## ⚠ CAUTION

**■ After returning the rear seatback to the upright position**

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Make sure the seatback is securely locked by pushing it forward and rearward on the top.
- Check that the seat belts are not twisted or caught in the seatback.

## ⚠ NOTICE

**■ Stowing the center seat belt buckle**

Before folding down the rear seatbacks, stow the center seat belt buckle to prevent it from becoming caught in the seatbacks.

# Driving position memory*

Your preferred driving position (the position of the driver's seat, steering wheel and outside rear view mirrors) can be memorized and recalled with the touch of a button. It is also possible to set this function to activate automatically when the doors are unlocked.
Three different driving positions can be entered into memory.

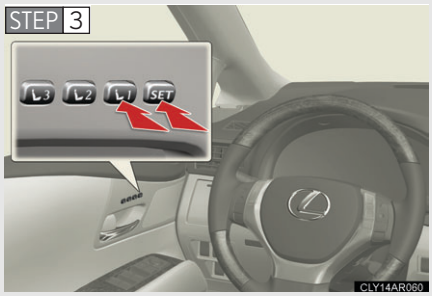
On some models, the same buttons are found on the front passenger's side, allowing the position of the front passenger's seat to be memorized.

## Entering a position to memory

STEP 1 Turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch to IGNITION ON mode.

STEP 2 Adjust the driver's seat, steering wheel and outside rear view mirrors to the desired positions.

STEP 3




Press the "SET" button, then within 3 seconds press button "1", "2" or "3" until the signal beeps.

If the selected button has already been preset, the previously recorded position will be overwritten.



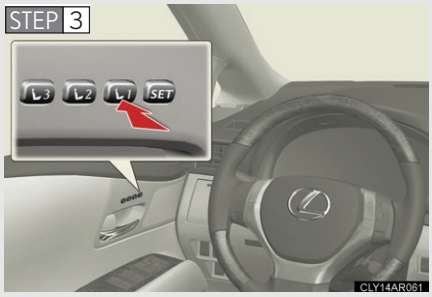
*: If equipped

## Recalling the memorized position

STEP 1 Check that the shift lever is set in P.

STEP 2 Turn the “ENGINE START STOP” switch to IGNITION ON mode.

STEP 3




Press button “1”, “2” or “3” until the signal beeps to recall the desired position.

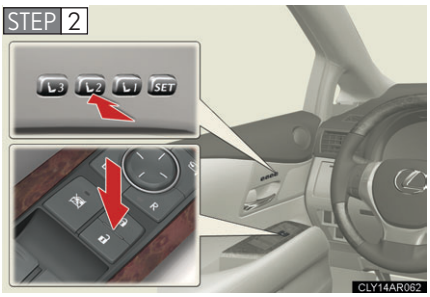
## Linking driving position memory with door unlock operation (driver's side only)

Record your driving position to button "1", "2" or "3" before performing the following.

Carry only the key (including the card key) to which you want to link the driving position. If 2 or more keys are in the vehicle, the driving position cannot be linked properly.

STEP 1 Shift the shift lever to P and close the driver's door. Turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch to IGNITION ON mode.

STEP 2

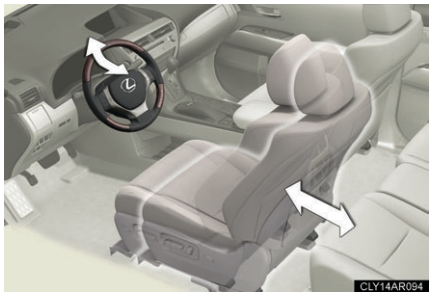



Press the desired button ("1", "2" or "3") to recall the position. Then, while keep pressing the button, press the driver's door lock switches (either lock or unlock) until the signal beeps.

The driving position is recalled when the driver's door is unlocked using the entry function or wireless remote control and the driver's door is opened.

## Power easy access system (driver's side only)

When the driver enters and exits the vehicle, the driver's seat and steering wheel will automatically perform the following operations:




Exiting the vehicle: When all of the following actions have been performed, the steering wheel will move up and back to the point farthest away from the driver and the seat will move backward (auto away function):

- The shift lever has been shifted to P
- The "ENGINE START STOP" switch has been turned off
- The driver's seat belt has been unfastened

Entering the vehicle: When either of the following actions has been performed, the steering wheel will move toward the driver and seat will move forward (auto return function):

- The "ENGINE START STOP" switch has been turned to ACCESSORY mode
- The driver's seat belt has been fastened

■ **When driving position memory is linked with door unlock operation**

If the driver's door is opened, the driver's seat will move toward the memorized position but stop slightly beforehand to allow easy access to the vehicle.
Turning the "ENGINE START STOP" switch to ACCESSORY mode or fastening the driver's seat belt moves the seat fully into the memorized position.

■ **Canceling the linked door unlock operation**

STEP 1 Turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch to IGNITION ON mode and close the driver's door.

STEP 2 While pressing the "SET" button, press the driver's door lock switches (either lock or unlock) until the signal beeps.

■ **Operating the driving position memory after turning the "ENGINE START STOP" switch off**

Memorized positions (except for the steering wheel position) can be activated up to 180 seconds after the driver's door is opened and another 60 seconds after it is closed again, even after turning the "ENGINE START STOP" switch off.

■ **Stopping seat position operation part-way through**

Perform any of the following operations:

- Press the "SET" button.
- Press button "1", "2" or "3".
- Adjust the seat using the switches (only cancels seat position recall).
- Adjust the steering wheel using the tilt and telescopic steering control switch (only cancels steering wheel position recall).

■ **Correct seat position**

When the seat is in the most forward or most backward position, and the seat is being moved in those directions, the system may not correctly recognize the current position and the memorized position will not be correctly recalled.

■ **The auto away function for exiting the driver seat**

If the seat is already close to the rearmost position, the auto away function may not operate when the driver exits the vehicle.

■ **Customization**

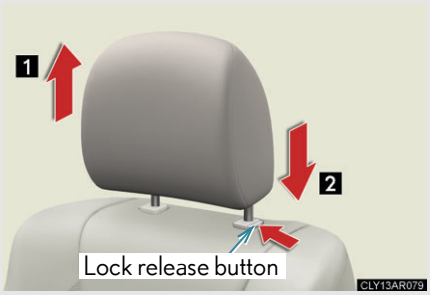
The distance that the driver's seat moves backward during the auto away function can be changed. (Customizable features →P. 622)

**⚠ CAUTION**

**■ Seat adjustment caution**

Take care during seat adjustment so that the seat does not strike the rear passenger or squeeze your body against the steering wheel.

# Head restraints




1 Up

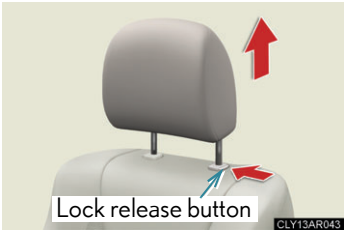
Pull the head restraints up.

2 Down

Push the head restraint down while pressing the lock release button.

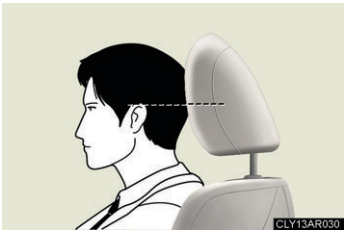


## ■ Removing the head restraints




Pull the head restraint up while pressing the lock release button.

## ■ Adjusting the height of the head restraints (front seats)




Make sure that the head restraints are adjusted so that the center of the head restraint is closest to the top of your ears.

## ■ Adjusting the rear seat head restraints

Always raise the head restraints to the uppermost lock position during use.

## ⚠ CAUTION

**■ Head restraint precautions**

Observe the following precautions regarding the head restraints.
Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Use the head restraints designed for each respective seat.
- Adjust the head restraints to the correct position at all times.
- After adjusting the head restraints, push down on them and make sure they are locked in position.
- Do not drive with the head restraints removed.

# Seat belts

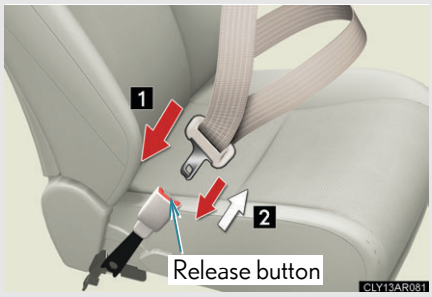
Make sure that all occupants are wearing their seat belts before driving the vehicle.

## Correct use of the seat belts



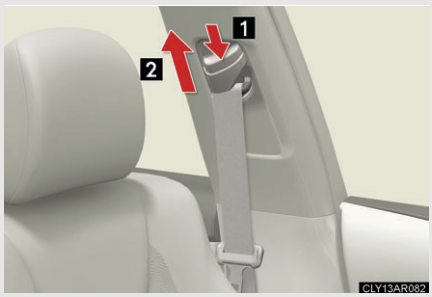

- Extend the shoulder belt so that it comes fully over the shoulder, but does not come into contact with the neck or slide off the shoulder.
- Position the lap belt as low as possible over the hips.
- Adjust the position of the seatback. Sit up straight and well back in the seat.
- Do not twist the seat belt.

## Fastening and releasing the seat belt




1. To fasten the seat belt, push the plate into the buckle until a click sound is heard.
2. To release the seat belt, press the release button.

### Adjusting the seat belt shoulder anchor height (front seats)

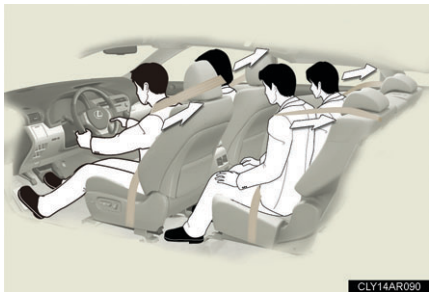



1 Push the seat belt shoulder anchor down while pressing the release button.

2 Push the seat belt shoulder anchor up.

Move the height adjuster up and down as needed until you hear a click.

## Seat belt pretensioners (front and outside rear seats)




The pretensioner helps the seat belt to quickly restrain the occupant by retracting the seat belt when the vehicle is subjected to certain types of severe frontal collision.

The pretensioner may not activate in the event of a minor frontal impact, a side impact or a rear impact.

## Pre-crash seat belts (front seats of vehicles with a pre-crash safety system)

If the system determines that a collision is unavoidable, the front seat belts will retract before the collision. (→P. 280)

### Emergency locking retractor (ELR)

The retractor will lock the belt during a sudden stop or on impact. It may also lock if you lean forward too quickly. To allow the belt to extend, retract the belt and then pull it slowly.

### Child seat belt usage

The seat belts of your vehicle were principally designed for persons of adult size.

- Use a child restraint system appropriate for the child, until the child becomes large enough to properly wear the vehicle's seat belt. (→P. 142)
- When the child becomes large enough to properly wear the vehicle's seat belt, follow the instructions on P. 89 regarding seat belt usage.

### Replacing the belt after the pretensioner has been activated

If the vehicle is involved in multiple collisions, the pretensioner will activate for the first collision, but will not activate for the second or subsequent collisions.

### Seat belt regulations

If seat belt regulations exist in the country where you reside, please contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional, for seat belt replacement or installation.

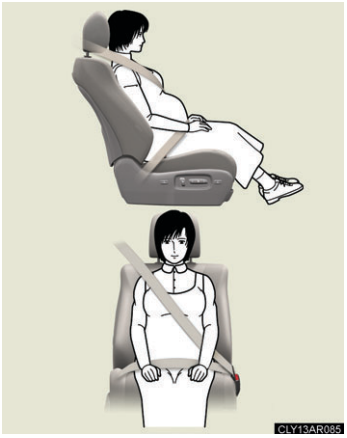
## ⚠ CAUTION

Observe the following precautions to reduce the risk of injury in the event of sudden braking, sudden swerving or an accident.
Failing to do so may cause death or serious injury.

### ■ Wearing a seat belt

- Ensure that all passengers wear a seat belt.
- Always wear a seat belt properly.
- Each seat belt should be used by one person only. Do not use a seat belt for more than one person at once, including children.
- Lexus recommends that children be seated in the rear seat and always use a seat belt and/or an appropriate child restraint system.
- To achieve a proper seating position, do not recline the seat more than necessary. The seat belt is most effective when the occupants are sitting up straight and well back in the seats.
- Do not wear the shoulder belt under your arm.
- Always wear your seat belt low and snug across your hips.

### ■ Pregnant women




Obtain medical advice and wear the seat belt in the proper way. (→P. 89)

Women who are pregnant should position the lap belt as low as possible over the hips in the same manner as other occupants. Extend the shoulder belt completely over the shoulder and position the belt across the chest. Avoid belt contact over the round part of the abdominal area.

If the seat belt is not worn properly, not only the pregnant woman, but also the fetus could suffer death or serious injury as a result of sudden braking or a collision.

### ■ People suffering illness

Obtain medical advice and wear the seat belt in the proper way.

## ⚠ CAUTION

**■ When children are in the vehicle**

Do not allow children to play with the seat belt. If the seat belt becomes twisted around a child's neck, it may lead to choking or other serious injuries that could result in death.
If this occurs and the buckle cannot be unfastened, scissors should be used to cut the belt.

**■ Seat belt pretensioners**

If the pretensioner has activated, the SRS warning light will come on. In that case, the seat belt cannot be used again and must be replaced at any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

**■ Adjustable shoulder anchor**

Always make sure the shoulder belt is positioned across the center of your shoulder. The belt should be kept away from your neck, but not falling off your shoulder. Failure to do so could reduce the amount of protection in an accident and cause death or serious injuries in the event of a sudden stop, sudden swerve or accident. (→P. 90)

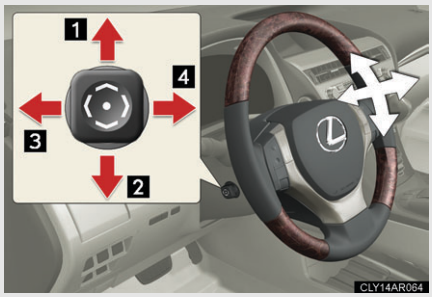
**■ Seat belt damage and wear**

- Do not damage the seat belts by allowing the belt, plate, or buckle to be jammed in the door.
- Inspect the seat belt system periodically. Check for cuts, fraying, and loose parts. Do not use a damaged seat belt until it is replaced. Damaged seat belts cannot protect an occupant from death or serious injury.
- Ensure that the belt and tab are locked and the belt is not twisted.
  If the seat belt does not function correctly, immediately contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
- Replace the seat assembly, including the belts, if your vehicle has been involved in a serious accident, even if there is no obvious damage.
- Do not attempt to install, remove, modify, disassemble or dispose of the seat belts. Have any necessary repairs carried out by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional. Inappropriate handling of the pretensioner may prevent it from operating properly, resulting in death or serious injury.

# Steering wheel

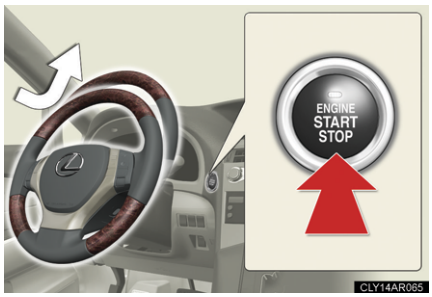
**The steering wheel can be adjusted to a comfortable position.**

Operating the switch moves the steering wheel in the following directions:




1 Up
2 Down
3 Away from the driver
4 Toward the driver

## Auto tilt away




When the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned off, the steering wheel returns to its stowed position by moving up and away to enable easier driver entry and exit.

Turning the "ENGINE START STOP" switch to ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode will return the steering wheel to the original position.

■ **The steering wheel can be adjusted when**

The "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode*.

*: Vehicles with driving position memory: If the driver's seat belt is fastened, the steering wheel can be adjusted regardless of "ENGINE START STOP" switch mode.

■ **Automatic adjustment of the steering position (vehicles with driving position memory)**

A desired steering position can be entered to memory and recalled automatically by the driving position memory. (→P. 81)

■ **Notes for the auto tilt away function (vehicles with driving position memory)**

The auto tilt away function can only operate when the "ENGINE START STOP" switch has been turned off, the driver seat belt has been unfastened and the driver's seat movement (→P. 622) is in a setting other than off.

When the driver fastens the seat belt again, the steering wheel will return to the original position. (→P. 84)

**⚠ CAUTION**

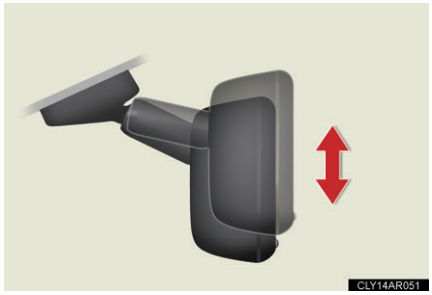
■ **Caution while driving**

Do not adjust the steering wheel while driving.
Doing so may cause the driver to mishandle the vehicle and cause an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

# Anti-glare inside rear view mirror

**The rear view mirror's position can be adjusted to enable sufficient confirmation of the rear view in accordance with the driver's seating posture.**

## Adjusting the height of rear view mirror

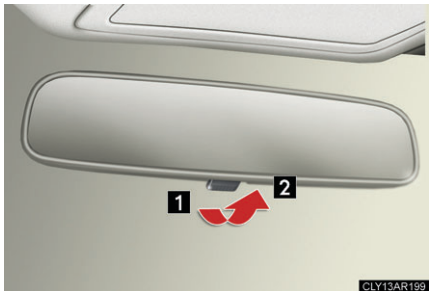



Adjust the height of the rear view mirror by moving it up and down.

## Anti-glare function

▶ Manual anti-glare inside rear view mirror

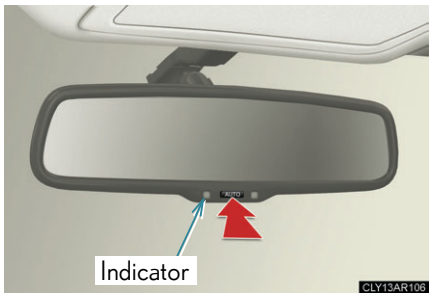
Reflected light from the headlights of vehicles behind can be reduced by operating the lever.




1 Normal position
2 Anti-glare position

▶ Auto anti-glare inside rear view mirror

Responding to the level of brightness of the headlights of vehicles behind, the reflected light is automatically reduced.




Changing automatic anti-glare function mode

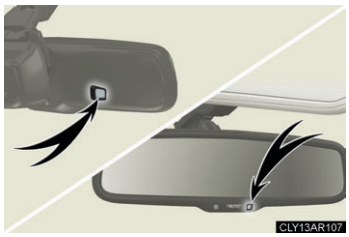
ON/OFF

When the automatic anti-glare function is in ON mode, the indicator illuminates.

The function will set to ON mode each time the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode.

Pressing the button turns the function to OFF mode. (The indicator also turns off.)

**■ To prevent sensor error (vehicles with auto anti-glare inside rear view mirror)**




To ensure that the sensors operate properly, do not touch or cover them.

**⚠ CAUTION**

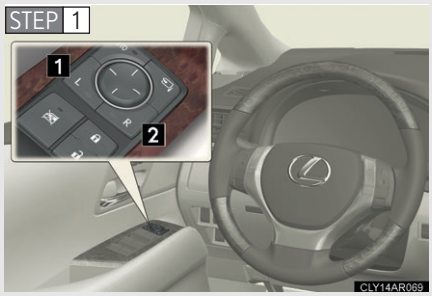
**■ Caution while driving**

Do not adjust the position of the mirror while driving.

Doing so may lead to mishandling of the vehicle and cause an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

# Outside rear view mirrors

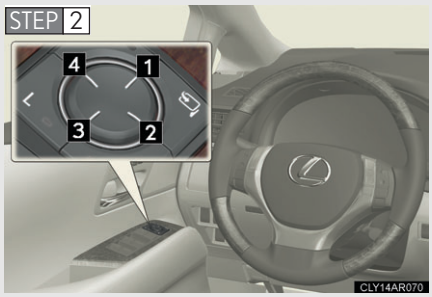
**Mirror angle can be adjusted using the switch.**




To select a mirror to adjust, press the switch.

1 Left
2 Right

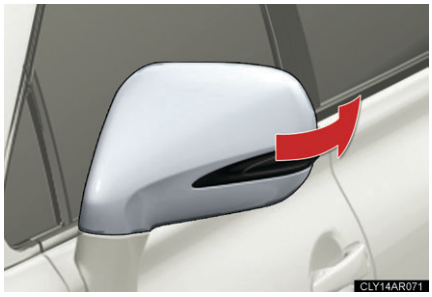
Pressing the same switch again will put the switch in neutral.




To adjust the mirror, press the switch.

1 Up
2 Right
3 Down
4 Left

## Folding the mirrors (manual type)




Push the mirror back in the direction of the vehicle's rear.

## Automatically folding and extending the mirrors (power type)

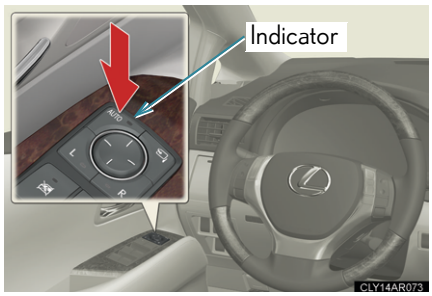
### Using the switch




Press the switch to fold the mirrors.

Press it again to return them.

### Setting automatic mode




Automatic mode allows the folding or extending of the mirrors to be linked to locking/unlocking of the doors.

Press the "AUTO" switch to set automatic mode.

The indicator will come on.

---

**Mirror angle can be adjusted when**

The "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode.

**Linked mirror function when reversing**

When the mirror select switch is in the "L" or "R" position, the outside rear view mirrors will automatically angle downwards when the vehicle is reversing in order to give a better view of the ground. To disable this function, move the mirror select switch to the neutral position (between "L" and "R").

### When the mirrors are fogged up

The outside rear view mirrors can be cleared using the mirror defoggers. Turn on the rear window defogger to turn on the outside rear view mirror defoggers. (→P. 321)

### Automatic adjustment of the mirror angle (vehicles with driving position memory)

A desired mirror face angle can be entered to memory and recalled automatically by the driving position memory. (→P. 81)

### Auto anti-glare function (if equipped)

When the anti-glare inside rear view mirror is set to automatic mode, the outside rear view mirrors will activate in conjunction with the anti-glare inside rear view mirror to reduce reflected light. (→P. 96)

**⚠ CAUTION**

### When driving the vehicle

Observe the following precautions while driving.
Failing to do so may result in loss of control of the vehicle and cause an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

- Do not adjust the mirrors while driving.
- Do not drive with the mirrors folded.
- Both the driver and passenger side mirrors must be extended and properly adjusted before driving.

### When a mirror is moving

To avoid personal injury and mirror malfunction, be careful not to get your hand caught by the moving mirror.

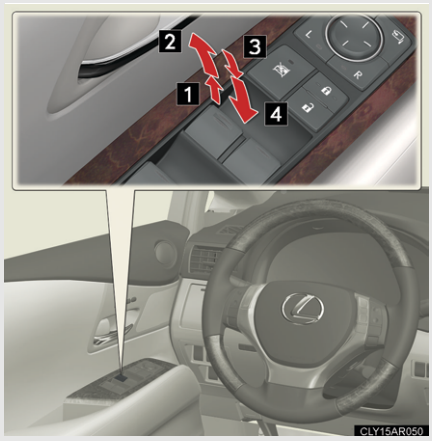
### When the mirror defoggers are operating

Do not touch the rear view mirror surfaces, as they can become very hot and burn you.

# Power windows

**The power windows can be opened and closed using the switches.**

Operating the switch moves the windows as follows:

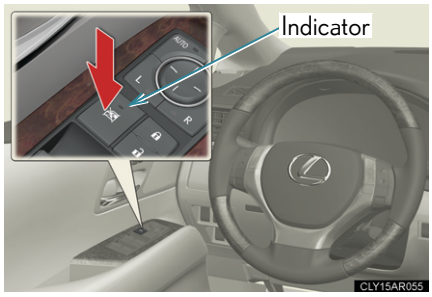



1 Closing
2 One-touch closing*
3 Opening
4 One-touch opening*

*: To stop the window partway, operate the switch in the opposite direction.



## Window lock switch




Press the switch to lock the passenger window switches.

The indicator will come on.

Use this switch to prevent children from accidentally opening or closing a passenger window.

The passenger windows can still be opened and closed using the power window switches on the driver's side even if the lock switch is on.

■ **The power windows can be operated when**

The "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

■ **Operating the power windows after turning the engine off**

The power windows can be operated for approximately 45 seconds even after the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned to ACCESSORY mode or turned off. They cannot, however, be operated once either front door is opened.

■ **Jam protection function**

If an object becomes caught between the window and the window frame, window travel is stopped and the window is opened slightly.

■ **When the power window does not close normally**

If the jam protection function is operating abnormally and a window cannot be closed, perform the following operations using the power window switch on the relevant door.

- After stopping the vehicle, the window can be closed by holding the power window switch in the one-touch closing position while the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode.
- If the window still cannot be closed even by carrying out the operation explained above, initialize the function by performing the following procedure.

STEP 1 Hold the power window switch in the one-touch closing position. Continue holding the switch for a further 6 seconds after the window has closed.

STEP 2 Hold the power window switch in the one-touch opening position. Continue holding the switch for a further 2 seconds after the window has opened completely.

STEP 3 Hold the power window switch in the one-touch closing position once again. Continue holding the switch for a further 2 seconds after the window has closed.

If you release the switch while the window is moving, start again from the beginning. If the window continues to close but then re-open slightly even after performing the above procedure correctly, have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

### Door lock linked window operation

- The power windows can be opened and closed using the mechanical key. (→P. 591)
- The power windows can be opened and closed using the wireless remote control if customized at any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional. (→P. 53)

### Window close suggestion mode

If the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned off with the windows open, a suggestion to close all the windows is shown on the multi-information display. (→P. 208)

### When the battery is disconnected

The window lock switch is disabled. If necessary, press the window lock switch after reconnecting the battery.

### Customization

Settings (e.g. linked door lock operation) can be changed.
(Customizable features →P. 622)

**⚠ CAUTION**

### Closing the windows

Observe the following precautions.
Failing to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Check to make sure that all passengers do not have any part of their body in a position where it could be caught when a window is being operated.
- Do not allow children to operate the power windows.
  Closing a power window on someone can cause death or serious injury.
  The driver is responsible for instructing children not to operate the power windows.

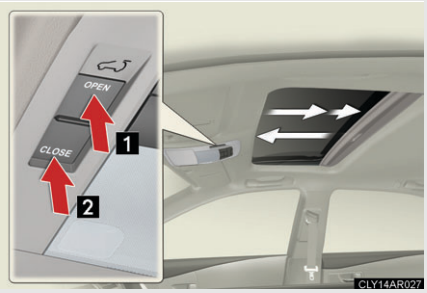
### Jam protection function

- Never use any part of your body to intentionally activate the jam protection function.
- The jam protection function may not work if something gets caught just before the window fully closes. Also, the jam protection does not operate when the power window switch is pulled up continually to close the windows.

# Moon roof*

Use the overhead switches to open and close the moon roof and tilt it up and down.

## Opening and closing




1 Opens the moon roof*

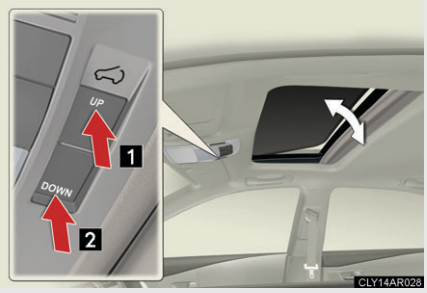
The moon roof stops slightly before the fully open position to reduce wind noise.

Press the switch again to fully open the moon roof.

2 Closes the moon roof*

*: Lightly press either of the moon roof switches to stop the moon roof partway.

## Tilting up and down




1 Tilts the moon roof up*

2 Tilts the moon roof down*

*: Lightly press either of the moon roof switches to stop the moon roof partway.

*: If equipped

■ **The moon roof can be operated when**

The "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

■ **Operating the moon roof after turning the engine off**

The moon roof can be operated for approximately 45 seconds even after the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned to ACCESSORY mode or turned off. It cannot, however, be operated once either front door is opened.

■ **Jam protection function**

If an object is detected between the moon roof and the frame while the moon roof is closing or tilting down, travel is stopped and the moon roof opens slightly.

■ **Sunshade**

The sunshade can be opened and closed manually. However, the sunshade will open automatically when the moon roof is opened.

■ **Door lock linked moon roof operation**

- The moon roof can be opened and closed using the mechanical key. (→P. 591)
- The moon roof can be opened and closed using the wireless remote control if customized at any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional. * (→P. 53)

*: This function cannot be customized unless power window operation using the wireless remote control is enabled.

### When the moon roof does not close normally

Perform the following procedure:

● If the moon roof closes but then re-opens slightly

STEP 1 Stop the vehicle.

STEP 2 Press and hold the "CLOSE" switch.*1
The moon roof will close, reopen and pause for approximately 10 seconds.*2 Then it will close again, tilt up and pause for approximately 1 second. Finally, it will tilt down, open and close.

STEP 3 Check to make sure that the moon roof is completely closed and then release the switch.

● If the moon roof tilts down but then tilts back up

STEP 1 Stop the vehicle.

STEP 2 Press and hold the "UP" switch*1 until the moon roof moves into the tilt up position and stops.

STEP 3 Release the "UP" switch once and then press and hold the "UP" switch again.*1

The moon roof will pause for approximately 10 seconds in the tilt up position.*2 Then it will adjust slightly and pause for approximately 1 second. Finally, it will tilt down, open and close.

STEP 4 Check to make sure that the moon roof is completely closed and then release the switch.

*1: If the switch is released at the incorrect time, the procedure will have to be performed again from the beginning.

*2: If the switch is released after the above mentioned 10 second pause, automatic operation will be disabled. In that case, press and hold the "CLOSE" or "UP" switch, and the moon roof will tilt up and pause for approximately 1 second. Then it will tilt down, open and close. Check to make sure that the moon roof is completely closed and then release the switch.

If the moon roof does not fully close even after performing the above procedure correctly, have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

### Customization

Settings (e.g. linked door lock operation) can be changed.
(Customizable features →P. 622)

## ⚠ CAUTION

**■ Opening the moon roof**

Observe the following precautions.
Failing to do so may cause death or serious injury.

- Do not allow any passengers to put their hands or heads outside the vehicle while it is moving.
- Do not sit on top of the moon roof.

**■ Closing the moon roof**

Observe the following precautions.
Failing to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Check to make sure that all passengers do not have any part of their body in a position where it could be caught when the moon roof is being operated.
- Do not allow children to operate the moon roof.
  Closing the moon roof on someone can cause death or serious injury. The driver is responsible for instructing children not to operate the moon roof.

**■ Jam protection function**

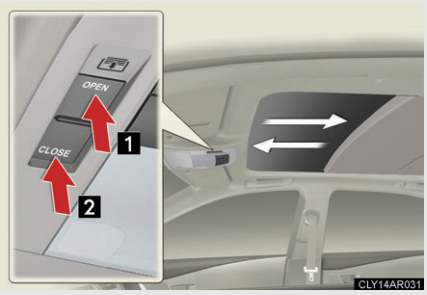
Observe the following precautions.
Failing to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Never use any part of your body to intentionally activate the jam protection function.
- The jam protection function may not work if something gets caught just before the moon roof fully closes. Be careful not to catch fingers or anything else.

# Electronic sunshade*

Use the overhead switches to open and close the electronic sunshade.

## Opening and closing




1 Opens the electronic sunshade*

2 Closes the electronic sunshade*

*: Lightly press either of the switches to stop the electronic sunshade partway.

### The electronic sunshade can be operated when

The "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

### Jam protection function

If an object is detected between the electronic sunshade and the frame while closing, travel is stopped and the electronic sunshade opens slightly.

*: If equipped

## ⚠ CAUTION

**■ Closing the electronic sunshade**

Observe the following precautions.
Failing to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Check to make sure that all passengers do not have any part of their body in a position where it could be caught when the electronic sunshade is being operated.
- Do not allow children to operate the electronic sunshade.
  Closing the electronic sunshade on someone can cause death or serious injury.

**■ Jam protection function**

- Never use any part of your body to intentionally activate the jam protection function.
- The jam protection function may not work if something gets caught just before the electronic sunshade fully closes.

# Opening the fuel tank cap

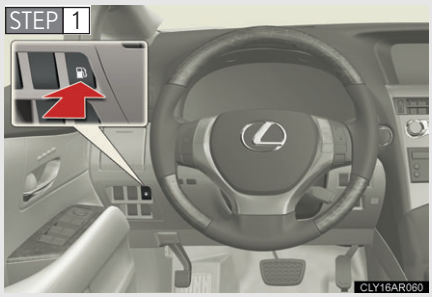
**Perform the following steps to open the fuel tank cap:**

## Before refueling the vehicle

- Turn the “ENGINE START STOP” switch off and ensure that all the doors and windows are closed.
- Confirm the type of fuel. (→P. 112)

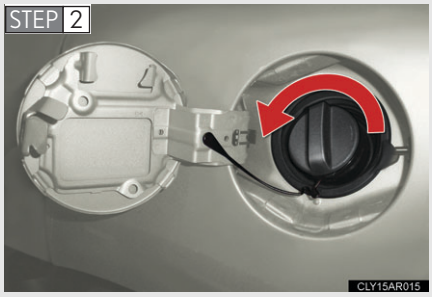
## Opening the fuel tank cap

STEP 1



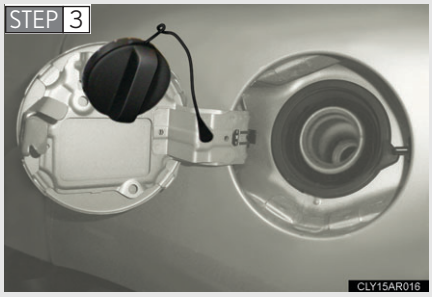

Press the opener to open the fuel filler door.

STEP 2



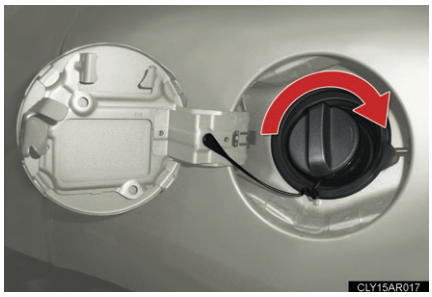

Turn the fuel tank cap slowly to open.

STEP 3




Hang the fuel tank cap on the back of the fuel filler door.

## Closing the fuel tank cap

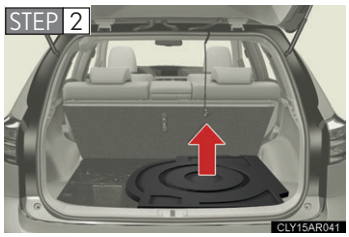



After refueling, turn the fuel tank cap until you hear a click. Once the cap is released, it will turn slightly in the opposite direction.

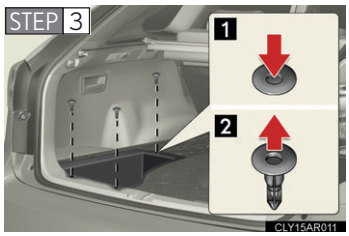


### When the fuel filler door cannot be opened by pressing the inside switch

STEP 1 Open the back door and lift the deck board up. (→P. 574)



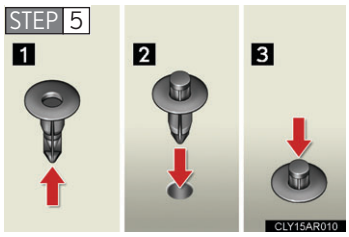

With a compact spare tire only:
Remove the spare tire cover.




Remove the auxiliary box.




Pull the lever.




Install the auxiliary box using the clips.

### Fuel types

Unleaded gasoline (Research Octane Number 95 or higher)

### Use of ethanol blended gasoline in a gasoline engine

Lexus allows the use of ethanol blended gasoline where the ethanol content is up to 10%. Make sure that the ethanol blended gasoline to be used has a Research Octane Number that follows the above.

## ⚠ CAUTION

**■ When refueling the vehicle**

Observe the following precautions while refueling the vehicle.
Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- After exiting the vehicle and before opening the fuel door, touch an unpainted metal surface to discharge any static electricity. It is important to discharge static electricity before refueling because sparks resulting from static electricity can cause fuel vapors to ignite while refueling.
- Always hold the grips on the fuel tank cap and turn it slowly to remove it.
  A whooshing sound may be heard when the fuel tank cap is loosened. Wait until the sound cannot be heard before fully removing the cap. In hot weather, pressurized fuel may spray out of the filler neck and cause injury.
- Do not allow anyone that has not discharged static electricity from their body to come close to an open fuel tank.
- Do not inhale vaporized fuel.
  Fuel contains substances that are harmful if inhaled.
- Do not smoke while refueling the vehicle.
  Doing so may cause the fuel to ignite and cause a fire.
- Do not return to the vehicle or touch any person or object that is statically charged.
  This may cause static electricity to build up, resulting in a possible ignition hazard.

## ⚠ CAUTION

**■ When refueling**

Observe the following precautions to prevent fuel overflowing from the fuel tank:

- Securely insert the fuel nozzle into the fuel filler neck
- Stop filling the tank after the fuel nozzle automatically clicks off
- Do not top off the fuel tank

**■ When replacing the fuel cap**

Do not use anything but a genuine Lexus fuel tank cap designed for your vehicle. Doing so may cause a fire or other incident which may result in death or serious injury.

## ⚠ NOTICE

**■ Refueling**

Do not spill fuel during refueling.
Doing so may damage the vehicle, such as causing the emission control system to operate abnormally or damaging fuel system components or the vehicle's painted surface.

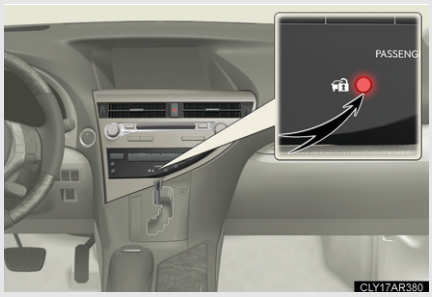
# Engine immobilizer system

**The vehicle's keys have built-in transponder chips that prevent the engine from starting if the key has not been previously registered in the vehicle's on-board computer.**

**Never leave the keys inside the vehicle when you leave the vehicle.**

**This system is designed to help prevent vehicle theft but does not guarantee absolute security against all vehicle thefts.**

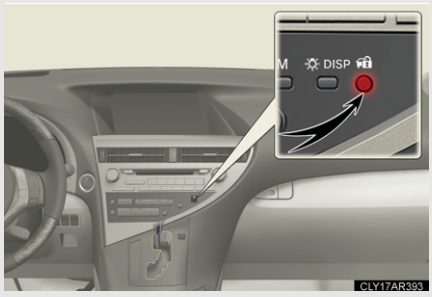
▶ Vehicles with a navigation system




The indicator light flashes after the "ENGINE START STOP" switch has been turned off to indicate that the system is operating.

The indicator light stops flashing after the "ENGINE START STOP" switch has been turned to ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode to indicate that the system has been canceled.

▶ Vehicles without a navigation system




The indicator light flashes after the "ENGINE START STOP" switch has been turned off to indicate that the system is operating.

The indicator light stops flashing after the "ENGINE START STOP" switch has been turned to ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode to indicate that the system has been canceled.

■ **System maintenance**

The vehicle has a maintenance-free type engine immobilizer system.

■ **Conditions that may cause the system to malfunction**

- If the grip portion of the key is in contact with a metallic object
- If the key is in close proximity to or touching a key to the security system (key with a built-in transponder chip) of another vehicle

## Certifications for the engine immobilizer system

This system meets the certification requirements of Radio Law.

**TOYOTA**

**TOYOTA MOTOR CORPORATION**

1, TOYOTA-CHO, TOYOTA, AICHI, 471-8571, JAPAN TEL:+81-565-28-2121

### R&TTE Declaration of Conformity

We,

Manufacturer's Name: TOYOTA MOTOR CORPORATION
Manufacturer's Address: 1, Toyota -cho, Toyota, Aichi, 471-8572, Japan

hereby declare under our sole responsibility that the product:

Product Name: Immobilizer
Product Model: TMIMB-1
to which this declaration relates is in conformity with the essential requirements and other relevant requirements of the R&TTE Directive (1999/5/EC). The product is compliant with the following standards and/or other normative documents:

| | |
|---|---|
| -Health & safety requirements: | EN 60950-1 |
| -EMC requirements | EN 301 489-01 & EN 301 489-03 |
| -Effective uses of radio spectrum: | EN 300 330-2 |

Supplementary information:

| | |
|---|---|
| * CE mark | CE |
| * Member states intended for use | EU and EFTA |

Date: February 25, 2013

Signature: Tetsuya Matsuo

Tetsuya Matsuo

Hereby, Toyota Motor Corporation, declares that this TMIMB-1 is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.

Toyota Motor Corporation vakuuttaa täten että TMIMB-1 tyyppinen laite on direktiivin 1999/5/EY oleellisten vaatimusten ja sitä koskevien direktiivin muiden ehtojen mukainen.

Hierbij verklaart Toyota Motor Corporation dat het toestel TMIMB-1 in overeenstemming is met de essentiële eisen en de andere relevante bepalingen van richtlijn 1999/5/EG.

Par la présente Toyota Motor Corporation déclare que l'appareil TMIMB-1 est conforme aux exigences essentielles et aux autres dispositions pertinentes de la directive 1999/5/CE.

Härmed intygar Toyota Motor Corporation att denna TMIMB-1 står I överensstämmelse med de väsentliga egenskapskrav och övriga relevanta bestämmelser som framgår av direktiv 1999/5/EG.

Undertegnede Toyota Motor Corporation erklærer herved, at følgende udstyr TMIMB-1 overholder de væsentlige krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.

Hiermit erklärt Toyota Motor Corporation, dass sich das Gerät TMIMB-1 in Übereinstimmung mit den grundlegenden Anforderungen und den übrigen einschlägigen Bestimmungen der Richtlinie 1999/5/EG befindet.

ΜΕ ΤΗΝ ΠΑΡΟΥΣΑ Toyota Motor Corporation ΔΗΛΩΝΕΙ ΟΤΙ TMIMB-1 ΣΥΜΜΟΡΦΩΝΕΤΑΙ ΠΡΟΣ ΤΙΣ ΟΥΣΙΩΔΕΙΣ ΑΠΑΙΤΗΣΕΙΣ ΚΑΙ ΤΙΣ ΛΟΙΠΕΣ ΣΧΕΤΙΚΕΣ ΔΙΑΤΑΞΕΙΣ ΤΗΣ ΟΔΗΓΙΑΣ 1999/5/ΕΚ.

Con la presente Toyota Motor Corporation dichiara che questo TMIMB-1 è conforme ai requisiti essenziali ed alle altre disposizioni pertinenti stabilite dalla direttiva 1999/5/CE.

Por medio de la presente Toyota Motor Corporation declara que el TMIMB-1 cumple con los requisitos esenciales y cualesquiera otras disposiciones aplicables o exigibles de la Directiva 1999/5/CE.

Toyota Motor Corporation declara que este TMIMB-1 está conforme com os requisitos essenciais e outras disposições da Directiva 1999/5/CE.

Hawnhekk, Toyota Motor Corporation, jiddikjara li dan TMIMB-1 jikkonforma mal-ħtiġijiet essenzjali u ma provvedimenti oħrajn relevanti li hemm fid-Dirrettiva 1999/5/EC.

Käesolevaga kinnitab Toyota Motor Corporation seadme TMIMB-1 vastavust direktiivi 1999/5/EÜ põhinõuetele ja nimetatud direktiivist tulenevatele teistele asjakohastele sätetele.

Alulírott, Toyota Motor Corporation nyilatkozom, hogy a TMIMB-1 megfelel a vonatkozó alapvető követelményeknek és az 1999/5/EC irányelv egyéb előírásainak.

Toyota Motor Corporation týmto vyhlasuje, že TMIMB-1 spĺňa základné požiadavky a všetky príslušné ustanovenia Smernice 1999/5/ES.

Toyota Motor Corporation tímto prohlašuje, že tento TMIMB-1 je ve shodě se základními požadavky a dalšími příslušnými ustanoveními směrnice 1999/5/ES.

Toyota Motor Corporation izjavlja, da je ta TMIMB-1 v skladu z bistvenimi zahtevami in ostalimi relevantnimi določili direktive 1999/5/ES.

Šiuo Toyota Motor Corporation deklaruoja, kad šis TMIMB-1 atitinka esminius reikalavimus ir kitas 1999/5/EB Direktyvos nuostatas.

Ar šo Toyota Motor Corporation deklarē, ka TMIMB-1 atbilst Direktīvas 1999/5/EK būtiskajām prasībām un citiem ar to saistītajiem noteikumiem.

Niniejszym Toyota Motor Corporation oświadcza, że TMIMB-1 jest zgodny z zasadniczymi wymogami oraz pozostałymi stosownymi postanowieniami Dyrektywy 1999/5/EC.

Hér með lýsir Toyota Motor Corporation yfir því að TMIMB-1 er í samræmi við grunnkröfur og aðrar kröfur, sem gerðar eru í tilskipun 1999/5/EC.

Toyota Motor Corporation erklærer herved at utstyret TMIMB-1 er i samsvar med de grunnleggende krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.

С настоящето, Toyota Motor Corporation, декларира, че TMIMB-1 е в съответствие със съществените изисквания и другите приложими разпоредби на Директива 1999/5/ЕС.

Prin prezenta, Toyota Motor Corporation, declară că aparatul TMIMB-1 este in conformitate cu cerinţele esenţiale şi cu alte prevederi pertinente ale Directivei 1999/5/CE.

Ovim, Toyota Motor Corporation, izjavljuje da ovaj TMIMB-1 je usklađen sa bitnim zahtjevima i drugim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC.

Nepermjet kesaj, Toyota Motor Corporation, deklaroj qe ky TMIMB-1 eshte ne pajtim me kerkesat thelbesore dhe dispozitat e tjera perkatese te Direktives 1999/5/EC.

Ovim Toyota Motor Corporation, izjavljuje da je TMIMB-1 u sklau s bitnim zahtjevima i drugim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC i Pravilnika o RiTT opremi (NN 25/2012).

Ovim, Toyota Motor Corporation, deklariše da je TMIMB-1 u skladu sa osnovnim zahtevima i ostalim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC.

⚠ NOTICE

■ **To ensure the system operates correctly**

Do not modify or remove the system. If modified or removed, the proper operation of the system cannot be guaranteed.

# Double locking system

**Unauthorized access to the vehicle is prevented by disabling the door unlocking function from both the interior and exterior of the vehicle.**




Vehicles employing this system have labels on the window glass of both front doors.



## Setting the double locking system

- Turn the “ENGINE START STOP” switch off, have all the passengers exit the vehicle and ensure that all the doors are closed.
- Using the entry function:
  Touch the lock sensor on the outside door handle twice within 5 seconds.
  Using the wireless remote control:
  Press twice within 5 seconds.

## Canceling the double locking system

Using the entry function: Hold the outside door handle or press the back door opener button. (→P. 32)
Using the wireless remote control: Press .

### CAUTION

**■ Double locking system precaution**

Never activate the double locking system when there are people in the vehicle because all the doors cannot be opened from inside the vehicle.

# Alarm*

**The system sounds the alarm and flashes the lights when forcible entry is detected.**

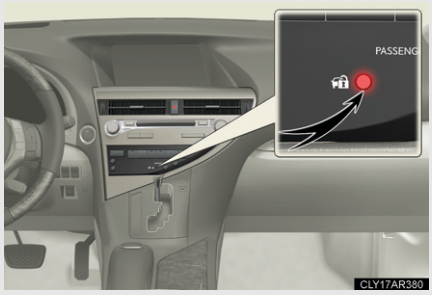
## Triggering of the alarm

The alarm is triggered in the following situations when the alarm is set:

- A locked door is unlocked or opened in any way other than using the entry function or wireless remote control.
  (The doors will lock again automatically.)
- The hood is opened.
- The intrusion sensor detects something moving inside the vehicle.
  (An intruder gets in the vehicle.)
- The tilt sensor detects a change of vehicle inclination.

## Setting the alarm system

▶ Vehicles with a navigation system




Close the doors and hood, and lock all the doors using the entry function or wireless remote control. The system will be set automatically after 30 seconds.

The indicator light changes from being on to flashing when the system is set.

*: If equipped

▶ Vehicles without a navigation system




Close the doors and hood, and lock all the doors using the entry function or wireless remote control. The system will be set automatically after 30 seconds.

The indicator light changes from being on to flashing when the system is set.

### Deactivating or stopping the alarm

Do one of the following to deactivate or stop the alarms:

- Unlock the doors using the entry function or the wireless remote control.
- Start the engine. (The alarm will be deactivated or stopped after a few seconds.)

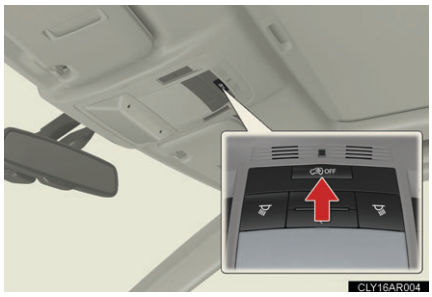
## Intrusion sensor and tilt sensor

- The intrusion sensor detects an intruder or movement in the vehicle.
- The tilt sensor detects changes in vehicle inclination, such as when the vehicle is towed away.

This system is designed to deter and prevent vehicle theft but does not guarantee absolute security against all intrusions.

The intrusion sensor and tilt sensor can be canceled using the cancel switch.

## Canceling the intrusion sensor and tilt sensor




Turn the “ENGINE START STOP” switch off and press the intrusion sensor and tilt sensor cancel switch.

A message will be shown on the multi-information display in the instrument cluster.

The intrusion sensor and tilt sensor will revert to on each time the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode.

### System maintenance

The vehicle has a maintenance-free type alarm system.

### Items to check before locking the vehicle

To prevent unexpected triggering of the alarm and vehicle theft, make sure of the following:

- Nobody is in the vehicle.
- The windows and moon roof are closed before the alarm is set.
- No valuables or other personal items are left in the vehicle.

## ■ Triggering of the alarm

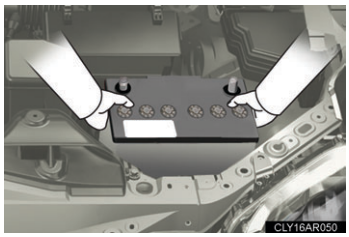
The alarm may be triggered in the following situations:
(Stopping the alarm deactivates the alarm system.)




- The doors are unlocked using the mechanical key.




- A person inside the vehicle opens a door or the hood.




- The battery is disconnected.

## ■ Alarm-operated door lock

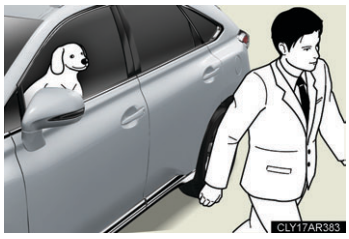
- When the alarm is operating, the doors are locked automatically to prevent intruders.
- Do not leave the key inside the vehicle when the alarm is operating, and make sure the key is not inside the vehicle when recharging or replacing the battery.

### Canceling and automatic re-enabling of the intrusion sensor and tilt sensor

- The alarm will still be set even when the intrusion sensor and tilt sensor are canceled.
- After the intrusion sensor and tilt sensor are canceled, pressing the "ENGINE START STOP" switch or unlocking the doors using the entry function, wireless remote control or mechanical key will re-enable the intrusion sensor and tilt sensor.
- When the alarm system is set again, the intrusion sensor and tilt sensor will be set.

### Intrusion sensor considerations

The sensor may trigger the alarm in the following situations:




- Persons or pets are in the vehicle.




- A window or the moon roof is open.

  In this case, the sensor may detect the following:

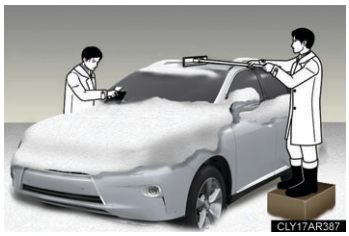
  - Wind or the movement of objects such as leaves and insects inside the vehicle
  - Ultrasonic waves emitted from devices such as the intrusion sensors of other vehicles
  - The movement of people outside the vehicle




● Unstable items, such as dangling accessories or clothes hanging on the coat hooks, are in the vehicle.




● The vehicle is parked in a place where extreme vibrations or noises occur, such as in a parking garage.




● Ice or snow is removed from the vehicle, causing the vehicle to receive repeated impacts or vibrations.

● The vehicle is inside an automatic or high-pressure car wash.

● The vehicle experiences impacts, such as hail, lightning strikes, and other kinds of repeated impacts or vibrations.

### ■ Tilt sensor detection considerations

The sensor may trigger the alarm in the following situations:

● The vehicle is transported by a ferry, trailer, train, etc.

● The vehicle is parked in a parking garage.

● The vehicle is inside a car wash that moves the vehicle.

● Any of the tires loses air pressure.

● The vehicle is jacked up.

● An earthquake occurs or the road caves in.

● Cargo is loaded onto or unloaded from a roof luggage carrier.

## NOTICE

### To ensure the intrusion sensor and tilt sensor functions correctly




- To ensure that the sensors operate properly, do not touch or cover them.




- Do not spray air fresheners or other products directly into the sensor holes.

### To ensure the system operates correctly

Do not modify or remove the system. If modified or removed, the proper operation of the system cannot be guaranteed.

# Correct driving posture

**Drive in a good posture as follows:**




1. Sit upright and well back in the seat. (→P. 73)
2. Adjust the position of the seat forward or backward to ensure the pedals can be reached and easily depressed to the extent required. (→P. 73)
3. Adjust the seatback so that the controls are easily operable. (→P. 73)
4. Adjust the tilt and telescopic positions of the steering wheel downward so the airbag is facing your chest. (→P. 94)
5. Lock the head restraint in place with the center of the head restraint closest to the top of your ears. (→P. 87)
6. Wear the seat belt correctly. (→P. 89)

## ⚠ CAUTION

**■ While driving**

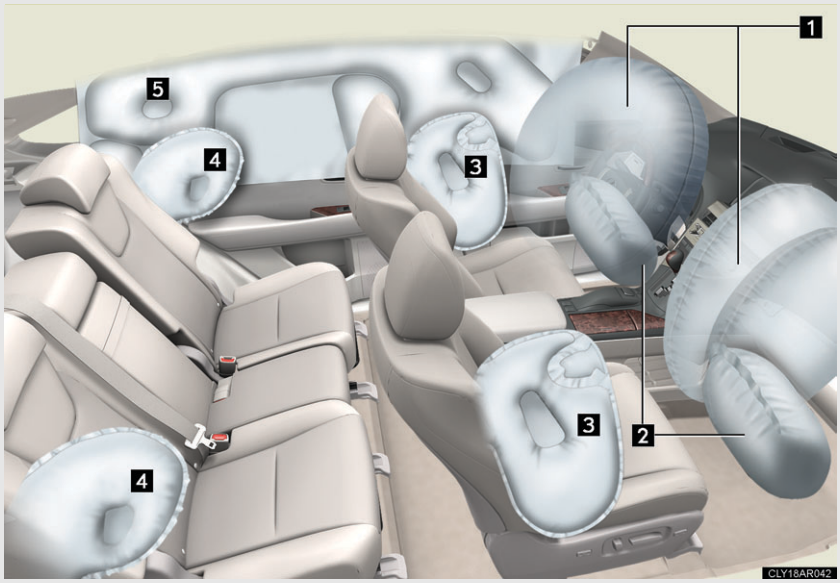
- Do not adjust the position of the driver's seat.
  Doing so could cause the driver to lose control of the vehicle.
- Do not place a cushion between the driver or passenger and the seatback.
  A cushion may prevent correct posture from being achieved, and reduce the effectiveness of the seat belt and head restraint, increasing the risk of death or serious injury to the driver or passenger.
- Do not place anything under the front seats.
  Objects placed under the front seats may become jammed in the seat tracks and stop the seat from locking in place. This may lead to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury. The adjustment mechanism may also be damaged.

**■ Adjusting the seat position**

- Take care when adjusting the seat position to ensure that other passengers are not injured by the moving seat.
- Do not put your hands under the seat or near the moving parts to avoid injury.
  Fingers or hands may become jammed in the seat mechanism.

# SRS airbags

**The SRS airbags inflate when the vehicle is subjected to certain types of severe impacts that may cause significant injury to the occupants. They work together with the seat belts to help reduce the risk of death or serious injury.**




▶ SRS front airbags

1 SRS driver airbag/front passenger airbag
Can help protect the head and chest of the driver and front passenger from impact with interior components

2 SRS knee airbags
Can help provide driver and front passenger protection

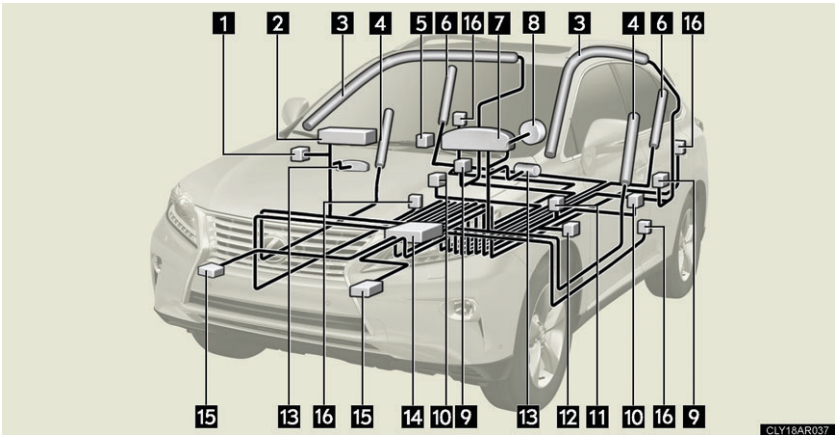
▶ SRS side and curtain shield airbags

3 Front SRS side airbags
Can help protect the torso of the front seat occupants

4 Rear SRS side airbags
Can help protect the torso of occupants in the rear outer seats

5 SRS curtain shield airbags
Can help protect primarily the head of occupants in the outer seats

## SRS airbag system components




1 Airbag manual on-off switch
2 Front passenger airbag
3 Curtain shield airbags
4 Front side airbags
5 Passenger airbag indicator light
6 Rear side airbags
7 SRS warning light
8 Driver airbag
9 Curtain shield airbag sensors
10 Side and curtain shield airbag sensors
11 Driver's seat belt buckle switch
12 Driver's seat position sensor
13 Knee airbags
14 Airbag sensor assembly
15 Front airbag sensors
16 Seat belt pretensioners and force limiters

The main SRS airbag system components are shown above. The SRS airbag system is controlled by the airbag sensor assembly. As the airbags deploy, a chemical reaction in the inflators quickly fills the airbags with non-toxic gas to help restrain the motion of the occupants.

■ If the SRS airbags deploy (inflate)

- Bruising and slight abrasions may result from contact with a deploying (inflating) SRS airbag.
- A loud noise and white powder will be emitted.
- Parts of the airbag module (steering wheel hub, airbag cover and inflator) as well as the seats, and parts of the front and rear pillars, and roof side rails, may be hot for several minutes. The airbag itself may also be hot.
- The windshield may crack.

■ SRS airbag deployment conditions (SRS front airbags)

- The SRS front airbags will deploy in the event of an impact that exceeds the set threshold level (the level of force corresponding to an approximately 20 - 30 km/h [12 - 18 mph] frontal collision with a fixed wall that does not move or deform).

  However, this threshold velocity will be considerably higher in the following situations:

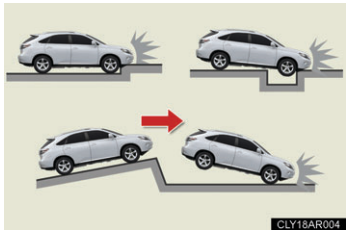
  - If the vehicle strikes an object, such as a parked vehicle or sign pole, which can move or deform on impact
  - If the vehicle is involved in an underride collision, such as a collision in which the front of the vehicle "underrides", or goes under, the bed of a truck
- Depending on the type of collision, it is possible that only the seat belt pretensioners will activate.

### SRS airbag deployment conditions (SRS side airbags and curtain shield airbags)

The SRS side airbags and curtain shield airbags will deploy in the event of an impact that exceeds the set threshold level (the level of force corresponding to the impact force produced by an approximately 1500 kg [3300 lb.] vehicle colliding with the vehicle cabin from a direction perpendicular to the vehicle orientation at an approximate speed of 20 - 30 km/h [12 - 18 mph]).

### Conditions under which the SRS airbags may deploy (inflate), other than a collision (SRS front airbags)

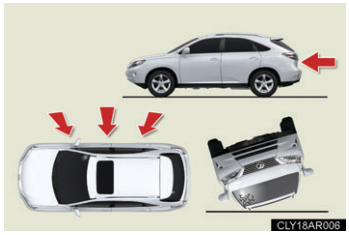
The SRS front airbags may also deploy if a serious impact occurs to the underside of your vehicle. Some examples are shown in the illustration.




- Hitting a curb, edge of pavement or hard surface
- Falling into or jumping over a deep hole
- Landing hard or vehicle falling

### Types of collisions that may not deploy the SRS airbags (SRS front airbags)

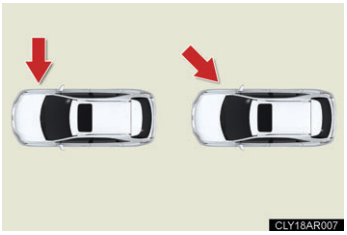
The SRS front airbags are generally not designed to inflate if the vehicle is involved in a side or rear collision, if it rolls over, or if it is involved in a low-speed frontal collision. But, whenever a collision of any type causes sufficient forward deceleration of the vehicle, deployment of the SRS front airbags may occur.




- Collision from the side
- Collision from the rear
- Vehicle rollover

### Types of collisions that may not deploy the SRS airbags (SRS side airbags and curtain shield airbags)

The SRS side airbag and curtain shield airbag system may not activate if the vehicle is subjected to a collision from the side at certain angles, or a collision to the side of the vehicle body other than the passenger compartment.




- Collision from the side to the vehicle body other than the passenger compartment
- Collision from the side at an angle

The SRS side airbags and curtain shield airbags are not generally designed to inflate if the vehicle is involved in a frontal or rear collision, if it rolls over, or if it is involved in a low-speed side collision.

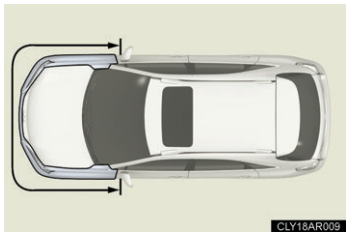



- Collision from the front
- Collision from the rear
- Vehicle rollover

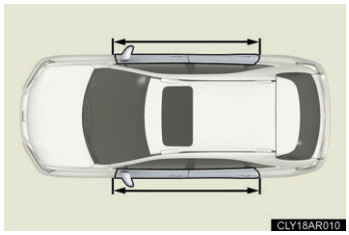
### When to contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional

In the following cases, the vehicle will require inspection and/or repair. Contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional as soon as possible.

- Any of the SRS airbags has been inflated.




- The front of the vehicle is damaged or deformed, or was involved in an accident that was not severe enough to cause the SRS airbags to inflate.




- A portion of the doors is damaged or deformed, or the vehicle was involved in an accident that was not severe enough to cause the SRS side airbags and curtain shield airbags to inflate.




- The pad section of the steering wheel, dashboard near the front passenger airbag or lower portion of the instrument panel is scratched, cracked, or otherwise damaged.




- The surface of the seats with the side airbag is scratched, cracked, or otherwise damaged.




- The portion of the front pillars, rear pillars or roof side rail garnishes (padding) containing the curtain shield airbags inside is scratched, cracked, or otherwise damaged.



## CAUTION

### SRS airbag precautions

Observe the following precautions regarding the SRS airbags.
Failure to do so may cause death or serious injury.

- The driver and all passengers in the vehicle must wear their seat belts properly. The SRS airbags are supplemental devices to be used with the seat belts.
- The SRS driver airbag deploys with considerable force, and can cause death or serious injury especially if the driver is very close to the airbag.

  Since the risk zone for driver's airbag is the first 50 - 75 mm (2 - 3 in.) of inflation, placing yourself 250 mm (10 in.) from your driver airbag provides you with a clear margin of safety. This distance is measured from the center of the steering wheel to your breastbone. If you sit less than 250 mm (10 in.) away now, you can change your driving position in several ways:

  - Move your seat to the rear as far as you can while still reaching the pedals comfortably.
  - Slightly recline the back of the seat.
    Although vehicle designs vary, many drivers can achieve the 250 mm (10 in.) distance, even with the driver seat all the way forward, simply by reclining the back of the seat somewhat. If reclining the back of your seat makes it hard to see the road, raise yourself by using a firm, non-slippery cushion, or raise the seat if your vehicle has that feature.
  - If your steering wheel is adjustable, tilt it downward. This points the airbag toward your chest instead of your head and neck.

  The seat should be adjusted as recommended above, while still maintaining control of the foot pedals, steering wheel, and your view of the instrument panel controls.

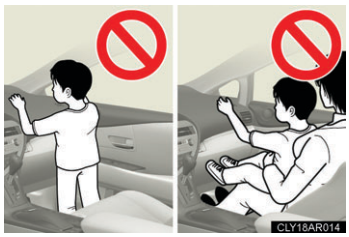
## ⚠ CAUTION

### ■ SRS airbag precautions

- The SRS front passenger airbag also deploys with considerable force, and can cause death or serious injury especially if the front passenger is very close to the airbag. The front passenger seat should be as far from the airbag as possible with the seatback adjusted, so the front passenger sits upright.
- Improperly seated and/or restrained infants and children can be killed or seriously injured by a deploying airbag. An infant or child who is too small to use a seat belt should be properly secured using a child restraint system. Lexus strongly recommends that all infants and children be placed in the rear seats of the vehicle and properly restrained. The rear seats are safer for infants and children than the front passenger seat. (→P. 142)




- Do not sit on the edge of the seat or lean against the dashboard.




- Do not allow a child to stand in front of the SRS front passenger airbag unit or sit on the knees of a front passenger.
- Do not allow the front seat occupants to hold items on their knees.

## ⚠ CAUTION

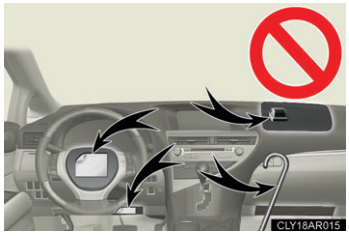
### ■ SRS airbag precautions




● Do not lean against the door, the roof side rail or the front, side and rear pillars.




● Do not allow anyone to kneel on the passenger seats toward the door or put their head or hands outside the vehicle.




● Do not attach anything to or lean anything against areas such as the dashboard, steering wheel pad or lower portion of the instrument panel.
These items can become projectiles when SRS driver, front passenger and knee airbags deploy.




● Do not attach anything to areas such as the door, windshield glass, side door glass, front and rear pillars, roof side rail or assist grip.

● Do not hang coat hangers or other hard objects on the coat hooks. All of these items could become projectiles and may cause death or serious injury, should the SRS curtain shield airbags deploy.

## ⚠ CAUTION

**■ SRS airbag precautions**

- If a vinyl cover is put on the area where the SRS knee airbags will deploy, be sure to remove it.
- Do not use seat accessories which cover the parts where the SRS side airbags inflate as they may interfere with inflation of the airbags. Such accessories may prevent the side airbags from activating correctly, disable the system or cause the side airbags to inflate accidentally, resulting in death or serious injury.
- Do not strike or apply significant levels of force to the area of the SRS airbag components.
  Doing so can cause the SRS airbags to malfunction.
- Do not touch any of the component parts immediately after the SRS airbags have deployed (inflated) as they may be hot.
- If breathing becomes difficult after the SRS airbags have deployed, open a door or window to allow fresh air in, or leave the vehicle if it is safe to do so. Wash off any residue as soon as possible to prevent skin irritation.
- If the areas where the SRS airbags are stored, such as the steering wheel pad and front and rear pillar garnishes, are damaged or cracked, have them replaced by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

## ⚠ CAUTION

**■ Modification and disposal of SRS airbag system components**

Do not dispose of your vehicle or perform any of the following modifications without consulting any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
The SRS airbags may malfunction or deploy (inflate) accidentally, causing death or serious injury.

- Installation, removal, disassembly and repair of the SRS airbags
- Repairs, modifications, removal or replacement of the steering wheel, instrument panel, dashboard, seats or seat upholstery, front, side and rear pillars or roof side rails
- Repairs or modifications of the front fender, front bumper, or side of the occupant compartment
- Installation of a grille guard (bull bars, kangaroo bar, etc.), snow plows or winches
- Modifications to the vehicle's suspension system
- Installation of electronic devices such as an RF-transmitter or CD players
- Modifications to your vehicle for a person with a physical disability

# Child restraint systems

**Lexus strongly urges the use of child restraint systems.**

## Points to remember

Studies have shown that installing a child restraint on a rear seat is much safer than installing one to the front passenger seat.

- Choose a child restraint system that suits your vehicle and is appropriate to the age and size of the child.
- For installation details, follow the instructions provided with the child restraint system.
  General installation instructions are provided in this manual. (→P. 152)
- If child restraint system regulations exist in the country where you reside, please contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional for the child restraint system installation.
- Lexus recommends that you use a child restraint system which conforms to the regulation ECE No.44.

## Types of child restraints

Child restraint systems are classified into the following 5 groups according to the regulation ECE No.44.

Group 0: Up to 10 kg (22 lb.) (0 - 9 months)

Group $0^+$: Up to 13 kg (28 lb.) (0 - 2 years)

Group I: 9 to 18 kg (20 to 39 lb.) (9 months - 4 years)

Group II: 15 to 25 kg (34 to 55 lb.) (4 years - 7 years)

Group III: 22 to 36 kg (49 to 79 lb.) (6 years - 12 years)

In this owner's manual, the following popular 3 types of child restraint systems that can be secured with the seat belts are explained:

▶ Baby seat



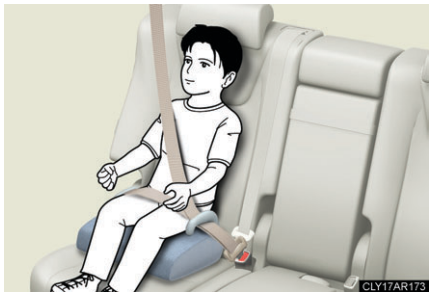

Equal to Group 0 and $0^+$ of ECE No.44

▶ Child seat




Equal to Group $0^+$ and I of ECE No.44

▶ Junior seat




Equal to Group II and III of ECE No.44

## Child restraint system suitability for various seating positions

Information provided in the table shows your child restraint system suitability for various seating positions.

| Seating position / Mass groups | Front passenger seat | | Rear seat | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Airbag manual on-off switch | | Right-hand | Left-hand | Center |
| | ON | OFF | | | |
| 0<br>Up to 10 kg (22 lb.)<br>(0 - 9 months) | X<br>Never put | U*1, L*1 | U, L | U, L | X |
| 0+<br>Up to 13 kg (28 lb.)<br>(0 - 2 years) | X<br>Never put | U*1, L*1 | U, L | U, L | X |
| I<br>9 to 18 kg<br>(20 to 39 lb.)<br>(9 months - 4 years) | Rear-facing — X<br>Never put | U*1 | U*2 | U*2 | X |
| | Forward-facing — UF*1 | | | | |
| II, III<br>15 to 36 kg<br>(34 to 79 lb.)<br>(4 - 12 years) | UF*1 | U*1 | U*2, L*2 | U*2, L*2 | X |

Key of letters inserted in the above table:

U: Suitable for "universal" category child restraint system approved for use in this mass group.

UF: Suitable for forward-facing "universal" category child restraint system approved for use in this mass group.

L: Suitable for child restraint system shows in child restraint system list.

X: Not suitable seat position for children in this mass group.

*1: Adjust the front seatback to the most upright position. Move the front seat to the rearmost position.
If the head restraint interferes with your child restraint system, and the head restraint can be removed, remove the head restraint.
If the passenger seat is equipped with a vertical height adjuster, it must be placed in the uppermost position.

Follow these procedures:

- For installing a baby seat with support base
  If the baby seat interferes with the seatback when latching the baby seat into the support base, adjust the seatback rearward until there is no interference.
- For installing a forward-facing child seat
  If there is gap between the child seat and the seatback, tilt the seatback rearward until good contact is achieved.
  If the seat belt shoulder anchor is ahead of the child seat belt guide, move the seat cushion forward.
- For installing a junior seat
  If the child in your child restraint system is in a very upright position, adjust the seatback to the most comfortable position.
  If the seat belt shoulder anchor is ahead of the child seat belt guide, move the seat cushion forward.

*2: If the head restraint interferes with your child restraint system, and the head restraint can be removed, remove the head restraint.

The child restraint system mentioned in the table may not be available outside of the EU area.

Other child restraint system which is different from the system mentioned in the table can be used, but the suitability of the systems must be carefully checked with the child restraint system manufacturer concerned and the seller of those seats.

Child restraint system list

| Mass groups | Child restraint systems | Category |
|---|---|---|
| 0<br>Up to 10 kg (22 lb.)<br>(0 - 9 months) | LEXUS G 0+, BABYSAFE PLUS with SEAT BELT FIXATION, BASE PLATFORM | Semi-universal |
| $0^+$<br>Up to 13 kg (28 lb.)<br>(0 - 2 years) | LEXUS G 0+, BABYSAFE PLUS with SEAT BELT FIXATION, BASE PLATFORM | Semi-universal |
| II, III<br>15 to 36 kg (34 to 79 lb.)<br>(4 - 12 years) | LEXUS KIDFIX | Universal/ Semi-universal |

## Child restraint system suitability for various seating positions (with ISOFIX rigid anchor)

Information provided in the table shows your child restraint system suitability for various seating positions.

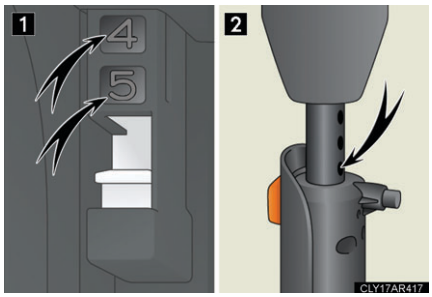
| Mass groups | Size class | Fixture | Vehicle ISOFIX positions | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | Rear outboard | |
| | | | Right-hand | Left-hand |
| Carrycot | F | ISO/L1 | X | X |
| | G | ISO/L2 | X | X |
| 0<br>Up to 10 kg (22 lb.)<br>(0 - 9 months) | E | ISO/R1 | IL | IL |
| $0^+$<br>Up to 13 kg (28 lb.)<br>(0 - 2 years) | E | ISO/R1 | IL | IL |
| | D | ISO/R2 | IL | IL |
| | C | ISO/R3 | IL | IL |
| I<br>9 to 18 kg<br>(20 to 39 lb.)<br>(9 months - 4 years) | D | ISO/R2 | X | X |
| | C | ISO/R3 | X | X |
| | B | ISO/F2 | IUF*, IL* | IUF*, IL* |
| | B1 | ISO/F2X | IUF*, IL* | IUF*, IL* |
| | A | ISO/F3 | IUF*, IL* | IUF*, IL* |

Key of letters inserted in the above table:

IUF: Suitable for ISOFIX forward-facing child restraint systems of universal category approved for use in this mass group.

IL: Suitable for child restraint system shows in ISOFIX child restraint system list.

When using a “LEXUS MINI” or “LEXUS MIDI”, adjust the support leg and ISOFIX connectors as follows:




1 Lock the ISOFIX connectors where numbers 4 and 5 can be seen.

2 Lock the support leg where 3rd hole can be seen.

X: ISOFIX position not suitable for ISOFIX child restraint systems in this mass group and/or this size class.

*: If the head restraint interferes with your child restraint system, and the head restraint can be removed, remove the head restraint.

The child restraint system mentioned in the table may not be available outside of the EU area.

Other child restraint systems different from the systems mentioned in the table can be used, but the suitability of the systems must be carefully checked with the child restraint system manufacturer and retailer.

ISOFIX child restraint system list

| Mass groups | Size class | Fixture | ISOFIX child restraint systems | Category |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 0<br>Up to 10 kg (22 lb.)<br>(0 - 9 months) | E | ISO/R1 | LEXUS MINI | Semi-universal |
| | E | ISO/R1 | LEXUS MIDI | Semi-universal |
| $0^+$<br>Up to 13 kg (28 lb.)<br>(0 - 2 years) | E | ISO/R1 | LEXUS MINI | Semi-universal |
| | E | ISO/R1 | LEXUS MIDI | Semi-universal |
| | D | ISO/R2 | LEXUS MINI | Semi-universal |
| | D | ISO/R2 | LEXUS MIDI | Semi-universal |
| | C | ISO/R3 | LEXUS MINI | Semi-universal |
| | C | ISO/R3 | LEXUS MIDI | Semi-universal |
| I<br>9 to 18 kg<br>(20 to 39 lb.)<br>(9 months - 4 years) | B | ISO/F2 | LEXUS MIDI | Semi-universal |
| | B1 | ISO/F2X | LEXUS MIDI | Semi-universal |
| | A | ISO/F3 | LEXUS MIDI | Semi-universal |

### When installing the child restraint system on the front passenger seat




When you have to use a child restraint system in the front passenger seat, adjust the seatback to the most upright position and adjust the seat to the fully rearward and uppermost position.

### Selecting an appropriate child restraint system

- Use a child restraint system appropriate for the child until the child becomes large enough to properly wear the vehicle's seat belt.
- If the child is too large for a child restraint system, sit the child on a rear seat and use the vehicle's seat belt. (→P. 89)

**⚠ CAUTION**

**Using a child restraint system**

The use of a child restraint system not suitable for the vehicle may not properly secure the infant or child. It may result in death or serious injury (in the event of sudden braking or an accident).

**Child restraint precautions**

- For effective protection in automobile accidents and sudden stops, a child must be properly restrained, using a seat belt or child restraint system depending on the age and size of the child. Holding a child in your arms is not a substitute for a child restraint system. In an accident, the child can be crushed against the windshield, or between you and the vehicle's interior. This may cause death or serious injury to the child in the event of a sudden stop or an accident.
- Lexus strongly urges the use of a proper child restraint system that conforms to the size of the child, installed on the rear seat. According to accident statistics, the child is safer when properly restrained in the rear seat than in the front seat.

## ⚠ CAUTION

**■ Child restraint precautions**

- Never use a rear-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat when the airbag manual on-off switch is on. (→P. 163)
  In the event of an accident, the force of the rapid inflation of the front passenger airbag can cause death or serious injury to the child.
- A forward-facing child restraint system may be allowed to be installed on the front passenger seat only when it is unavoidable. A child restraint system that requires a top tether strap should not be used in the front passenger seat since there is no top tether strap anchor for the front passenger seat. Adjust the seat-back as upright as possible and always move the seat as far back as possible because the front passenger airbag could inflate with considerable speed and force. Otherwise, the child may be killed or seriously injured.
- Do not allow the child to lean his/her head or any part of his/her body against the door or the area of the seat, front and rear pillars or roof side rails from which the SRS side airbags or SRS curtain shield airbags deploy even if the child is seated in the child restraint system. It is dangerous if the side airbags and curtain shield air-bags inflate, and the impact could cause death or serious injury to the child.
- Make sure you have complied with all installation instructions provided by the child restraint manufacturer and that the system is properly secured. If it is not secured properly, it may cause death or serious injury to the child in the event of a sudden stop, sudden swerve or an accident.

**■ When children are in the vehicle**

Do not allow children to play with the seat belt. If the seat belt becomes twisted around a child's neck, it may lead to choking or other serious injuries that could result in death.
If this occurs and the buckle cannot be unfastened, scissors should be used to cut the belt.

**■ When the child restraint system is not in use**

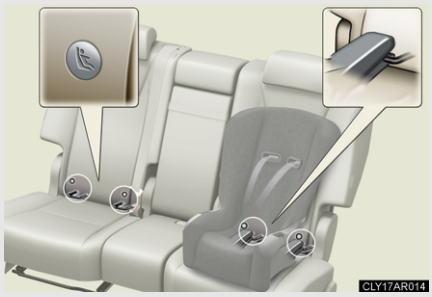
- Keep the child restraint system properly secured on the seat even if it is not in use. Do not store the child restraint system unsecured in the passenger compartment.
- If it is necessary to detach the child restraint system, remove it from the vehicle or store it securely in the luggage compartment. This will prevent it from injuring passengers in the event of a sudden stop, sudden swerve or an accident.

# Installing child restraints

**Follow the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions. Firmly secure child restraints to the seats using a seat belt or ISOFIX rigid anchors. Attach the top strap when installing a child restraint.**

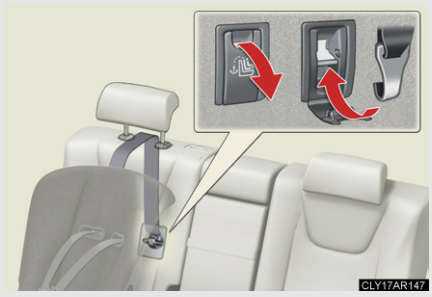



Installation with a seat belt (→P. 153)




ISOFIX rigid anchors (ISOFIX child restraint system) (→P. 157)

Lower anchors are provided for the outer rear seats. (Buttons displaying the location of the anchors are attached to the seats.)

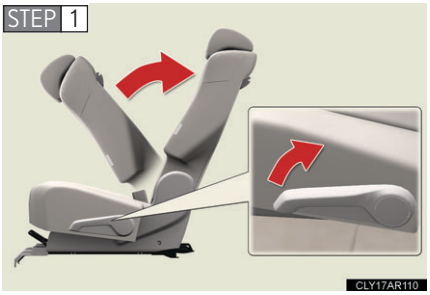



Anchor brackets (for the top strap) (→P. 158)

An anchor bracket is provided for each rear seat.

## Installing child restraints using a seat belt

### Rear-facing — Baby seat/child seat




Fold the seatback while pulling the seatback angle adjustment lever. Return the seatback and secure it at the first lock position. (→P. 77)

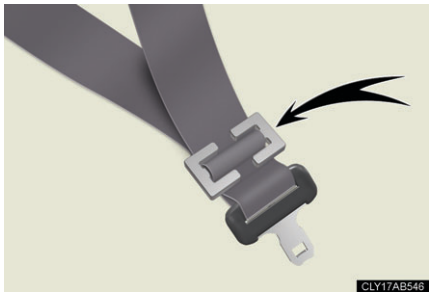



Place the child restraint system on the rear seat facing the rear of the vehicle.




Run the seat belt through the child restraint system and insert the plate into the buckle. Make sure that the belt is not twisted.

Follow the directions given in the child restraint system installation manual and fix the child restraint system securely in place.

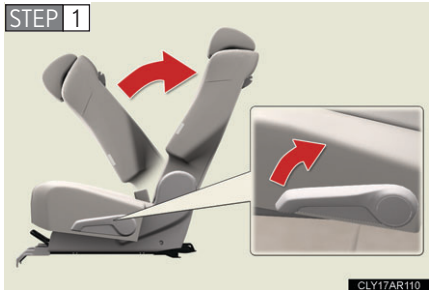



If your child restraint system is not equipped with a lock-off (a seat belt locking feature), secure the child restraint system using a locking clip.

After installing the child restraint system, rock it back and forth to ensure that it is installed securely.

## Forward-facing — Child seat

STEP 1




Fold the seatback while pulling the seatback angle adjustment lever. Return the seatback and secure it at the first lock position. (→P. 77)

STEP 2



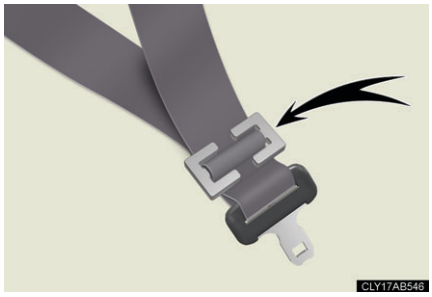

Place the child restraint system on the seat facing the front of the vehicle.

STEP 3




Run the seat belt through the child restraint system and insert the plate into the buckle. Make sure that the belt is not twisted.

Follow the directions given in the child restraint system installation manual and fix the child restraint system securely in place.

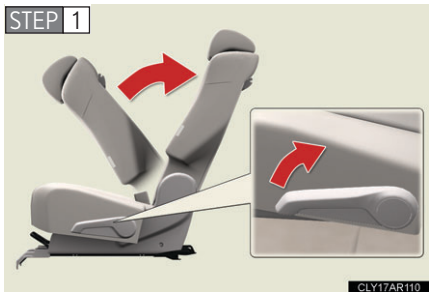



If your child restraint system is not equipped with a lock-off (a seat belt locking feature), secure the child restraint system using a locking clip.

After installing the child restraint system, rock it back and forth to ensure that it is installed securely.

### Junior seat

STEP 1



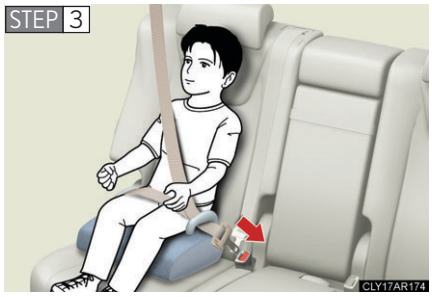

Fold the seatback while pulling the seatback angle adjustment lever. Return the seatback and secure it at the first lock position. (→P. 77)

STEP 2




Place the child restraint system on the seat facing the front of the vehicle.

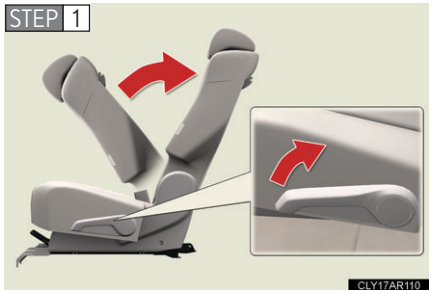
STEP 3



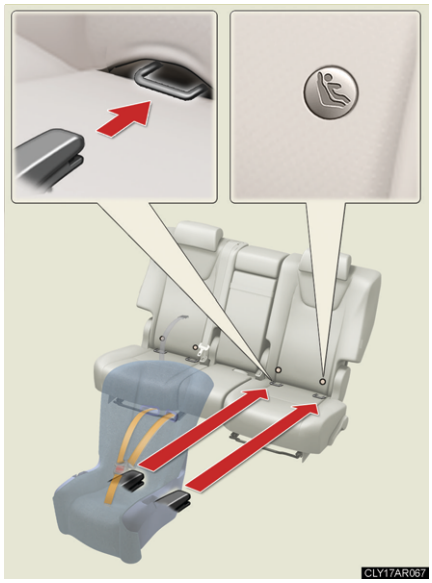

Sit the child in the child restraint system. Fit the seat belt to the child restraint system according to the manufacturer's instructions and insert the plate into the buckle. Make sure that the belt is not twisted.

Check that the shoulder belt is correctly positioned over the child's shoulder, and that the lap belt is as low as possible. (→P. 89)

## Installation with ISOFIX rigid anchors (ISOFIX child restraint system)




Fold the seatback while pulling the seatback angle adjustment lever. Return the seatback and secure it at the first lock position. (→P. 77)




STEP 2 Widen the gap between the seat cushion and seatback slightly.

STEP 3 Latch the buckles onto the exclusive fixing bars.

If the child restraint has a top strap, the top strap should be latched onto the anchor brackets.

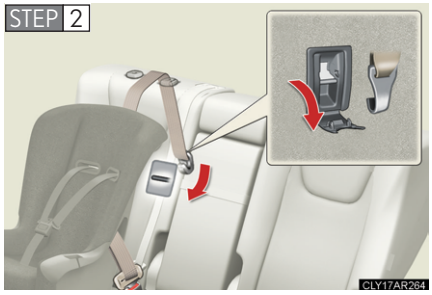
## Child restraint systems with a top strap

STEP 1




Secure the child restraint system using the seat belt or ISOFIX rigid anchors, and remove the head restraint.

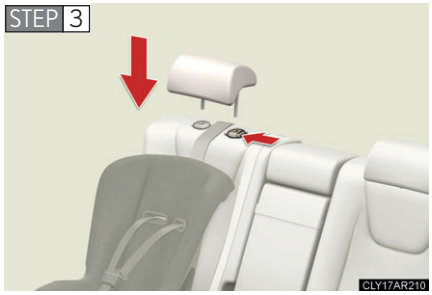
STEP 2




Open the anchor bracket cover, latch the hook onto the anchor bracket and tighten the top strap.

Make sure the top strap is securely latched.

STEP 3




Replace the head restraint and lift it up to the uppermost lock position.

■ When restraining a child restraint system

Depending on the type of your child restraint system, you will need a locking clip to install a child restraint system properly. Follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the system. If your child restraint system does not provide a locking clip, you can purchase the following item from any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

Locking clip for child restraint system
(Part No. 73119-22010)

## ⚠ CAUTION

### ■ When installing a child restraint system

Follow the directions given in the child restraint system installation manual and fix the child restraint system securely in place.
If the child restraint system is not correctly fixed in place, the child or other passengers may be seriously injured or even killed in the event of sudden braking, sudden swerving or an accident.




- If the driver's seat interferes with the child restraint system and prevents it from being attached correctly, attach the child restraint system to the right-hand rear seat.
- Adjust the front passenger seat so that it does not interfere with the child restraint system.




- Only put a forward-facing child restraint system on the front seat when unavoidable. When installing a forward-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat, move the seat as far back as possible. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury if the airbags deploy (inflate).

- When installing a child restraint system in the rear center seat, adjust both seat cushions to the same position and align both seatbacks at the same angle. The seatbacks must be adjusted to the same angle. Otherwise, the child restraint system cannot be securely restrained and this may cause death or serious injuries in the event of sudden braking, sudden swerving or an accident.

## CAUTION

### When installing a child restraint system




- Never use a rear-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat when the airbag manual on-off switch is on. (→P. 163)

  The force of the rapid inflation of the front passenger airbag can cause death or serious injury to children in the event of an accident.




There is a label(s) on the passenger side sun visor, indicating it is forbidden to attach a rear-facing child restraint system to the front passenger seat.

Details of the label(s) are shown in the illustration below.



## ⚠ CAUTION

**■ When installing a child restraint system**

- If child restraint system regulations exist in the country where you reside, please contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional for the child restraint system installation.
- When a junior seat is installed, always ensure that the shoulder belt is positioned across the center of the child's shoulder. The belt should be kept away from the child's neck, but not so that it could fall off the child's shoulder. Failing to do so may result in death or serious injury in the event of sudden braking, sudden swerving or an accident.
- Ensure that the belt and tab are securely locked and the seat belt is not twisted.
- Shake the child restraint system left and right, and forward and backward to ensure that it has been securely installed.
- After securing a child restraint system, never adjust the seat.
- Follow all installation instructions provided by the child restraint system manufacturer.

**■ To correctly attach a child restraint system to the anchors**

When using the lower anchors, be sure that there are no foreign objects around the anchors and that the seat belt is not caught behind the child restraint system. Make sure the child restraint system is securely attached, or it may cause death or serious injury to the child or other passengers in the event of a sudden stop, sudden swerve or accident.

# Airbag manual on/off system

**This system deactivates the front passenger airbag, front passenger knee airbag.**
**Only deactivate the airbags when using a child restraint system on the front passenger seat.**

## System location

▶ Vehicles with a navigation system




1 "PASSENGER AIR BAG" indicator

This indicator light turns on when the airbag system is on (only when the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode).

▶ Vehicles without a navigation system




1 "PASSENGER AIR BAG" indicator

This indicator light turns on when the airbag system is on (only when the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode).




2 Airbag manual on-off switch

## Deactivating the front seat passenger airbag and front passenger side airbag

▶ Vehicles with a navigation system




Insert the mechanical key into the cylinder and rotate to the “OFF” position.

The “OFF” indicator light turns on (only when the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is in IGNITION ON mode).

▶ Vehicles without a navigation system




Insert the mechanical key into the cylinder and rotate to the “OFF” position.

The “OFF” indicator light turns on (only when the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is in IGNITION ON mode).

### "PASSENGER AIR BAG" indicator information

If any of the following problems occur, it is possible that there is a malfunction in the system. Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

- Neither "ON" nor "OFF" comes on.
- The indicator does not change when the airbag manual on-off switch is switched to "ON" or "OFF".

### CAUTION

**When installing a child restraint system**

For safety reasons, always install the child restraint system in a rear seat. In the event that the rear seat cannot be used, the front seat can be used as long as the airbag manual on-off system is set to "OFF".
If the airbag manual on-off system is left on, the strong impact of the airbag deployment (inflation) may cause death or serious injury.

**When a child restraint system is not installed on the front passenger seat**

Ensure that the airbag manual on-off system is set to "ON".
If it is left off, the airbag may not deploy in the event of an accident, which may result in death or serious injury.

RX350_270_EE_48D77E.book 167 ページ ２０１４年１月２４日 金曜日 午前１０時４分

# When driving 2


**2-1. Driving procedures**

Driving the vehicle ..... 168
Engine (ignition) switch ..... 180
Automatic transmission..... 186
Turn signal lever ..... 193
Parking brake ..... 194
Horn ..... 195

**2-2. Instrument cluster**

Gauges and meters ..... 196
Indicators and warning lights..... 198
Multi-information display ..... 203
Head-up display..... 212

**2-3. Operating the lights and windshield wipers**

Headlight switch..... 217
Fog light switch..... 222
Windshield wipers and washer..... 223
Rear window wiper and washer..... 227
Headlight cleaner switch..... 229

**2-4. Using other driving systems**

Cruise control..... 230
Dynamic radar cruise control..... 234
Lexus parking assist-sensor..... 248
Electronically modulated air suspension..... 256
Rear view monitor system..... 263
Driving assist systems ..... 271
All-wheel drive lock switch ..... 277
Hill-start assist control..... 278
Pre-Crash Safety system..... 280

**2-5. Driving information**

Utility vehicle precautions ..... 289
Cargo and luggage..... 293
Winter driving tips ..... 296
Trailer towing (RX350)..... 300
Trailer towing (RX270)..... 311

# Driving the vehicle

**The following procedures should be observed to ensure safe driving.**

## Starting the engine

→P. 180

## Driving

STEP 1 With the brake pedal depressed, shift the shift lever to D. (→P. 186)

STEP 2 Release the parking brake. (→P. 194)

STEP 3 Gradually release the brake pedal and gently depress the accelerator pedal to accelerate the vehicle.

## Stopping

STEP 1 With the shift lever in D, depress the brake pedal.

STEP 2 If necessary, set the parking brake.

If the vehicle is to be stopped for an extended period of time, shift the shift lever to P or N. (→P. 186)

## Parking the vehicle

STEP 1 With the shift lever in D, depress the brake pedal.

STEP 2 Set the parking brake. (→P. 194)

STEP 3 Shift the shift lever to P. (→P. 186)

If parking on a hill, block the wheels as needed.

STEP 4 Press the “ENGINE START STOP” switch to stop the engine.

STEP 5 Lock the door, making sure that you have the electronic key on your person.

## Starting off on a steep uphill

STEP 1 Make sure that the parking brake is set and shift the shift lever to D.

STEP 2 Gently depress the accelerator pedal.

STEP 3 Release the parking brake.

### When starting off on an uphill

The hill-start assist control is available. (→P. 278)

### Driving in the rain

- Drive carefully when it is raining, because visibility will be reduced, the windows may become fogged-up, and the road will be slippery.
- Drive carefully when it starts to rain, because the road surface will be especially slippery.
- Refrain from high speeds when driving on an expressway in the rain, because there may be a layer of water between the tires and the road surface, preventing the steering and brakes from operating properly.

### Engine speed while driving

In the following conditions, the engine speed may become high while driving. This is due to automatic up-shifting control or down-shifting implementation to meet driving conditions. It does not indicate sudden acceleration.

- The vehicle is judged to be driving uphill or downhill
- When the accelerator pedal is released

### Breaking in your new Lexus

To extend the life of the vehicle, observing the following precautions is recommended:

- For the first 300 km (200 miles):
  Avoid sudden stops.
- For the first 800 km (500 miles):
  Do not tow a trailer.
- For the first 2000 km (1200 miles):
  - Do not drive at extremely high speeds.
  - Avoid sudden acceleration.
  - Do not drive continuously in low gears.
  - Do not drive at a constant speed for extended periods.

### Drum-in-disc type parking brake system

Your vehicle has a drum-in-disc type parking brake system. This type of brake system needs bedding-down of the brake shoes periodically or whenever the parking brake shoes and/or drum are replaced. Have any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional, perform the bedding down operation.

### Operating your vehicle in a foreign country

Comply with the relevant vehicle registration laws and confirm the availability of the correct fuel. (→P. 609)

## Eco-friendly driving




During Eco-friendly acceleration (Eco driving), Eco Driving Indicator Light will turn on. When the acceleration exceeds Zone of Eco driving, and when the vehicle is stopped, the light turns off.

Eco Driving Indicator Light will not operate in the following conditions:

- The shift lever is in anything other than D.
- The paddle shift switch is operated. (if equipped)
- The driving mode is set to snow mode. (→P. 188)
- The vehicle speed is approximately 130 km/h (80 mph) or higher.

## Customization

Setting of Eco Driving Indicator Light can be changed.
(Customizable features →P. 622)

### CAUTION

**When starting the vehicle**

Always keep your foot on the brake pedal while stopped with the engine running. This prevents the vehicle from creeping.

## ⚠ CAUTION

**■ When driving the vehicle**

- Do not drive if you are unfamiliar with the location of the brake and accelerator pedals to avoid depressing the wrong pedal.
  - Accidentally depressing the accelerator pedal instead of the brake pedal will result in sudden acceleration that may lead to an accident that could result in death or serious injury.
  - When backing up, you may twist your body around, leading to a difficulty in operating the pedals. Make sure to operate the pedals properly.
  - Make sure to keep a correct driving posture even when moving the vehicle only slightly. This allows you to depress the brake and accelerator pedals properly.
  - Depress the brake pedal using your right foot. Depressing the brake pedal using your left foot may delay response in an emergency, resulting in an accident.
- Do not drive the vehicle over or stop the vehicle near flammable materials.
  The exhaust system and exhaust gases can be extremely hot. These hot parts may cause a fire if there is any flammable material nearby.
- Do not let the vehicle roll backward while the shift lever is in a driving position, or roll forward while the shift lever is in R.
  Doing so may cause the engine to stall or lead to poor brake and steering performance, resulting in an accident or damage to the vehicle.
- If the smell of exhaust is noticed inside the vehicle, open the windows and check that the back door is closed. Large amounts of exhaust in the vehicle can cause driver drowsiness and an accident, resulting in death or a serious health hazard. Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional immediately.
- Do not shift the shift lever to P while the vehicle is moving.
  Doing so can damage the transmission and may result in a loss of vehicle control.
- Do not shift the shift lever to R while the vehicle is moving forward.
  Doing so can damage the transmission and may result in a loss of vehicle control.
- Do not shift the shift lever to D while the vehicle is moving backward.
  Doing so can damage the transmission and may result in a loss of vehicle control.

## ⚠ CAUTION

- Moving the shift lever to N while the vehicle is moving will disengage the engine from the transmission. Engine braking is not available when N is selected.
- During normal driving, do not turn off the engine. Turning the engine off while driving will not cause loss of steering or braking control, but the power assist to these systems will be lost. This will make it more difficult to steer and brake, so you should pull over and stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.
  However, in the event of an emergency, such as if it becomes impossible to stop the vehicle in the normal way: →P. 603
- Use engine braking (downshift) to maintain a safe speed when driving down a steep hill.
  Using the brakes continuously may cause the brakes to overheat and lose effectiveness. (→P. 187)
- When stopped on an incline, use the brake pedal and parking brake to prevent the vehicle from rolling backward or forward, causing an accident.
- Do not adjust the position of the steering wheel, the seat, or the inside or outside rear view mirrors while driving.
  Doing so may result in a loss of vehicle control that can cause accidents, resulting in death or serious injury.
- Always check that all passengers' arms, heads or other parts of their body are not outside the vehicle, as this may result in death or serious injury.
- On vehicles with an electronically modulated air suspension, if you drive through water, such as when crossing shallow streams, first check the depth of the water and the firmness of the river bed. Put the vehicle in “HI” (high) mode with the height selector switch and then turn off the electronically modulated air suspension by pressing the height control off switch. Drive your vehicle at 30 km/h (19 mph) or lower.

## ⚠ CAUTION

**■ When driving on slippery road surfaces**

- Sudden braking, acceleration and steering may cause tire slippage and reduce your ability to control the vehicle, resulting in an accident.
- Sudden acceleration, engine braking due to shift changing, or changes in engine speed could cause the vehicle to skid, resulting in an accident.
- After driving through a puddle, lightly depress the brake pedal to make sure that the brakes are functioning properly. Wet brake pads may prevent the brakes from functioning properly. If the brakes on only one side are wet and not functioning properly, steering control may be affected, resulting in an accident.

**■ When shifting the shift lever**

Be careful not to shift the shift lever with the accelerator pedal depressed.
This may lead to unexpected rapid acceleration of the vehicle that may cause an accident and result in death or serious injury.

**■ If you hear a squealing or scraping noise (brake pad wear indicators)**

Have the brake pads checked and replaced by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional as soon as possible.
Rotor damage can result if the pads are not replaced when needed.

Moderate levels of brake pad and disc wear allow enhanced front braking power. As a result, the discs may wear more quickly than conventional brake discs. Therefore, when replacing the brake pads, Lexus recommends that you also have the thickness of the discs measured.
It is dangerous to drive the vehicle when the wear limits of the brake pads and/or those of the brake discs are exceeded.

## ⚠ CAUTION

**■ When the vehicle is stopped**

- Do not race the engine.
  If the vehicle is in any gear other than P or N, the vehicle may accelerate suddenly and unexpectedly, causing an accident.
- Do not leave the vehicle with the engine running for a long time.
  If such a situation cannot be avoided, park the vehicle in an open space and check that exhaust fumes do not enter the vehicle interior.
- In order to prevent accidents due to the vehicle rolling away, always keep depressing the brake pedal while the engine is running, and apply the parking brake as necessary.
- If the vehicle is stopped on an incline, in order to prevent accidents caused by the vehicle rolling forward or backward, always depress the brake pedal and securely apply the parking brake as needed.
- Avoid revving or racing the engine.
  Running the engine at high speed while the vehicle is stopped may cause the exhaust system to overheat, which could result in a fire if combustible material is nearby.

## ⚠ CAUTION

**■ When the vehicle is parked**

- Do not leave glasses, cigarette lighters, spray cans, or soft drink cans in the vehicle when it is in the sun.
  Doing so may result in the following:
  - Gas may leak from a cigarette lighter or spray can, and may lead to a fire.
  - The temperature inside the vehicle may cause the plastic lenses and plastic material of glasses to deform or crack.
  - Soft drink cans may fracture, causing the contents to spray over the interior of the vehicle, and may also cause a short circuit in the vehicle's electrical components.
- Do not leave cigarette lighters in the vehicle. If a cigarette lighter is in a place such as the glove box or on the floor, it may be lit accidentally when luggage is loaded or the seat is adjusted, causing a fire.
- Do not attach adhesive discs to the windshield or windows. Do not place containers such as air fresheners on the instrument panel or dashboard. Adhesive discs or containers may act as lenses, causing a fire in the vehicle.
- Do not leave a door or window open if the curved glass is coated with a metallized film such as a silver-colored one. Reflected sunlight may cause the glass to act as a lens, causing a fire.
- Always apply the parking brake, shift the shift lever to P, stop the engine and lock the vehicle.
  Do not leave the vehicle unattended while the engine is running.
- Do not touch the exhaust pipes while the engine is running or immediately after turning the engine off.
  Doing so may cause burns.
- Do not leave the engine running in an area with snow build-up, or where it is snowing. If snowbanks build up around the vehicle while the engine is running, exhaust gases may collect and enter the vehicle. This may lead to death or a serious health hazard.

## ⚠ CAUTION

### ■ Exhaust gases

Exhaust gases include harmful carbon monoxide (CO) that is colorless and odorless. Inhaling exhaust gases may lead to death or a serious health hazard.

- If the vehicle is in a poorly ventilated area, stop the engine. In a closed area, such as a garage, exhaust gases may collect and enter the vehicle. This may lead to death or a serious health hazard.
- The exhaust system should be checked occasionally. If there is a hole or crack caused by corrosion, damage to a joint or abnormal exhaust noise, be sure to have the vehicle inspected and repaired by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional. Failure to do so may allow exhaust gases to enter the vehicle, resulting in death or a serious health hazard.

### ■ When taking a nap in the vehicle

Always turn the engine off. Otherwise, if you accidentally move the shift lever or depress the accelerator pedal, this could cause an accident or fire due to engine overheating. Additionally, if the vehicle is parked in a poorly ventilated area, exhaust gases may collect and enter the vehicle, leading to death or a serious health hazard.

### ■ When braking the vehicle

- When the brakes are wet, drive more cautiously.
  Braking distance increases when the brakes are wet, and this may cause one side of the vehicle to brake differently than the other side. Also, the parking brake may not securely hold the vehicle.
- If the power brake assist function does not operate, do not follow other vehicles closely and avoid hills or sharp turns that require braking.
  In this case, braking is still possible, but the brake pedal should be depressed more firmly than usual. Also, the braking distance will increase. Have your brakes fixed immediately.
- Do not pump the brake pedal if the engine stalls.
  Each push on the brake pedal uses up the reserve for the power-assisted brakes.
- The brake system consists of 2 individual hydraulic systems; if one of the systems fails, the other will still operate. In this case, the brake pedal should be depressed more firmly than usual and the braking distance will increase.
  Have your brakes fixed immediately.

## ⚠ CAUTION

**■ If the vehicle becomes stuck**

Do not spin the wheels excessively when any of the tires is up in the air, or the vehicle is stuck in sand, mud, etc. This may damage the driveline components or propel the vehicle forward or backward, causing an accident.

## ⚠ NOTICE

**■ When driving the vehicle**

- Do not depress the accelerator and brake pedals at the same time during driving, as this may restrain driving torque.
- Do not use the accelerator pedal or depress the accelerator and brake pedals at the same time to hold the vehicle on a hill.

**■ When parking the vehicle**

Always shift the shift lever to P. Failure to do so may cause the vehicle to move or the vehicle may accelerate suddenly if the accelerator pedal is accidentally depressed.

**■ Avoiding damage to vehicle parts**

- Do not turn the steering wheel fully in either direction and hold it there for an extended period of time.
  Doing so may damage the power steering motor.
- When driving over bumps in the road, drive as slowly as possible to avoid damaging the wheels, underside of the vehicle, etc.

**■ If you get a flat tire while driving**

A flat or damaged tire may cause the following situations. Hold the steering wheel firmly and gradually depress the brake pedal to slow down the vehicle.

- It may be difficult to control your vehicle.
- The vehicle will make abnormal sounds.
- The vehicle will behave abnormally.

Information on what to do in case of a flat tire (→P. 572)

NOTICE

**When encountering flooded roads**

Do not drive on a road that has flooded after heavy rain etc. Doing so may cause the following serious damage to the vehicle:

- Engine stalling
- Short in electrical components
- Engine damage caused by water immersion

In the event that you drive on a flooded road and the vehicle is flooded, be sure to have any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional check the following:

- Brake function
- Changes in quantity and quality of oil and fluid used for the engine, transaxle, transfer (AWD models), differential, etc.
- Lubricant condition for the propeller shaft (AWD models), bearings and suspension joints (where possible), and the function of all joints, bearings, etc.

**Performing the following operations when carrying the electronic key on your person starts the engine or changes "ENGINE START STOP" switch modes.**

## Starting the engine

STEP 1 Check that the parking brake is set.

STEP 2 Check that the shift lever is set in P.

STEP 3 Firmly depress the brake pedal.

The "ENGINE START STOP" switch indicator will turn green. If the indicator does not turn green, the engine cannot be started.

STEP 4




Press the "ENGINE START STOP" switch.

The engine will crank until it starts or for up to 30 seconds, whichever is less.

Continue depressing the brake pedal until the engine is completely started.

The engine can be started from any "ENGINE START STOP" switch mode.

## Stopping the engine

STEP 1 Stop the vehicle.

STEP 2 Shift the shift lever to P.

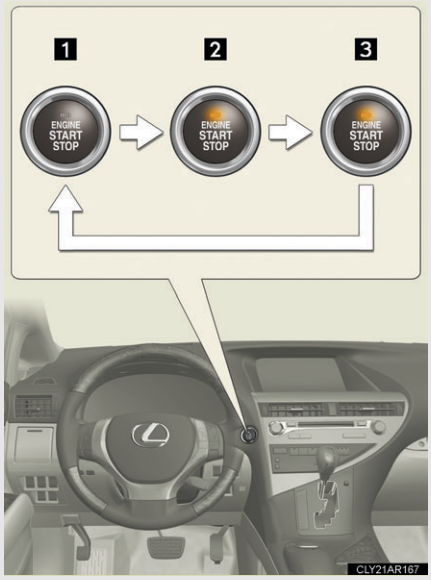
STEP 3 Set the parking brake. (→P. 194)

STEP 4 Press the "ENGINE START STOP" switch.

STEP 5 Release the brake pedal and check that the indicator on the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is off.

## Changing "ENGINE START STOP" switch modes

Modes can be changed by pressing the "ENGINE START STOP" switch with the brake pedal released. (The mode changes each time the switch is pressed.)




**1** Off*

The emergency flashers can be used.

**2** ACCESSORY mode

Some electrical components such as the audio system can be used.

The "ENGINE START STOP" switch indicator turns amber.

**3** IGNITION ON mode

All electrical components can be used.

The "ENGINE START STOP" switch indicator turns amber.

*: If the shift lever is in a position other than P when turning off the engine, the "ENGINE START STOP" switch will be switched to ACCESSORY mode, not to off.

## When stopping the engine with the shift lever in a position other than P

If the engine is stopped with the shift lever in a position other than P, the "ENGINE START STOP" switch will not be turned off but instead be turned to ACCESSORY mode. Perform the following procedure to turn the switch off:

STEP 1 Check that the parking brake is set.

STEP 2 Shift the shift lever to P.

STEP 3 Check that the indicator on the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is illuminated in amber and then press the "ENGINE START STOP" switch once.

STEP 4 Check that the indicator on the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is off.

### ■ Auto power off function

When the shift lever is in P, if the vehicle is left in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode with the engine not running for more than 20 minutes (ACCESSORY mode) or one hour (IGNITION ON mode), the "ENGINE START STOP" switch will automatically turn off. However, this function cannot entirely prevent battery discharge. Do not leave the vehicle with the "ENGINE START STOP" switch in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode for long periods of time when the engine is not running.

### ■ Operation of the "ENGINE START STOP" switch

When operating the "ENGINE START STOP" switch, one short, firm press is enough. If the switch is pressed improperly, the engine may not start or the "ENGINE START STOP" switch mode may not change. It is not necessary to press and hold the switch.

### ■ Electronic key battery depletion

→P. 40

### ■ Conditions affecting operation

→P. 37

### ■ Note for the entry function

→P. 38

■ **If the engine does not start**

The engine immobilizer system may not have been deactivated. (→P. 115)
Contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional immediately.

■ **Steering lock**

After turning the "ENGINE START STOP" switch off and opening and closing the doors, the steering wheel will be locked due to the steering lock function. Operating the "ENGINE START STOP" switch again automatically cancels the steering lock.

■ **When the steering lock cannot be released**




The green indicator light on the "ENGINE START STOP" switch will flash and a message will be shown on the multi-information display. Press the "ENGINE START STOP" switch again while turning the steering wheel left and right.

■ **Steering lock motor overheating prevention**

To prevent the steering lock motor from overheating, the motor may be suspended if the engine is turned on and off repeatedly in a short period of time. In this case, refrain from operating the engine. After about 2 seconds, the steering lock motor will resume functioning.

■ **When the "ENGINE START STOP" switch indicator flashes in amber**

The system may be malfunctioning. Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional, immediately.

■ **If the electronic key battery is depleted**

→P. 501

## ⚠ CAUTION

**■ When starting the engine**

Always start the engine while sitting in the driver's seat. Do not depress the accelerator pedal while starting the engine under any circumstances.
Doing so may cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

**■ Caution while driving**

If the vehicle begins to slide due to engine failure or other circumstances, do not lock or open the doors until the vehicle reaches a safe and complete stop. Activation of the steering lock in this circumstance may lead to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

**■ Stopping the engine in an emergency**

If you want to stop the engine in an emergency while driving the vehicle, press and hold the "ENGINE START STOP" switch for more than 2 seconds, or press it briefly 3 times or more in succession. (→P. 603)
However, do not touch the "ENGINE START STOP" switch while driving except in an emergency. Turning the engine off while driving will not cause loss of steering or braking control, but the power assist to these systems will be lost. This will make it more difficult to steer and brake, so you should pull over and stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

## NOTICE

**■ To prevent battery discharge**

- Do not leave the "ENGINE START STOP" switch in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode for long periods of time without the engine running.
- If the indicator on the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is illuminated, the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is not off. When exiting the vehicle, always check that the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is off.
- Do not stop the engine when the shift lever is in a position other than P. If the engine is stopped in another shift lever position, the "ENGINE START STOP" switch will not be turned off but instead be turned to ACCESSORY mode. If the vehicle is left in ACCESSORY mode, battery discharge may occur.

**■ When starting the engine**

- Do not race a cold engine.
- If the engine becomes difficult to start or stalls frequently, have your vehicle checked by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional immediately.

**■ Symptoms indicating a malfunction with the "ENGINE START STOP" switch**

If the "ENGINE START STOP" seems to be operating somewhat differently than usual, such as the switch sticking slightly, there may be a malfunction. Contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional immediately.

Select a shift position appropriate for the driving conditions.

## Shifting the shift lever




While the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is in IGNITION ON mode, depress the brake pedal and move the shift lever.

When shifting the shift lever between P and D, make sure that the vehicle is completely stopped.

## Shift position purpose

| Shift position | Function |
|---|---|
| P | Parking the vehicle/starting the engine |
| R | Reversing |
| N | Neutral |
| D | Normal driving*1 |
| S | S mode driving*2 (→P. 189) |

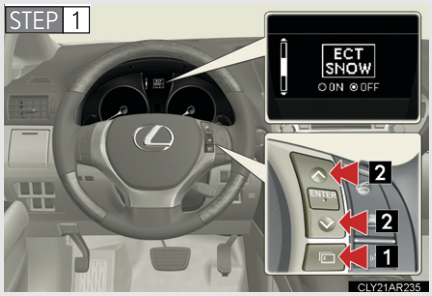
*1: Shifting to the D position allows the system to select a gear suitable for the driving condition. Setting the shift lever to the D position is recommended for normal driving.

*2: Selecting shift ranges using S mode restricts the upper limit of the possible gear ranges, controls engine braking forces, and prevents unnecessary upshifting.

## Selecting snow mode

Use snow mode for accelerating and driving on slippery road surfaces such as snow.

STEP 1

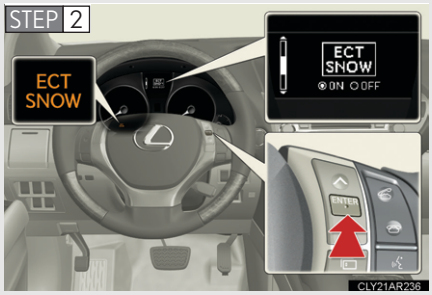



1 Press the menu switch.

The multi-information display will change modes to electronic features control mode.

2 Press the "∧" or "∨" switch until "ECT SNOW" appears.

STEP 2



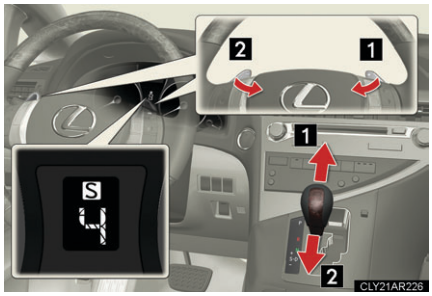

Press the "ENTER" switch to change to "ON".
The "ECT SNOW" indicator will be displayed.

Each pressing of the switch turns snow mode on and off.

Press the menu switch to change to the normal display.

## Changing shift ranges in S mode

To enter S mode, shift the shift lever to the S position. The shift range can then be selected by operating the "-" and "+" paddle shift switches (if equipped) or the shift lever. Changing the shift range allows restriction of the upper limit of the gears to be used, preventing unnecessary upshifting and enabling the level of engine braking force to be selected.




1 Upshifting
2 Downshifting

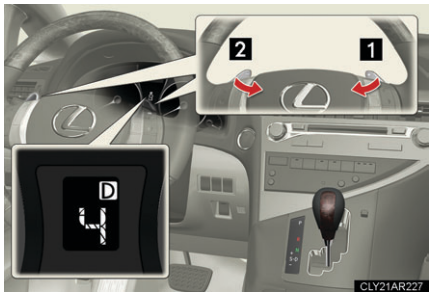
The initial shift range in S mode is set automatically to "5" or "4" according to vehicle speed. However, the initial shift range may be set to "3" if AI-SHIFT has operated while the shift lever was in the D position.
(→P. 191)

### Shift ranges and their functions

- Automatically selecting gears between 1 and 6 according to vehicle speed and driving conditions. But the gear is limited according to selected shift range.
- You can choose from 6 levels of engine braking force.
- A lower shift range will provide greater engine braking force than a higher shift range, and the engine speed will also increase.

## Selecting shift ranges in the D position (vehicles with paddle shift switches)

To drive using temporary shift range selection, operate the "-" paddle shift switch. The shift range can then be selected by operating the "-" and "+" paddle shift switches. Changing the shift range allows restriction of the upper limit of the gears to be used, preventing unnecessary upshifting and enabling the level of engine braking force to be selected.




1 Upshifting

2 Downshifting

To return to normal D position driving, the "+" paddle shift switch must be held down for a period of time.

### Shift ranges and their functions

→P. 189

■ **When the "-" paddle shift switch is operated in the D position (vehicles with paddle shift switches)**

When the "-" paddle shift switch is operated in the D position, a shift range will be automatically selected. The highest gear of the first shift range will be one gear lower than the gear in use during normal D position driving.

■ **Automatic deactivation of shift range selection in the D position (vehicles with paddle shift switches)**

Shift range selection in the D position will be deactivated in the following situations:

- When the vehicle comes to a stop
- When range 6 is selected and the accelerator pedal is depressed
- If the accelerator pedal is depressed for more than a certain period of time

■ **Snow mode automatic deactivation**

Snow mode is automatically deactivated if the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned off after driving in snow mode.

■ **S mode**

- When the shift range is "5" or lower, holding the shift lever toward "+" sets the shift range to "6".
- To prevent the engine from over-revving, upshifting may automatically occur.
- To protect the automatic transmission, a function is adopted that automatically selects a higher shift range when the fluid temperature is high.

■ **AI-SHIFT**

AI-SHIFT automatically selects the suitable gear according to driver performance and driving conditions.
The AI-SHIFT automatically operates when the shift lever is in the D position. (Shifting the shift lever to the S position cancels the function.)

■ **When driving with cruise control or radar cruise control activated**

Even when performing the following actions with the intent of enabling engine braking, engine braking will not activate while driving in S mode and downshifting to 5 or 4 because cruise control or radar cruise control will not be canceled.
(→P. 230, 234)

■ **If the shift lever cannot be shifted from P**

→P. 589

■ **If S does not come on or D comes on even after shifting the shift lever to S**

This may indicate a malfunction in the automatic transmission system. Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional immediately.
(In this situation, the transmission will operate in the same as manner as when the shift lever is in D.)

■ **Downshift restriction warning buzzer**

To help ensure safety and driving performance, downshifting operation may sometimes be restricted. In some circumstances, downshifting may not be possible even when the shift lever or paddle shift switch is operated. (The warning buzzer will sound twice.)

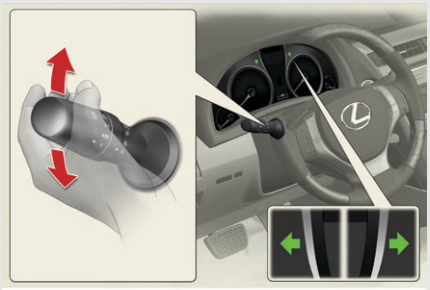
**⚠ CAUTION**

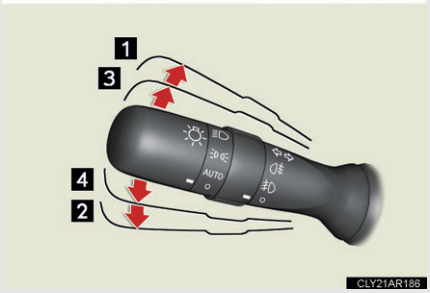
■ **When driving on slippery road surfaces**

Do not accelerate or shift gears suddenly.
Sudden changes in engine braking may cause the vehicle to spin or skid, resulting in an accident.

# Turn signal lever

The turn signal lever can be used to show the following intention of the driver:






1 Right turn

2 Left turn

3 Lane change to the right (move the lever partway and release it)

The right hand signals will flash 3 times.

4 Lane change to the left (move the lever partway and release it)

The left hand signals will flash 3 times.

■ **Turn signals can be operated when**

The “ENGINE START STOP” switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

■ **If the indicators flash faster than usual**

Check that a light bulb in the front or rear turn signal lights has not burned out.

■ **If the turn signals stop flashing before a lane change has been performed**

Operate the lever again.

■ **To discontinue flashing of the turn signals during a lane change**

Operate the lever in the opposite direction.

■ **Customization**

The number of times the turn signals flash during a lane change can be changed. (Customizable features →P. 622)

# Parking brake




To set the parking brake, fully depress the parking brake pedal with your left foot while depressing the brake pedal with your right foot.
(Depressing the pedal again releases the parking brake.)

### Usage in winter time

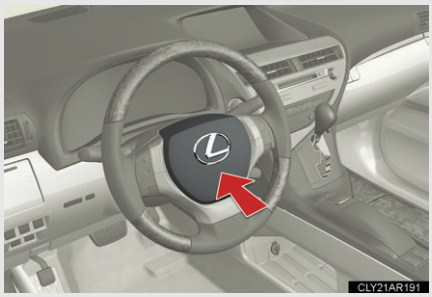
→P. 296

### NOTICE

**Before driving**

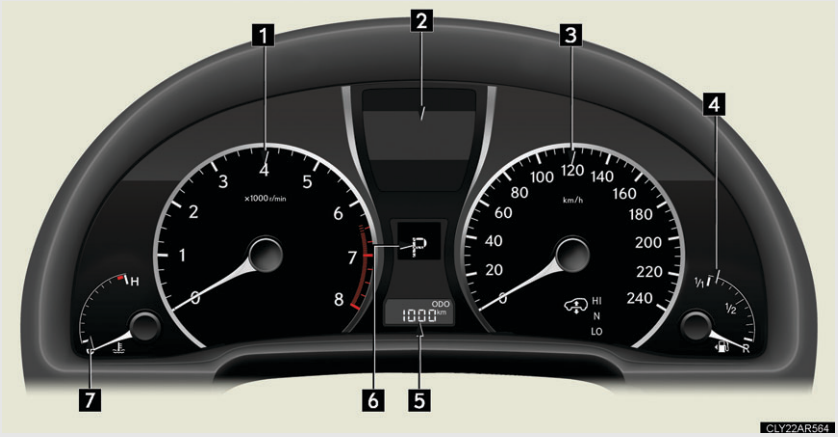
Fully release the parking brake.
Driving the vehicle with the parking brake set will lead to brake components overheating, which may affect braking performance and increase brake wear.

# Horn




To sound the horn, press on or close to the mark.

# Gauges and meters




**1** Tachometer

Displays the engine speed in revolutions per minute

**2** Multi-information display

Presents the driver with a variety of driving-related data (→P. 203)

**3** Speedometer

Displays the vehicle speed

**4** Fuel gauge

Displays the quantity of fuel remaining in the tank

**5** Odometer and trip meter

Odometer: Displays the total distance the vehicle has been driven

Trip meter: Displays the distance the vehicle has been driven since the meter was last reset. Trip meters "A" and "B" can be used to record and display different distances independently.

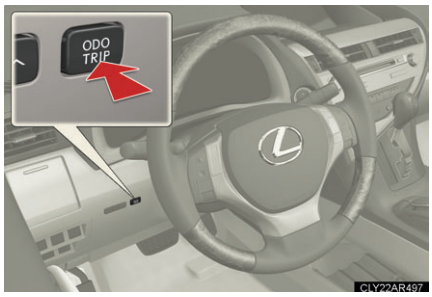
**6** Shift position and shift range display

Displays the selected shift position or selected shift range (→P. 186)

**7** Engine coolant temperature gauge

Displays the engine coolant temperature

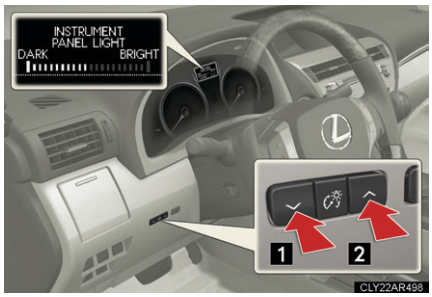
## Changing the display




Switches between odometer and trip meter displays. When the trip meter is displayed, pressing and holding the button will reset the trip meter.

## Instrument panel light control

The brightness of the instrument panel lights can be adjusted.




1 Darker
2 Brighter

### The meters and display illuminate when

The “ENGINE START STOP” switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

### NOTICE

**To prevent damage to the engine and its components**

- Do not let the indicator needle of the tachometer enter the red zone, which indicates the maximum engine speed.
- The engine may be overheating if the engine coolant temperature gauge is in the red zone (H). In this case, immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place, and check the engine after it has cooled completely. (→P. 598)

# Indicators and warning lights

The indicator and warning lights on the instrument cluster and center panel inform the driver of the status of the vehicle's various systems.

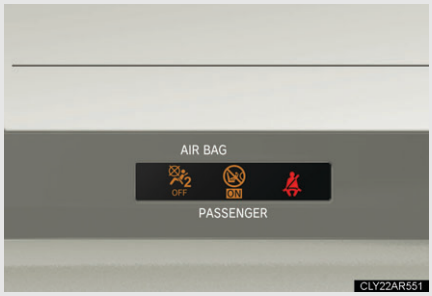
For the purpose of explanation, the following illustration displays all indicators and warning lights illuminated.

## Instrument cluster



## Center panel

▶ Without a navigation system




▶ With a navigation system



## Indicators

The indicators inform the driver of the operating state of the vehicle's various systems.


Turn signal indicator (→P. 193)


Headlight high beam indicator (→P. 217)


Tail light indicator (→P. 217)


Front fog light indicator (→P. 222)


Rear fog light indicator (→P. 222)


Cruise control indicator (→P. 230, 234)


(if equipped)

Radar cruise control indicator (→P. 234)


(if equipped)

Lexus parking assist-sensor indicator (→P. 248)

*1



(if equipped)

"AFS OFF" indicator (→P. 219)

*1, 2


Slip indicator (→P. 272, 278)

*1



VSC off indicator (→P. 273)

*1



(if equipped)

Electronically modulated air suspension indicator (→P. 256)

*1



Eco Driving Indicator Light (→P. 171)

*1



(with navigation system)

SRS airbag on-off indicator (→P. 163)

*1



(without navigation system)

SRS airbag on-off indicator (→P. 163)

*1



(AWD models)

All-wheel drive lock indicator (→P. 277)

ECT SNOW "ECT SNOW" indicator (→P. 188)

*1, 3 PCS (if equipped) Pre-crash safety system warning light (→P. 281)

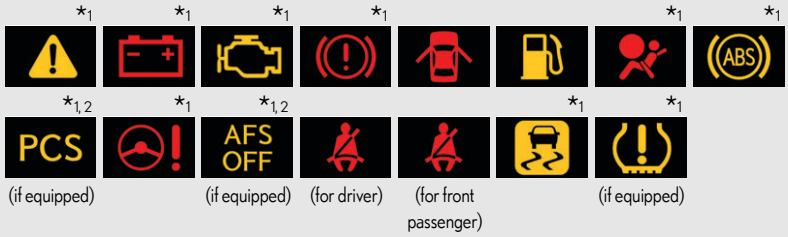
*1: These lights turn on when the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode to indicate that a system check is being performed. They will turn off after the engine is started, or after a few seconds. There may be a malfunction in a system if a light does not come on, or if the lights do not turn off. Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional for details.

*2: The light flashes to indicate that the system is operating.

*3: The light comes on when the system is turned off. The light flashes faster than usual to indicate that the system is operating.

## Warning lights

Warning lights inform the driver of malfunctions in any of the vehicle's systems. (→P. 543)




*1: These lights turn on when the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode to indicate that a system check is being performed. They will turn off after the engine is started, or after a few seconds. There may be a malfunction in a system if a light does not come on, or if the lights do not turn off. Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional for details.

*2: The light flashes to indicate a malfunction.

## ⚠ CAUTION

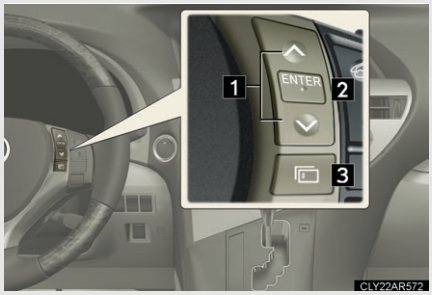
**■ If a safety system warning light does not come on**

Should a safety system light such as the ABS and SRS airbag warning light not come on when you start the engine, this could mean that these systems are not available to help protect you in an accident, which could result in death or serious injury. Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional immediately if this occurs.

# Multi-information display

**The multi-information display presents the driver with a variety of driving-related data including the current outside air temperature.**

## Multi-information switches




1 "∧" "∨" switch

Changes items.

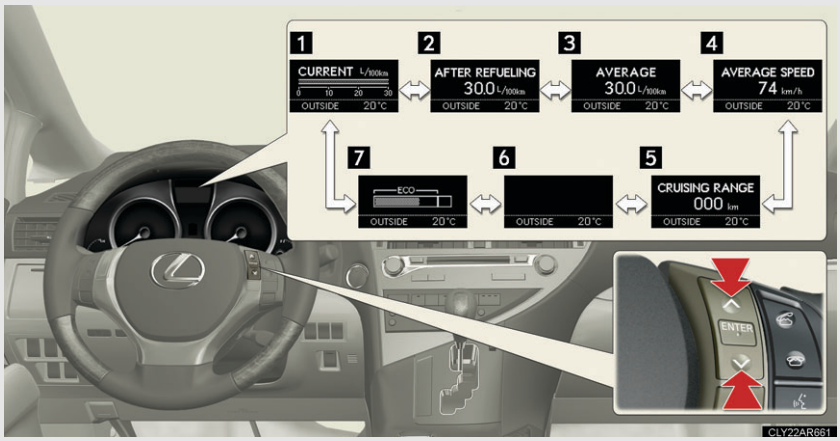
2 "ENTER" switch

Turns on/off electronic features controls and changes customization settings.

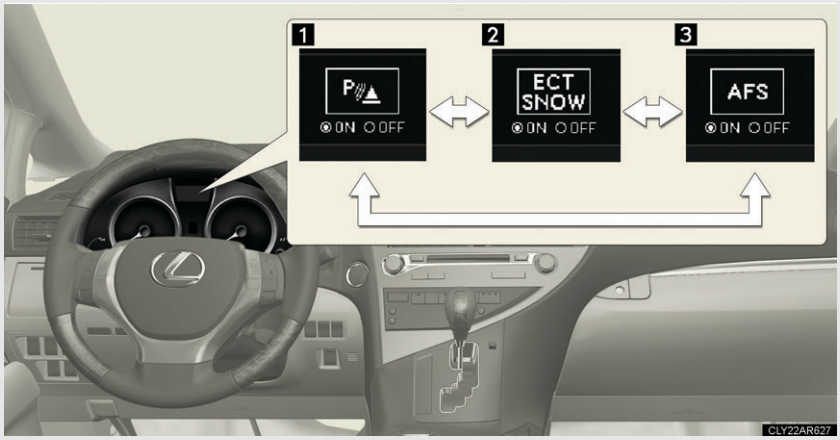
3 Menu switch

Changes mode from normal display to electronic features, customization or back to normal display.

## Display contents




| Trip information contents | Switching display items |
|---|---|
| 1 Current fuel consumption | Press the "∧" or "∨" switch. |
| 2 Average fuel consumption after refueling | |
| 3 Average fuel consumption | |
| 4 Average vehicle speed | |
| 5 Cruising range | |
| 6 Multi-information display off | |
| 7 Eco Driving Indicator Zone Display | |




| Electronic features control contents | Setting electronic features controls |
|---|---|
| 1 Lexus parking assist-sensor (if equipped) | →P. 248 |
| 2 Snow mode | →P. 188 |
| 3 AFS (if equipped) | →P. 219 |

Display order may vary depending on vehicle condition.

| Other contents | Details |
|---|---|
| Outside temperature | Displays the outside temperature |
| Dynamic radar cruise control display (if equipped) (→P. 234) | Automatically displayed when using dynamic radar cruise control |
| Window close suggestion mode (→P. 208) | If you forget to close a window before exiting the vehicle, a suggestion to close all the windows is shown. |
| Customization (→P. 622) | Settings of functions such as the door lock and light illumination time can be changed |
| Warning message (→P. 552) | Automatically displayed when a malfunction occurs in one of the vehicle's systems |

## Trip information

### Current fuel consumption

Displays the current rate of fuel consumption

### Average fuel consumption after refueling

Displays the average fuel consumption since the vehicle was last refueled

Use the displayed average fuel consumption as a reference.

### Average fuel consumption

Displays the average fuel consumption since the function was reset

- The function can be reset by pushing the "ENTER" switch for longer than one second when the average fuel consumption is displayed.
- Use the displayed average fuel consumption as a reference.

### Average vehicle speed

Displays the average vehicle speed since the function was reset

The function can be reset by pushing the “ENTER” switch for longer than one second when the average vehicle speed is displayed.

### Cruising range

Displays the estimated maximum distance that can be driven with the quantity of fuel remaining

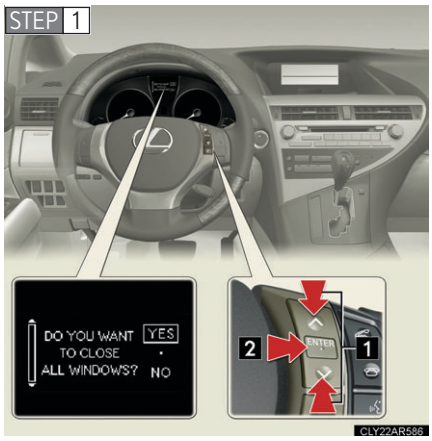
- This distance is computed based on your average fuel consumption. As a result, the actual distance that can be driven may differ from that displayed.
- When only a small amount of fuel is added to the tank, the display may not be updated.
  When refueling, turn the “ENGINE START STOP” switch off. If the vehicle is refueled without turning the “ENGINE START STOP” switch off, the display may not be updated.

### Eco Driving Indicator Zone Display

→P. 210

## Window close suggestion mode

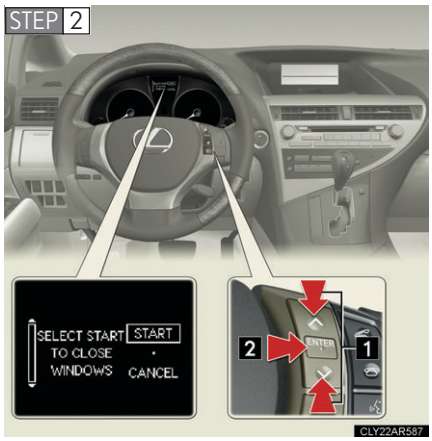
If any of the windows is open when the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned off, a suggestion is shown on the multi-information display asking the driver if they want to close all the windows. Following the procedure below closes all the windows.




1 Press the "∧" or "∨" switch to select "YES".

2 Press the "ENTER" switch.

If "NO" is selected, the window close suggestion mode will be terminated.




1 Press the "∧" or "∨" switch to select "START".

2 Press the "ENTER" switch.

All the windows will start to close.

If "CANCEL" is selected, the window close suggestion mode will be terminated.

■ **Electronic features control can be turned on/off when**

The "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

■ **Conditions for ending electronic features control**

In the following situations, the electronic features control will end:

- The menu switch is pressed.
- The dynamic radar cruise control is operated (if equipped).
- Lexus parking assist-sensor starts operating (if equipped).
- No action is performed for some time after the electronic features control screen is displayed.
- A warning message appears after the electronic features control screen is displayed.

■ **Window close suggestion mode**

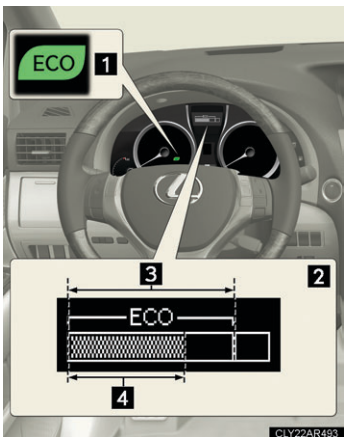
- In the following situations, the window close suggestion mode will not operate:
  - A warning message appears on the multi-information display.
  - The window lock switch is on.
  - All the windows are closed.
  - The window close suggestion mode has been disabled in the customized settings.
  - The driver's or front passenger's door is open.
- In the following situations, the window close suggestion mode will end:
  - The "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode.
  - About 20 seconds have passed since the "ENGINE START STOP" switch was turned off.
  - A warning message appears on the multi-information display.
  - All the windows are closed.
  - The window lock switch is turned on.
  - The menu switch is pressed.
  - The driver's or front passenger's door is opened.
  - The windows were opened or closed by the wireless remote control.

● In the following situations, the window close operation will stop partway:

- The “ENGINE START STOP” switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode.
- The “ENTER” switch was pressed.
- The window lock switch was turned on.
- The jam protection function was activated.
- The windows were opened or closed by the wireless remote control.

If the power window switch of any of the door is operated while in windows close suggestion mode, the windows close operation of that door will stop partway.

### ■ Eco Driving Indicator




1 Eco Driving Indicator Light
During Eco-friendly acceleration (Eco driving), Eco Driving Indicator Light will turn on.

2 Eco Driving Indicator Zone Display
Suggests Eco driving range with current Eco driving ratio based on acceleration.

3 Zone of Eco driving

4 Eco driving ratio based on acceleration
If Zone of Eco driving is exceeded, the right of Eco Driving Indicator Zone Display will blink and Eco Driving Indicator Light will turn off.

### ■ Outside temperature display

In the following situations, the correct outside temperature may not be displayed, or the display may take longer than normal to change.

● When stopped, or driving at low speeds (less than 25km/h [16mph])

● When the outside temperature has changed suddenly (at the entrance/exit of a garage, tunnel, etc.)

■ **The multi-information display at low temperatures**

Allow the interior of the vehicle to warm up before using the liquid crystal information display. At extremely low temperatures, the information display monitor may respond slowly, and display changes may be delayed.

■ **Customization**

Settings (e.g. available languages) can be changed.
(Customizable features →P. 622)

**⚠ CAUTION**

■ **Operating the windows close suggestion mode**

- Before closing the windows, ensure that there are no objects in the surrounding area that could become caught in the windows.
- Check that all the windows are closed when exiting the vehicle, as window close suggestion mode may not operate under certain conditions.

■ **Caution while driving**

When operating the electronic features control while driving, take extra notice of the vehicle's surrounding area.

# Head-up display*

**The head-up display can be used to project vehicle speed and other information onto the windshield.**




1 Head-up display

Display brightness will change automatically according to the brightness of the surrounding area.

2 Head-up display main switch

3 Display contrast adjustment switch

Display brightness can be adjusted to the desired level.

4 Display position adjustment switch

*: If equipped

## Head-up display contents

In addition to vehicle speed, the following information will be displayed:




1 Audio display

Displays audio information for approximately 3 seconds when the audio system is operated

2 Shift position and shift range display

Displays the selected shift position or selected shift range (→P. 186)

3 Dynamic radar cruise control display (if equipped)

Displays the approach warning message (→P. 557)

4 Pre-crash safety system display (if equipped)

Displays the brake warning (→P. 557)

5 Turn-by-turn navigation display*

Displays a notification of upcoming intersections during navigation system route guidance

6 Vehicle speed display

*: Refer to the “Navigation System Owner’s Manual”.

## Head-up display main switch




Pressing the switch turns the head-up display on/off and changes the vehicle speed display units as follows:

▶ Type A
OFF → ON (mph) → ON (km/h) → OFF

▶ Type B
OFF → ON (km/h) → OFF

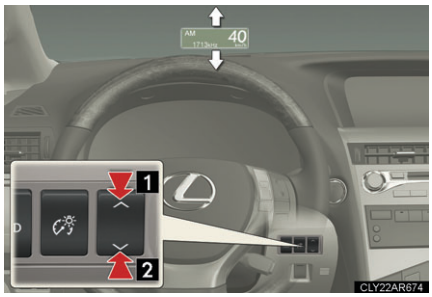
## Display adjustment

▶ Adjusting display contrast




1 Brighter
2 Darker

▶ Adjusting display position




1 Higher
2 Lower

## Display customization

The audio mode display and/or the shift position and shift range display can be shown or hidden.




Press and hold the head-up display main switch changes the display to the display on/off mode.
Press the head-up display main switch to select the desired setting item. Press and hold the head-up display main switch to turn the display on/off.

Customization can be performed when the head-up display is on and the vehicle is traveling at less than 8 km/h (5 mph).

### Brightness of the head-up display

The headlight control sensor detects the brightness of the area surrounding the head-up display and adjusts the brightness accordingly. (→P. 220)

### Head-up display

The head-up display may seem dark and hard to see when viewed through sunglasses, especially polarized sunglasses.

Adjust the brightness of the head-up display or remove your sunglasses.

### ⚠ CAUTION

**Before using the head-up display**

Check that the position and brightness of the head-up display image does not interfere with safe driving. Incorrect adjustment of the image's position or brightness may obstruct the driver's view and lead to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

NOTICE

■ To prevent damage to components

● Do not place anything on the head-up display opening.

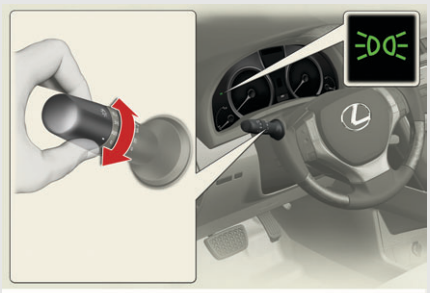


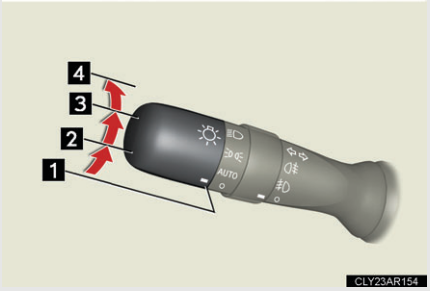

● If an object falls into the opening of the head-up display, remove it immediately. Also, avoid spilling water or other liquids near the head-up display opening as this may cause mechanical damage.

# Headlight switch

**The headlights can be operated manually or automatically.**

Turning the end of the lever turns on the lights as follows:





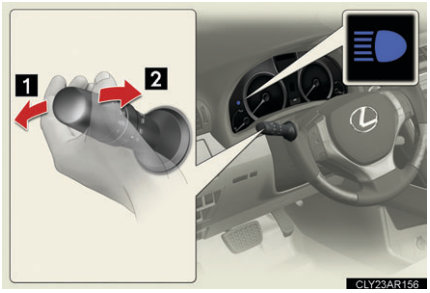

1 Off

2 AUTO The headlights and front position lights turn on and off automatically. (When the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode)

3 The front position, tail, license plate and instrument panel lights turn on.

4 The headlights and all lights listed above turn on.

## Turning on the high beam headlights




1 With the headlights on, push the lever away from you to turn on the high beams.

Pull the lever toward you to the center position to turn the high beams off.

2 Pull the lever toward you to turn on the high beams.

Release the lever to turn them off. You can flash the high beams with the headlights on or off.

## Manual headlight leveling dial (if equipped)

The level of the headlights can be adjusted according to the number of passengers and the loading condition of the vehicle.




1 Raises the level of the headlights
2 Lowers the level of the headlights

### Guide to dial settings

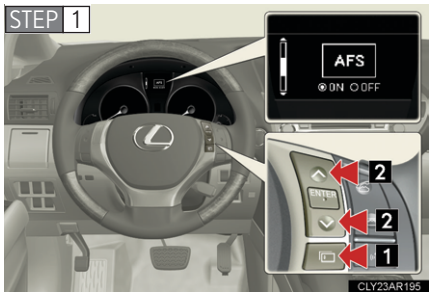
| Occupancy and luggage load conditions | | Dial position |
|---|---|---|
| Occupants | Luggage load | |
| Driver | None | 0 |
| Driver and front passenger | None | 0 |
| All seats occupied | None | 1 |
| All seats occupied | Full luggage loading | 3 |
| Driver | Full luggage loading | 4.5 |

## AFS (Adaptive Front-lighting system) (if equipped)

AFS (Adaptive Front-lighting System) improves visibility at intersections and on curves by automatically adjusting the direction of the light axis of the headlights according to vehicle speed and the degree of the tire angle that are controlled by steering input.

AFS operates at speeds of 10 km/h (6 mph) or higher.

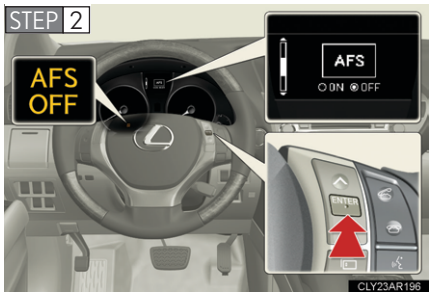
### Deactivating AFS




1 Press the menu switch.

The multi-information display will change modes to electronic features control mode.

2 Press the "∧" or "∨" switch until "AFS" appears.




Press the "ENTER" switch to change to "OFF".
The "AFS OFF" indicator will be displayed.

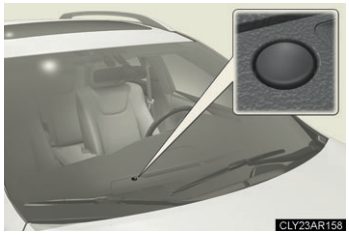
Each pressing of the switch turns "AFS" on and off.

Press the menu switch to change to the normal display.

■ **Daytime running light system**

To make your vehicle more visible to other drivers, the daytime running lights turn on automatically whenever the engine is started. Daytime running lights are not designed for use at night.

■ **Headlight control sensor**




The sensor may not function properly if an object is placed on the sensor, or anything that blocks the sensor is affixed to the windshield.

Doing so interferes with the sensor detecting the level of ambient light and may cause the automatic headlight system to malfunction.

■ **Automatic light off system**

- When the light switch is in or : The headlights turn off automatically if the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned to ACCESSORY mode or turned off.
- When the light switch is in AUTO: The headlights and tail lights turn off automatically if the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned to ACCESSORY mode or turned off.

To turn the lights on again, turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch to IGNITION ON mode, or turn the light switch off once and then back to or .

■ **Automatic headlight leveling system (if equipped)**

The level of the headlights is automatically adjusted according to the number of passengers and the loading condition of the vehicle to ensure that the headlights do not interfere with other road users.

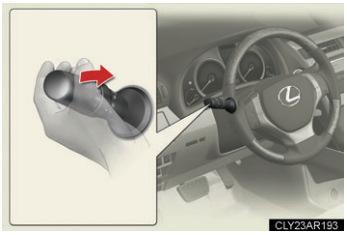
■ **If the "AFS OFF" indicator flashes (if equipped)**

It may indicate a malfunction in the system. Contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

### Light reminder buzzer

A buzzer sounds when the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is turned off or turned to ACCESSORY mode and the driver's door is opened while the lights are turned on.

### Turning on the low beam headlights when the vehicle is parked in dark areas




Turn off the engine with the light switch in AUTO or off, and pull the light switch toward you and release it. The low beam headlights will turn on for about 30 seconds to light up the area around the vehicle.

The lights are turned off in the following situations.

- The “ENGINE START STOP” switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode.
- The light switch is turned on.
- The light switch is pulled toward you and then released.

### Illuminated entry system

If the wireless remote control switch is used to unlock the vehicle when the light switch is in AUTO and the surrounding area is dark, the front position light turns on.

### Customization

Settings (e.g. light sensor sensitivity) can be changed.
(Customizable features →P. 622)

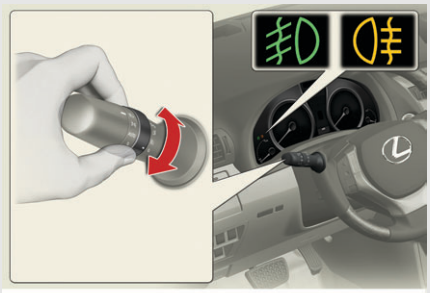
NOTICE

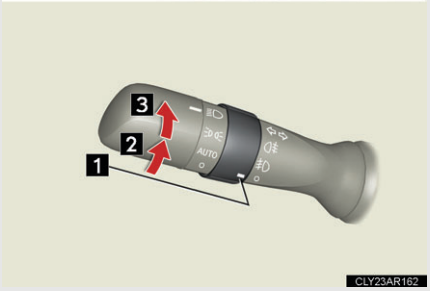
### To prevent battery discharge

Do not leave the lights on longer than necessary when the engine is off.

# Fog light switch

**The fog lights improve visibility in difficult driving conditions, such as in rain and fog.**






1 Turns the front and rear fog lights off

2 Turns the front fog lights on

3 Turns both front and rear fog lights on

Releasing the switch ring returns it to .

Operating the switch ring again turns only the rear fog lights off.

---

**■ Fog lights can be used when**

Front fog lights: The headlights or front position lights are turned on.

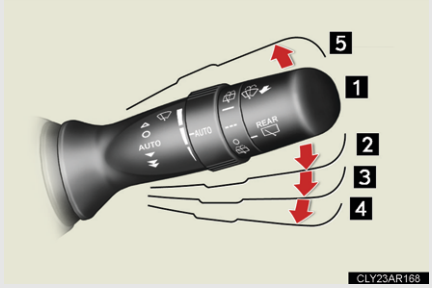
Rear fog lights: The front fog lights are turned on.

# Windshield wipers and washer

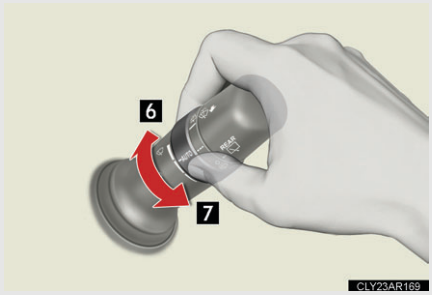
**When AUTO is selected, the wipers will operate automatically when the sensor detects falling rain. The system automatically adjusts wiper timing according to rain volume and vehicle speed.**

When AUTO is selected, the sensor sensitivity can be adjusted as follows by turning the switch ring:

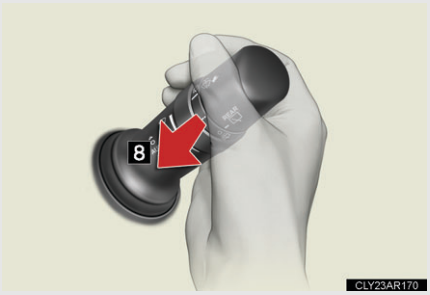





1 O Off
2 AUTO Rain-sensing wiper operation
3 Low speed wiper operation
4 High speed wiper operation
5 Temporary operation




6 Sensor sensitivity (high)
7 Sensor sensitivity (low)




### 8 Washer/wiper dual operation

The wipers will automatically operate a couple of times after the washer squirts. (After operating several times, the wipers operate one more time after a short delay to prevent dripping.)

If the headlights are on, the headlight cleaners will operate once.

---

**■ The windshield wipers and washer can be operated when**

The “ENGINE START STOP” switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

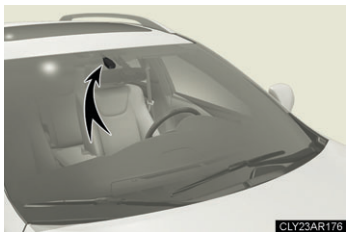
**■ Effects of vehicle speed on wiper operation**

Vehicle speed affects the following even when the wipers are not in AUTO mode:

- Intermittent wiper interval
- Wiper operation when the washer is being used (delay until drip prevention wiper sweep occurs)

When low speed wiper operation is selected, wiper operation will be switched from low speed to intermittent wiper operation only when the vehicle is stationary. (However, when the sensor sensitivity is adjusted to the highest level, the mode cannot be switched.)

### Raindrop sensor




- The raindrop sensor judges the amount of raindrops.

  An optical sensor is adopted. It may not operate properly when sunlight from the rising or setting of the sun intermittently strikes the windshield, or if bugs etc. are present on the windshield.

- If the wiper switch is turned to the AUTO position while the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode, the wipers will operate once to show that AUTO mode is activated.
- When the sensor sensitivity ring is turned toward high while in AUTO mode, the wipers will operate once to indicate that the sensor sensitivity is enhanced.
- If the temperature of the raindrop sensor is 90°C (194°F) or higher, or -15°C (5°F) or lower, automatic operation may not occur. In this case, operate the wipers in any mode other than AUTO.

### If no windshield washer fluid sprays

Check that the washer nozzles are not blocked if there is washer fluid in the windshield washer fluid reservoir.

**⚠ CAUTION**

**Caution regarding the use of windshield wipers in AUTO mode**

The windshield wipers may operate unexpectedly if the sensor is touched or the windshield is subject to vibration in AUTO mode. Take care that your fingers etc. do not become caught in the windshield wipers.

**Caution regarding the use of washer fluid**

When it is cold, do not use the washer fluid until the windshield becomes warm. The fluid may freeze on the windshield and cause low visibility. This may lead to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

NOTICE

**When the windshield is dry**

Do not use the wipers, as they may damage the windshield.

**When the washer fluid tank is empty**

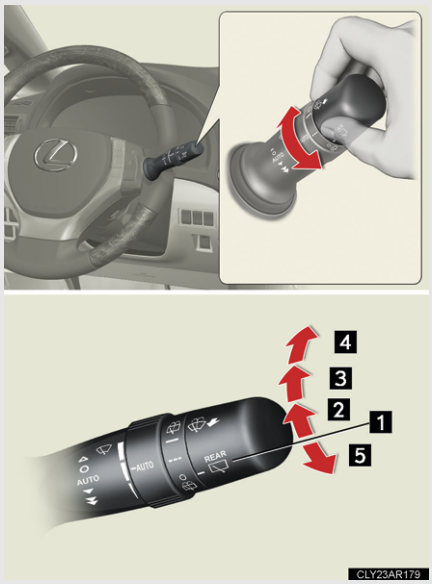
Damage to the washer fluid pump may be caused if the lever is pulled toward you and held continually.

**When a nozzle becomes blocked**

In this case, contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
Do not try to clear it with a pin or other object. The nozzle will be damaged.

# Rear window wiper and washer

The wiper operation is selected by moving the lever as follows:




1 Off
2 Intermittent window wiper operation
3 Normal window wiper operation
4 Washer/wiper dual operation
5 Washer/wiper dual operation

## The rear window wiper and washer can be operated when

The “ENGINE START STOP” switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

NOTICE

■ **When the rear window is dry**

Do not use the wipers, as they may damage the rear window.

■ **When the washer fluid tank is empty**

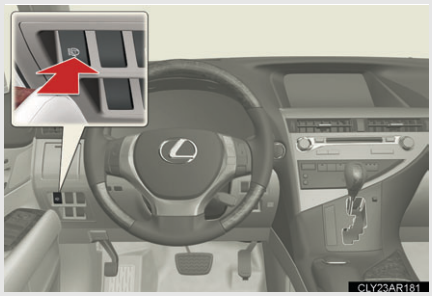
Damage to the washer fluid pump may be caused if the lever is operated continually.

■ **When a nozzle becomes blocked**

In this case, contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
Do not try to clear it with a pin or other object. The nozzle will be damaged.

# Headlight cleaner switch*

**Washer fluid can be sprayed on the headlights.**




Press the switch to clean the headlights.



### The headlight cleaner can be operated when

The “ENGINE START STOP” switch is in IGNITION ON mode and the headlight switch is turned on.

### Windshield washer linked operation

When the windshield washer is operated with the “ENGINE START STOP” switch in IGNITION ON mode and the headlights on, the headlight cleaner will operate once. (→P. 223)

**NOTICE**

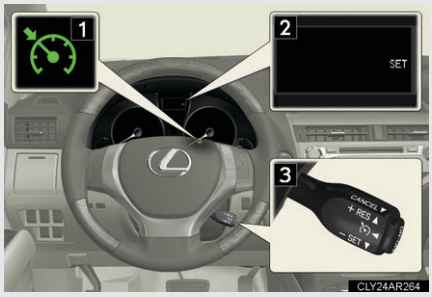
### When the washer fluid tank is empty

Do not press the switch continually as the washer fluid pump may overheat.

*: If equipped

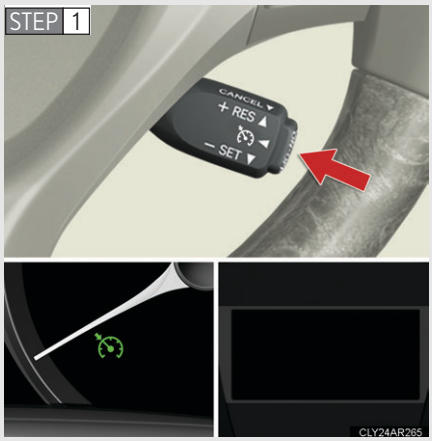
# Cruise control*

**Use the cruise control to maintain a set speed without depressing the accelerator pedal.**




1 Indicator
2 Display
3 Cruise control switch

## Setting the vehicle speed




Press the “ON-OFF” button to activate the cruise control.

Cruise control indicator will come on.

Press the button again to deactivate the cruise control.

*: If equipped

STEP 2



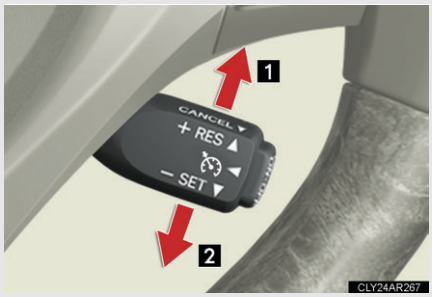

Accelerate or decelerate the vehicle to the desired speed, and push the lever down to set the speed.

"SET" will be displayed.

The vehicle speed at the moment the lever is released becomes the set speed.

## Adjusting the set speed

To change the set speed, operate the lever until the desired set speed is obtained.




1 Increases the speed

2 Decreases the speed

Fine adjustment: Momentarily move the lever in the desired direction.

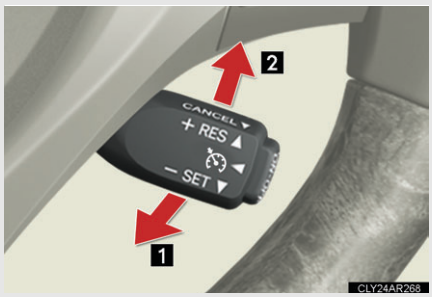
Large adjustment: Hold the lever in the desired direction.

The set speed will be increased or decreased as follows:

Fine adjustment: By approximately 1.6 km/h (1 mph) each time the lever is operated.

Large adjustment: The set speed can be increased or decreased continually until the lever is released.

## Canceling and resuming the constant speed control




1 Pulling the lever toward you cancels the constant speed control.

The speed setting is also canceled when the brakes are applied.

2 Pushing the lever up resumes the constant speed control.

Resuming is available when the vehicle speed is more than approximately 40 km/h (25 mph).

### Cruise control can be set when

- The shift lever is in the D or range 4 or higher of S has been selected.
- Range 4 or higher has been selected by using the paddle shift. (vehicles with paddle shift switch)
- Vehicle speed is above approximately 40 km/h (25 mph).

### Accelerating after setting the vehicle speed

- The vehicle can be accelerated normally. After acceleration, the set speed resumes.
- Even without canceling the cruise control, the set speed can be increased by first accelerating the vehicle to the desired speed and then pushing the lever down to set the new speed.

■ **Automatic cruise control cancelation**

Cruise control will stop maintaining the vehicle speed in any of the following situations:

- Actual vehicle speed falls more than approximately 16 km/h (10 mph) below the preset vehicle speed.

  At this time, the memorized set speed is not retained.
- Actual vehicle speed is below approximately 40 km/h (25 mph).
- VSC is activated.
- VSC+ is activated (if equipped).

■ **If a warning message is shown on the multi-information display**

Press the "ON-OFF" button once to deactivate the system, and then press the button again to reactivate the system.
If the cruise control speed cannot be set or if the cruise control cancels immediately after being activated, there may be a malfunction in the cruise control system. Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.



**⚠ CAUTION**

■ **To avoid operating the cruise control by mistake**

Switch the cruise control off using the "ON-OFF" button when not in use.

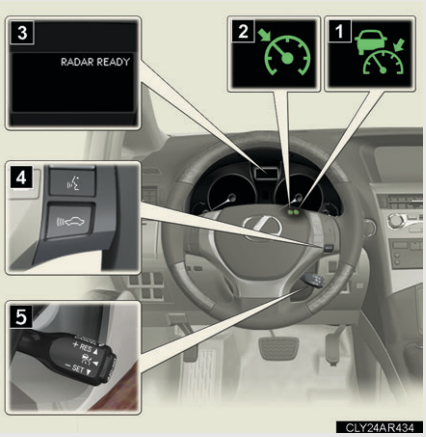
■ **Situations unsuitable for cruise control**

Do not use cruise control in any of the following situations.
Doing so may result in loss of control and could cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

- In heavy traffic
- On roads with sharp bends
- On winding roads
- On slippery roads, such as those covered with rain, ice or snow
- On steep hills
  Vehicle speed may exceed the set speed when driving down a steep hill.
- When your vehicle is towing a trailer or during emergency towing

# Dynamic radar cruise control*

**Dynamic radar cruise control supplements conventional cruise control with a vehicle-to-vehicle distance control. In vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode, the vehicle automatically accelerates or decelerates in order to maintain a set following distance from vehicles ahead.**




1 Indicator (vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode)
2 Indicator (constant speed control mode)
3 Display
4 Vehicle-to-vehicle distance button
5 Cruise control switch

## Setting the vehicle speed (vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode)







Press the "ON-OFF" button to activate the cruise control.

Radar cruise control indicator will come on.

Press the button again to deactivate the cruise control.

*: If equipped

STEP 2



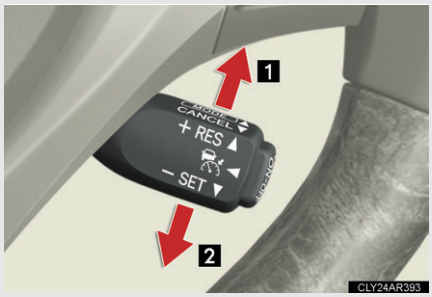

Accelerate or decelerate the vehicle to the desired speed, and push the lever down to set the speed.

"SET" will be displayed.

The vehicle speed at the moment the lever is released becomes the set speed.

## Adjusting the set speed

To change the set speed, operate the lever until the desired set speed is displayed.




1 Increases the speed

2 Decreases the speed

Fine adjustment: Momentarily move the lever in the desired direction.

Large adjustment: Hold the lever in the desired direction.

In the vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode, the set speed will be increased or decreased as follows:

2

When driving

▶ When the set speed is shown in "MPH"

By approximately 8 km/h (5 mph) each time the lever is operated

▶ When the set speed is shown in "km/h"

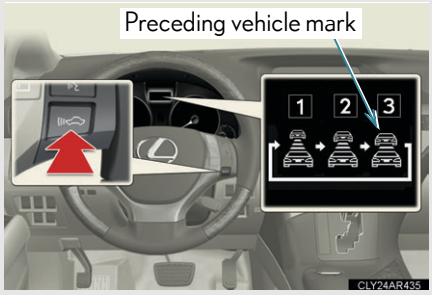
By approximately 5 km/h (3.1 mph) each time the lever is operated

In the constant speed control mode (→P. 234), the set speed will be increased or decreased as follows:

Fine adjustment: By approximately 1.6 km/h (1 mph) each time the lever is operated

Large adjustment: The set speed can be increased or decreased continually until the lever is released.

## Changing the vehicle-to-vehicle distance




Pressing the button changes the vehicle-to-vehicle distance as follows:

1 Long
2 Medium
3 Short

The vehicle-to-vehicle distance is set automatically to long mode when the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode.

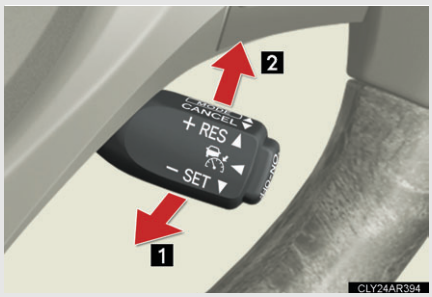
If a vehicle is running ahead of you, the preceding vehicle mark will also be displayed.

## Vehicle-to-vehicle distance settings

Select a distance from the table below. Note that the distances shown correspond to a vehicle speed of 80 km/h (50 mph). Vehicle-to-vehicle distance increases/decreases in accordance with vehicle speed.

| Distance options | Vehicle-to-vehicle distance |
|---|---|
| Long | Approximately 50 m (164 ft.) |
| Medium | Approximately 40 m (132 ft.) |
| Short | Approximately 25 m (82 ft.) |

## Canceling and resuming the speed control




1 Pulling the lever toward you cancels the cruise control.

The speed setting is also canceled when the brakes are applied.

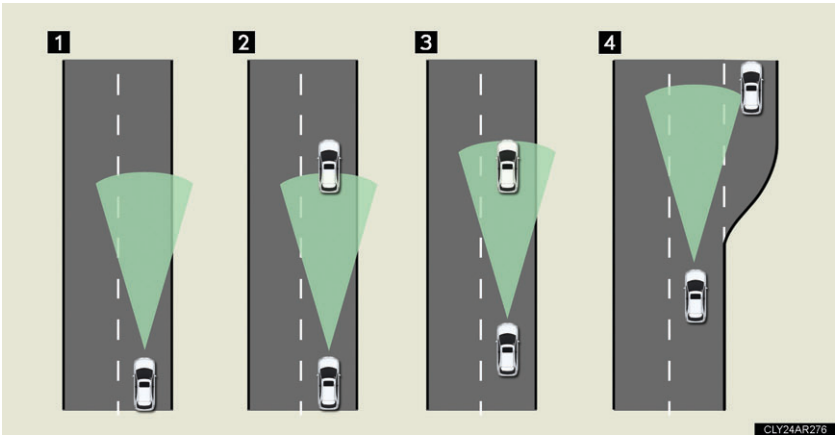
2 Pushing the lever up resumes the cruise control and returns vehicle speed to the set speed.

Resuming is available when the vehicle speed is more than approximately 40 km/h (25 mph).

## Driving in vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode

This mode employs a radar sensor to detect the presence of vehicles up to approximately 120 m (400 ft.) ahead, determines the current vehicle-to-vehicle following distance, and operates to maintain a suitable following distance from the vehicle ahead.

Note that vehicle-to-vehicle distance will close in when traveling on long downhill slopes.




1 Example of constant speed cruising
When there are no vehicles ahead

The vehicle travels at the speed set by the driver. The desired vehicle-to-vehicle distance can also be set by operating the vehicle-to-vehicle distance control.

2 Example of deceleration cruising
When the vehicle ahead is driving slower than the set speed

When a vehicle is detected running ahead of you, the system automatically decelerates your vehicle. When a greater reduction in vehicle speed is necessary, the system applies the brakes. A warning tone warns you when the system cannot decelerate sufficiently to prevent your vehicle from closing in on the vehicle ahead.

3 Example of follow-up cruising
When following a vehicle driving slower than the set speed

The system continues follow-up cruising while adjusting for changes in the speed of the vehicle ahead in order to maintain the vehicle-to-vehicle distance set by the driver.

4 Example of acceleration
When there are no longer any vehicles ahead driving slower than the set speed

The system accelerates until the set speed is reached. The system then returns to constant speed cruising.



## Approach warning

When your vehicle is too close to a vehicle ahead, and sufficient automatic deceleration via the cruise control is not possible, the display will flash and the buzzer will sound to alert the driver. An example of this would be if another driver cuts in front of you while you are following a vehicle. Apply the brakes to ensure an appropriate vehicle-to-vehicle distance.

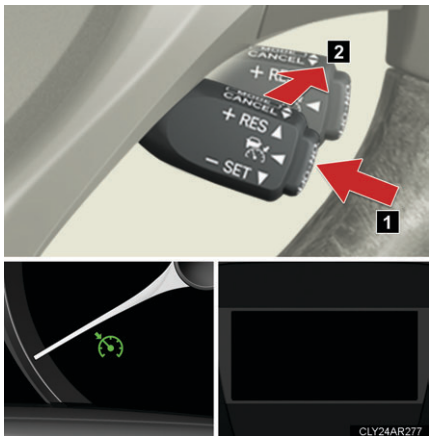
### Warnings may not occur when

In the following instances, there is a possibility that the warnings will not occur:

- When the speed of the vehicle ahead matches or exceeds your vehicle speed
- When the vehicle ahead is traveling at an extremely slow speed
- Immediately after the cruise control speed was set
- At the instant the accelerator is applied

## Selecting conventional constant speed control mode

Constant speed control mode differs from vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode. When constant speed control mode is selected, your vehicle will maintain a set speed regardless of whether or not there are other vehicles in the lane ahead.




1 Press the “ON-OFF” button to activate the cruise control.

Press the button again to deactivate the cruise control.

2 Switch to constant speed control mode.
(Push the lever forward and hold for approximately one second.)

Constant speed control mode indicator will come on.

When in constant speed control mode, to return to vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode, push the lever forward again and hold for approximately 1 second.

After the desired speed has been set, it is not possible to return to vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode.

If the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is turned off and then turned to IGNITION ON mode again, the vehicle will automatically return to vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode.

Adjusting the speed setting: →P. 235

Canceling and resuming the speed setting: →P. 237

■ **Dynamic radar cruise control can be set when**

- The shift lever is in the D or range 4 or higher of S has been selected.
- Range 4 or higher has been selected by using the paddle shift. (vehicles with paddle shift switch)
- Vehicle speed is above approximately 50 km/h (30 mph).

■ **Accelerating after setting the vehicle speed**

The vehicle can accelerate normally. After acceleration, the set speed resumes.

However, during vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode, the vehicle speed may decrease below the set speed in order to maintain the distance to the vehicle ahead.

■ **Automatic cancelation of vehicle-to-vehicle distance control**

Vehicle-to-vehicle distance control driving is automatically canceled in the following situations.

- Actual vehicle speed falls below approximately 40 km/h (25 mph).
- VSC is activated.
- VSC+ is activated (if equipped).
- The sensor cannot operate correctly because it is covered in some way.
- The windshield wipers are operating at high speed. (when the wiper switch is set to the AUTO mode or the high speed wiper operation position).
- When the snow mode is set.

If vehicle-to-vehicle distance control driving is automatically canceled for any other reason, there may be a malfunction in the system. Contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional, and have your Lexus inspected.

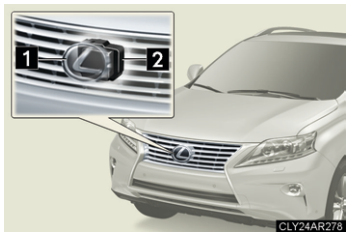
### Automatic cancelation of constant speed control

The cruise control will stop maintaining the vehicle speed in the following situations:

- Actual vehicle speed is more than approximately 16 km/h (10 mph) below the set vehicle speed.
  At this time, the memorized set speed is not retained.
- Actual vehicle speed falls below approximately 40 km/h (25 mph).
- VSC is activated.
- VSC+ is activated (if equipped).

### Radar sensor and grille cover

Always keep the sensor and grille cover clean to ensure that the vehicle-to-vehicle distance control operates properly. (Some obstructions, such as snow, ice and plastic objects, cannot be detected by the obstruction sensor.)
Dynamic radar cruise control is canceled if an obstruction is detected.




1 Grille cover
2 Radar sensor

### Warning lights, messages and buzzers for dynamic radar cruise control

Warning lights, messages and buzzers are used to indicate a system malfunction or to inform the driver of the need for caution while driving. (→P. 557)

## Certification

CE

The latest "DECLARATION of CONFORMITY" (DoC) is available at the following:
http://www.globaldenso.com/en/products/oem/index.html#2

| |
|---|
| Hereby, DENSO CORPORATION declares that this DNMWR004 is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC. |
| Hér með lýsir DENSO CORPORATION yfir því að DNMWR004 er í samræmi við grunnkröfur og aðrar kröfur, sem gerðar eru í tilskipun 1999/5/EC. |
| Con la presente DENSO CORPORATION dichiara che questo DNMWR004 è conforme ai requisiti essenziali ed alle altre disposizioni pertinenti stabilite dalla direttiva 1999/5/CE. |
| Käesolevaga kinnitab DENSO CORPORATION seadme DNMWR004 vastavust direktiivi 1999/5/EÜ põhinõuetele ja nimetatud direktiivist tulenevatele teistele asjakohastele sätetele. |
| Hierbij verklaart DENSO CORPORATION dat het toestel DNMWR004 in overeenstemming is met de essentiële eisen en de andere relevante bepalingen van richtlijn 1999/5/EG. |
| ΜΕ ΤΗΝ ΠΑΡΟΥΣΑ DENSO CORPORATION ΔΗΛΩΝΕΙ ΟΤΙ DNMWR004 ΣΥΜΜΟΡΦΩΝ ΕΤΑΙ ΠΡΟΣ ΤΙΣ ΟΥΣΙΩΔΕΙΣ ΑΠΑΙΤΗΣΕΙΣ ΚΑΙ ΤΙΣ ΛΟΙΠΕΣ ΣΧΕΤΙΚΕΣ ΔΙΑΤΑΞΕΙΣ ΤΗΣ ΟΔΗΓΙΑΣ 1999/5/ΕΚ. |
| Härmed intygar DENSO CORPORATION att denna DNMWR004 står I överensstämmelse med de väsentliga egenskapskrav och övriga relevanta bestämmelser som framgår av direktiv 1999/5/EG. |
| Por medio de la presente DENSO CORPORATION declara que el DNMWR004 cumple con los requisitos esenciales y cualesquiera otras disposiciones aplicables o exigibles de la Directiva 1999/5/CE. |
| DENSO CORPORATION týmto vyhlasuje, že DNMWR004 spĺňa základné požiadavky a všetky príslušné ustanovenia Smernice 1999/5/ES. |
| DENSO CORPORATION izjavlja, da je ta DNMWR004 v skladu z bistvenimi zahtevami in ostalimi relevantnimi določili direktive 1999/5/ES. |

| |
|---|
| DENSO CORPORATION tímto prohlašuje, že tento DNMWR004 je ve shodě se základními požadavky a dalšími příslušnými ustanoveními směrnice 1999/5/ES. |
| Undertegnede DENSO CORPORATION erklærer herved, at følgende udstyr DNMWR004 overholder de væsentlige krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF. |
| Hiermit erklärt DENSO CORPORATION, dass sich das Gerät DNMWR004 in Übereinstimmung mit den grundlegenden Anforderungen und den übrigen einschlägigen Bestimmungen der Richtlinie 1999/5/EG befindet. |
| DENSO CORPORATION erklærer herved at utstyret DNMWR004 er i samsvar med de grunnleggende krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF. |
| Alulírott, DENSO CORPORATION nyilatkozom, hogy a DNMWR004 megfelel a vonatkozó alapvetõ követelményeknek és az 1999/5/EC irányelv egyéb elõírásainak. |
| DENSO CORPORATION vakuuttaa täten että DNMWR004 tyyppinen laite on direktiivin 1999/5/EY oleellisten vaatimusten ja sitä koskevien direktiivin muiden ehtojen mukainen. |
| Par la présente DENSO CORPORATION déclare que l'appareil DNMWR004 est conforme aux exigences essentielles et aux autres dispositions pertinentes de la directive 1999/5/CE. |
| Niniejszym DENSO CORPORATION oświadcza, że DNMWR004 jest zgodny z zasadniczymi wymogami oraz pozostałymi stosownymi postanowieniami Dyrektywy 1999/5/EC. |
| DENSO CORPORATION declara que este DNMWR004 está conforme com os requisitos essenciais e outras disposições da Directiva 1999/5/CE. |
| Hawnhekk, DENSO CORPORATION, jiddikjara li dan DNMWR004 jikkonforma mal-ħtiġijiet essenzjali u ma provvedimenti oħrajn relevanti li hemm fid-Dirrettiva 1999/5/EC. |
| Ar šo, DENSO CORPORATION, deklarē, ka DNMWR004 atbilst Direktīvas 1999/5/EK būtiskajām prasībām un citiem ar to saistītajiem noteikumiem. |
| Šiuo DENSO CORPORATION deklaruoja, kad šis DNMWR004 atitinka esminius reikalavimus ir kitas 1999/5/EB Direktyvos nuostatas. |

## ⚠ CAUTION

**■ Before using dynamic radar cruise control**

Do not overly rely on vehicle-to-vehicle distance control.
Be aware of the set speed. If automatic deceleration/acceleration is not appropriate, adjust the vehicle speed, as well as the distance between your vehicle and vehicles ahead by applying the brakes etc.

**■ Cautions regarding the driving assist systems**

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

- Assisting the driver to measure following distance
  The dynamic radar cruise control is only intended to help the driver in determining the following distance between the driver's own vehicle and a designated vehicle traveling ahead. It is not a mechanism that allows careless or inattentive driving, and it is not a system that can assist the driver in low-visibility conditions. It is still necessary for driver to pay close attention to the vehicle's surroundings.
- Assisting the driver to judge proper following distance
  The dynamic radar cruise control determines whether the following distance between the driver's own vehicle and a designated vehicle traveling ahead is appropriate or not. It is not capable of making any other type of judgement. Therefore, it is absolutely necessary for the driver to remain vigilant and to determine whether or not there is a possibility of danger in any given situation.
- Assisting the driver to operate the vehicle
  The dynamic radar cruise control has no capability to prevent or avoid a collision with a vehicle traveling ahead. Therefore, if there is ever any danger, the driver must take immediate and direct control of the vehicle and act appropriately in order to ensure the safety of all involved.

**■ To avoid inadvertent dynamic radar cruise control activation**

Switch the cruise control off using the “ON-OFF” button when not in use.

## ⚠ CAUTION

**■ Situations unsuitable for dynamic radar cruise control**

Do not use dynamic radar cruise control in any of the following situations.
Doing so may result in inappropriate speed control and could cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

- In heavy traffic
- On roads with sharp bends
- On winding roads
- On slippery roads, such as those covered with rain, ice or snow
- On steep downhills, or where there are sudden changes between sharp up and down gradients
  Vehicle speed may exceed the set speed when driving down a steep hill.
- At entrances to expressways
- When weather conditions are bad enough that they may prevent the sensors from functioning correctly (fog, snow, sandstorm, heavy rain, etc.)
- When an approach warning buzzer is heard often
- When your vehicle is towing a trailer or during emergency towing

**■ When the sensor may not be correctly detecting the vehicle ahead**

Apply the brakes as necessary when any of the following types of vehicles are in front of you.
As the sensor may not be able to correctly detect these types of vehicles, the approach warning (→P. 239) will not be activated, and a fatal or serious accident may result.

- Vehicles that cut in suddenly
- Vehicles traveling at low speeds
- Vehicles that are not moving
- Vehicles with small rear ends (trailers with no load on board etc.)
- Motorcycles traveling in the same lane

## ⚠ CAUTION

**■ Conditions under which the vehicle-to-vehicle distance control may not function correctly**

Apply the brakes as necessary in the following conditions as the radar sensor may not be able to correctly detect vehicles ahead, and a fatal or serious accident may result:

- When water or snow thrown up by the surrounding vehicles hinders the functioning of the radar sensor
- When your vehicle is pointing upwards (caused by a heavy load in the luggage compartment etc.)
- When the road curves or when the lanes are narrow
- When steering wheel operation or your position in the lane is unstable
- When the vehicle ahead of you decelerates suddenly

**■ Handling the radar sensor**

Observe the following to ensure the cruise control system can function effectively.

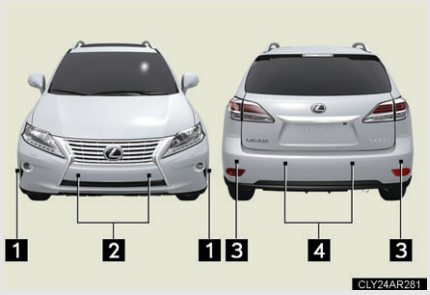
Otherwise, the system may not function correctly and could result in an accident.

- Keep the sensor and grille cover clean at all times.
  Clean the sensor and grille cover with a soft cloth so you do not mark or damage them.
- Do not subject the sensor or surrounding area to a strong impact.
  If the sensor moves even slightly off position, the system may malfunction. If the sensor or surrounding area is subject to a strong impact, always have the area inspected and adjusted by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
- Do not disassemble the sensor.
- Do not attach accessories or stickers to the sensor, grille cover or surrounding area.
- Do not modify or paint the sensor and grille cover.
- Do not replace them with non-genuine parts.

# Lexus parking assist-sensor*

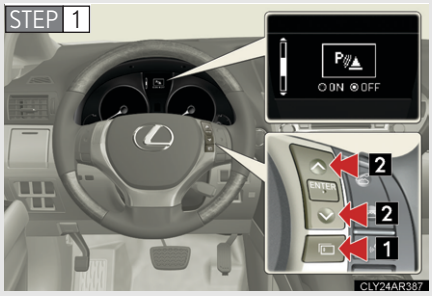
The distance to obstacles measured by the sensors is communicated via the multi-information display and a buzzer when parallel parking or maneuvering into a garage is conducted. Always check the surrounding area when using this system.

## Types of sensors




1 Front corner sensors
2 Front center sensors
3 Rear corner sensors
4 Rear center sensors

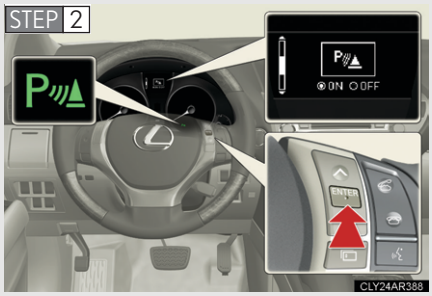
## Setting the Lexus parking assist-sensor mode




1 Press the menu switch.
The multi-information display will change modes to electronic features control mode.

2 Press the "∧" or "∨" switch until the Lexus parking assist-sensor mark appears in the multi-information display.

*: If equipped




Press the “ENTER” switch to change to “ON”.

The Lexus parking assist-sensor indicator will be displayed.

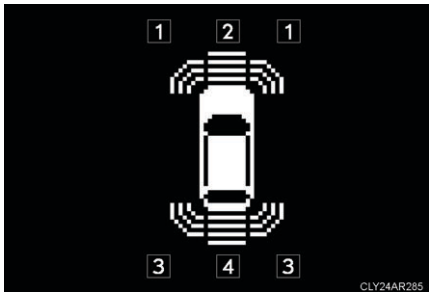
Each pressing of the switch turns the Lexus parking assist-sensor on and off.

When on, the buzzer sounds to inform the driver that the system is operational.

Press the menu switch to change to the normal display.

## Display

When the sensors detect an obstacle, a graphic is shown on the multi-information display depending on the position and distance to the obstacle.




1 Front corner sensor operation
2 Front center sensor operation
3 Rear corner sensor operation
4 Rear center sensor operation

## The distance display and buzzer

When a sensor detects an obstacle, the direction of and the approximate distance to the obstacle are displayed and the buzzer sounds.

The site of the obstacle will flash (detection level 4 only).

### Front corner sensors

| Detection level | Multi-information display | Approximate distance to obstacle | Buzzer |
|---|---|---|---|
| 2 |  | 50 to 37.5 cm (1.6 to 1.2 ft.) | Medium |
| 3 |  | 37.5 to 25 cm (1.2 to 0.8 ft.) | Fast |
| 4 |  | 25 cm (0.8 ft.) or less | Continuous |

## Front center sensors

| Detection level | Multi-information display | Approximate distance to obstacle | Buzzer |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1 |  | 100 to 50 cm (3.3 to 1.6 ft.) | Slow |
| 2 |  | 50 to 40 cm (1.6 to 1.3 ft.) | Medium |
| 3 |  | 40 to 30 cm (1.3 to 1.0 ft.) | Fast |
| 4 |  | 30 cm (1.0 ft.) or less | Continuous |

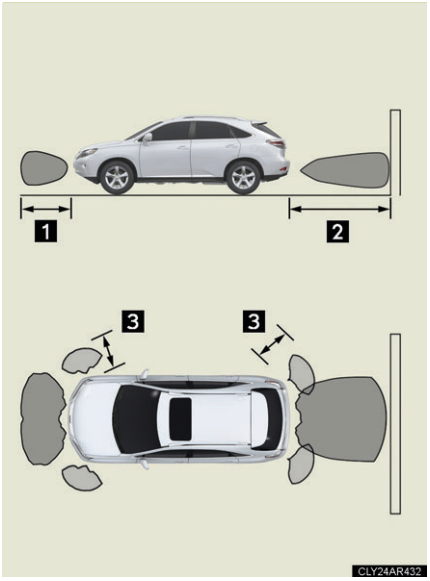
## Rear corner sensors

| Detection level | Multi-information display | Approximate distance to obstacle | Buzzer |
|---|---|---|---|
| 2 |  | 50 to 37.5 cm (1.6 to 1.2 ft.) | Medium |
| 3 |  | 37.5 to 25 cm (1.2 to 0.8 ft.) | Fast |
| 4 |  | 25 cm (0.8 ft.) or less | Continuous |

## Rear center sensors

| Detection level | Multi-information display | Approximate distance to obstacle | Buzzer |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1 |  | 150 to 60 cm (4.9 to 2.0 ft.) | Slow |
| 2 |  | 60 to 45 cm (2.0 to 1.5 ft.) | Medium |
| 3 |  | 45 to 35 cm (1.5 to 1.2 ft.) | Fast |
| 4 |  | 35 cm (1.2 ft.) or less | Continuous |

## Detection range of the sensors




1 Approximately 100 cm (3.3 ft.)
2 Approximately 150 cm (4.9 ft.)
3 Approximately 50 cm (1.6 ft.)

The diagram shows the detection range of the sensors. Note that the sensors cannot detect obstacles that are extremely close to the vehicle.

The range of the sensors may change depending on the shape of the object etc.

### The Lexus parking assist-sensor can be operated when

- Front corner sensors:
  - The “ENGINE START STOP” switch is in IGNITION ON mode.
  - The shift lever is in a position other than P.
  - The vehicle speed is less than about 10 km/h (6 mph).
- Front center sensors:
  - The “ENGINE START STOP” switch is in IGNITION ON mode.
  - The shift lever is in a position other than P or R.
  - The vehicle speed is less than about 10 km/h (6 mph).
- Rear corner and center sensors:
  - The “ENGINE START STOP” switch is in IGNITION ON mode.
  - The shift lever is in R.

■ **Sensor detection information**

● Certain vehicle conditions and the surrounding environment may affect the ability of a sensor to correctly detect an obstacle. Particular instances where this may occur are listed below.

- There is dirt, snow or ice on a sensor.
- A sensor is frozen.
- A sensor is covered in any way.
- The vehicle is leaning considerably to one side.
- On an extremely bumpy road, on an incline, on gravel, or on grass
- The vicinity of the vehicle is noisy due to vehicle horns, motorcycle engines, air brakes of large vehicles, or other loud noises producing ultrasonic waves.
- There is another vehicle equipped with parking assist sensors in the vicinity.
- A sensor is coated with a sheet of spray or heavy rain.
- The vehicle is equipped with a fender pole or radio antenna.
- Towing eyelets are installed.
- A bumper or sensor receives a strong impact.
- The vehicle is approaching a tall or right-angled curb.
- In harsh sunlight or intense cold weather.
- A non-genuine Lexus suspension (lowered suspension, etc.) is installed.

In addition to the examples above, there are instances in which, because of their shapes, signs and other objects may be judged by a sensor to be closer than they are.

● The shape of the obstacle may prevent a sensor from detecting it. Pay particular attention to the following obstacles:

- Wires, fences, ropes, etc.
- Cotton, snow and other materials that absorb sound waves
- Sharply-angled objects
- Low obstacles
- Tall obstacles with upper sections projecting outwards in the direction of your vehicle

■ **If a message is displayed**

→P. 552

■ **Customization**

Settings (e.g. buzzer volume) can be changed.
(Customizable features →P. 622)

## ⚠ CAUTION

**■ Caution when using the Lexus parking assist-sensor**

Observe the following precautions.
Failing to do so may result in the vehicle being unable to be driven safely and possibly cause an accident.

- Do not use the sensor at speeds in excess of 10 km/h (6 mph).
- Do not attach any accessories within the sensor range.

## ⚠ NOTICE

**■ Notes when washing the vehicle**

Do not apply intensive bursts of water or steam to the sensor area.
Doing so may result in the sensor malfunctioning.

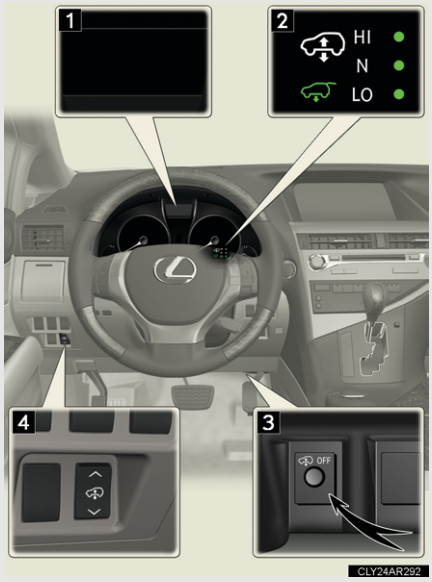
**■ Conditions possibly indicating system malfunctions**

If any of the following occurs, the system may be malfunctioning due to a sensor failure etc. Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

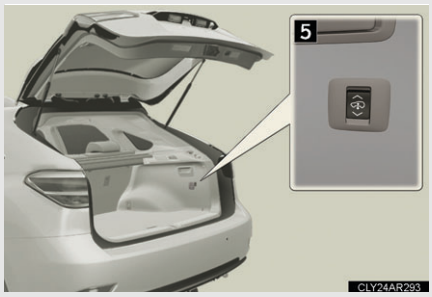
- The buzzer does not sound when the Lexus parking assist-sensor mode is set.
- The sensor operation display flashes and the buzzer sounds even when no obstacle is detected.
- An area of the sensors is hit or subjected to a strong impact.
- Either bumper is hit.
- The sensor operation display remains on even though no buzzer sounds.

# Electronically modulated air suspension*

**The electronically modulated air suspension allows the driver to control vehicle height in order to adjust driving conditions.**
**Select the desired height with the height selector switch.**




1 Multi-information display
2 Electronically modulated air suspension indicator
3 Height control off switch
4 Height selector switch (driver's side instrument panel)




5 Height selector switch (luggage compartment)

*: If equipped

## Selecting vehicle height

### Height modes

- "HI" mode: For driving on bumpy roads

  30 mm (1.2 in.) higher than the normal height

  "HI" mode cannot be selected when vehicle speed exceeds 30 km/h (19 mph).

- "N" mode: For ordinary driving

  Normal height

- "LO" mode: For sporty driving

  Vehicle front: 20 mm (0.8 in.) lower than the normal height

  Vehicle rear: 5 mm (0.2 in.) lower than the normal height

- Luggage mode: For easy entry/exit and easy luggage loading/unloading

  30 mm (1.2 in.) lower than the normal height

### Height selector switch

Press the height selector switch for approximately 1 second.

▶ Driver's side instrument panel



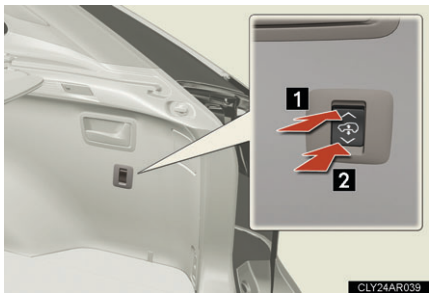

1 Higher

Pressing this switch while the vehicle is in luggage mode changes the vehicle height to that of "N" mode.

2 Lower

Pressing this switch while the vehicle is in "LO" mode changes the vehicle height to that of luggage mode.

▶ Luggage compartment




1 Higher

Pressing this switch while the vehicle is in luggage mode changes the vehicle height to that of "N" mode.

2 Lower

Pressing this switch while the vehicle is in "N" mode changes the vehicle height to that of luggage mode, not "LO" mode.

### Electronically modulated air suspension indicator




The indicator for the selected mode will come on.

The indicator will flash while the vehicle height is being changed to the height of the selected mode.

## Disabling the height control




Press the height control off switch while the vehicle is stopped. A message will appear on the multi-information display, and vehicle height will be fixed in the current mode.

When vehicle speed exceeds 30 km/h (19 mph), the electronically modulated air suspension is re-enabled automatically.

■ Operating conditions

After stopping the engine, the vehicle will remain lowered for a maximum of 60 seconds.

● Height selector switch (driver's side instrument panel)

- While the engine is running, any vehicle height mode can be selected.
- Luggage mode can only be selected when the shift lever is in P position.

● Height selector switch (luggage compartment)

- When the engine is running and the shift lever is in the P position, any vehicle height other than "LO" mode can be selected.
- When the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned off, the vehicle height can only be lowered (only the "∨" side of the switch can be operated).

This switch can only be operated when the back door is open.

● Height control off switch

When the vehicle is stopped with the "ENGINE START STOP" switch in IGNITION ON mode, vehicle height control can be disabled/re-enabled.

■ When changing vehicle height modes

Before operating the height selector switch to raise/lower the vehicle height, ensure that there are no objects in the surrounding area that could damage the vehicle.

■ When "N" mode is selected

During high speed driving, the vehicle height will automatically change to that of "LO" mode.

■ When "HI" mode is selected

The vehicle height will change to that of "N" mode when vehicle speed reaches 50 km/h (31 mph) or when vehicle speed has exceeded 30 km/h (19 mph) for approximately 10 seconds. Even if vehicle speed is reduced below 30 km/h (19 mph), the vehicle height will not automatically return to "HI" mode.

■ When "LO" mode is selected

The vehicle height will change to that of "N" mode when the engine is restarted.

■ **When luggage mode is selected**

If the vehicle begins to move while still in luggage mode, the vehicle will automatically change to "N" mode once speed exceeds 8 km/h (5 mph). Even if vehicle speed is reduced below 8 km/h (5 mph), the vehicle height will not automatically return to luggage mode.

■ **Operating sound of the air suspension**

When the vehicle height is lowered, such as when entering and loading the vehicle, or when the height selector switch is operated, the sound of the compressor operating or the mode changing may be heard. This does not indicate a malfunction.

■ **Automatic leveling function**

Regardless of the number of occupants and the luggage load, vehicle height in any mode is always adjusted to a fixed height by the automatic leveling function.

■ **Vehicle height mode change time**

- If the height control is operated continuously to lower the vehicle, the suspension air tank may become full, causing operation of the vehicle height lowering control to become slow.
- To protect the compressor, the system will only raise the vehicle for a total of 100 consecutive seconds. If it takes longer than this to reach the selected height, operation may be suspended shortly and then restart. However, it may not be possible to change the vehicle's height mode at this time.

■ **The electronically modulated air suspension will not operate when**

The vehicle height control may not be able to change modes when the vehicle runs over a high curb or other rugged surfaces where the suspension is stretched.

## ⚠ CAUTION

**■ The electronically modulated air suspension must be turned off when**

The electronically modulated air suspension must be turned off in the following situations as vehicle height may change due to the automatic leveling function, and, you may catch part of your body in the vehicle and cause an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

- Any of the wheels is stuck in a ditch.
- It is necessary to jack up the vehicle.
- It is necessary to tow the vehicle with part of it lifted.
- When connecting/disconnecting a trailer

For safety, stop the engine if necessary.

**■ "HI" mode**

- "HI" mode should only be used when driving on rough roads, for example when driving off-road. Because the vehicle's center of gravity will become higher when in the mode, the vehicle may become unstable when turning abruptly and cause an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.
- Do not select "HI" mode when loading cargo on the roof luggage carrier. Because the vehicle's center of gravity will become higher when in the mode, the vehicle may become unstable when turning abruptly, and cause an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

NOTICE

■ **Do not select "LO" mode when driving on bumpy roads.**

If the underbody of the vehicle touches a rugged road surface, the vehicle may be damaged. Also be careful when driving while the vehicle is automatically returning from luggage or "LO" mode to "N" mode.

■ **Automatic return to "N" mode**

In the following situations, the height of the vehicle will automatically increase. Be careful in any place where overhead space is limited.

- The vehicle begins to move while still in luggage mode.
- The engine is restarted while the vehicle is in "LO" mode.

■ **Vehicle height while parked**

If the temperature changes or the vehicle is parked for a long time, the vehicle height may decrease.

# Rear view monitor system (rear view mirror-attached type)*

**The rear view monitor system assists the driver by displaying an image of the view behind the vehicle while reversing. The image is displayed in reverse on the screen. This allows the image to appear in the same manner as that of the rear view mirror.**




The rear view image is displayed when the shift lever is in the R position.

The screen turns off in the following situations:

- The shift lever is shifted out of R.
- The screen remains on for approximately 5 minutes.



*: If equipped

■ **The rear view monitor system can be operated when**

The shift lever is in R, the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

■ **Changing display modes**

The rear view monitor display mode can be changed while the screen is on.

● To temporarily disable the rear view monitor system




Press the "AUTO" button.

The indicator will turn amber.

The system will be re-enabled once the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned off and then turned to IGNITION ON mode.

● To constantly disable the rear view monitor system

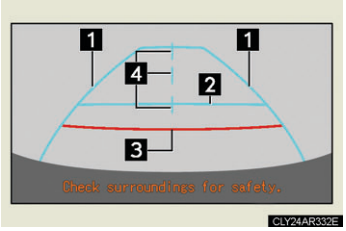



Press and hold the "AUTO" button for 12 to 15 seconds.
The screen will turn off and on after 6 seconds. Keep pressing the button until the screen turns back off. The indicator will flash amber.

The system will not automatically turn on again after the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is off and then turned to IGNITION ON mode.

● To re-enable the rear view monitor system
Press the "AUTO" button. The indicator will turn green.

## Rear view monitor guide lines




Guide lines are displayed on the screen.

Guidelines shown differ from those shown on the actual screen.

1 Vehicle width extension guide lines (blue)

These lines indicate the estimated vehicle width extension.

2 Distance guide line (blue)

This line indicates a position on the ground about 1 m (3 ft.) behind on the ground of the rear bumper of your vehicle.

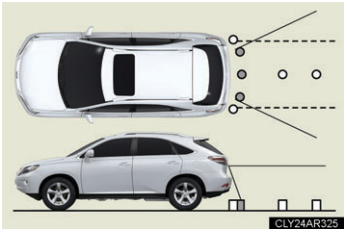
3 Distance guide line (red)

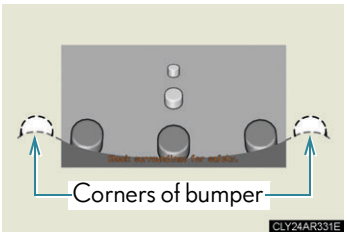
This line indicates a position on the ground about 0.5 m (1.5ft.) behind on the ground of the rear bumper of your vehicle.

4 Vehicle center guide lines (blue)

These lines indicate the estimated vehicle center on the ground.

### Displayed area

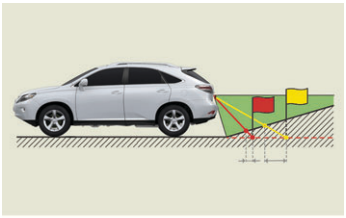


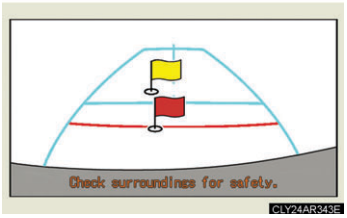




The area detected by the camera is limited. Object which are close to either corner of the bumper or under the bumper cannot be seen on the screen.
The area displayed on the screen may vary according to vehicle orientation or road conditions.

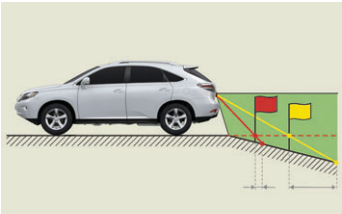
The camera uses a special lens.
The distance of the image that appears on the screen differs from the actual distance.

### Driving precautions

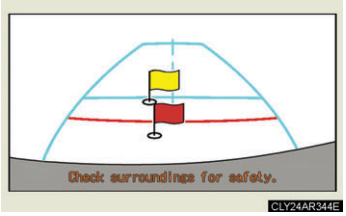


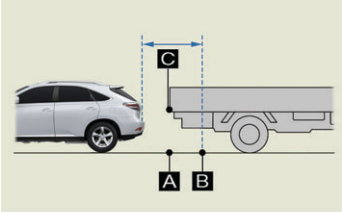



When the grade behind the vehicle slopes up sharply, objects appear to be farther away than they actually are.



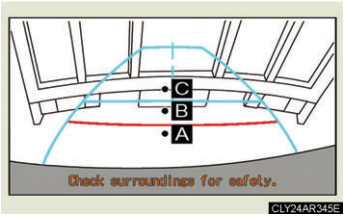
When the grade behind the vehicle slopes down sharply, objects appear to be closer than they actually are.



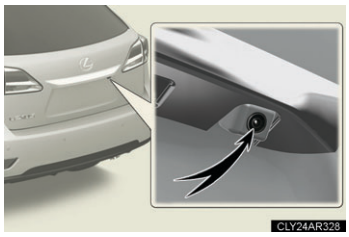

The distance that appears on the screen between three-dimensional objects (such as vehicles) and flat surfaces (such as the road) and the actual distance differ as follows.

In reality, C = A < B (C and A are equally far away; B is farther than C and A). However, on the screen, the situation appears to be A < B < C.




On the screen, it appears that a truck is parking about 0.5 m (1.5 ft.) away. However, in reality if you back up to point A, you will hit the track.

## Rear view monitor system camera




The rear view monitor system camera is located on the back door as shown in the illustration.

In the following cases, it may become difficult to see the images on the screen, even when the system is functioning correctly.

- The vehicle is in a dark area, such as at night.
- The temperature near the lens is extremely high or low.
- Water droplets are on the camera lens or humidity is high, such as when it rains.
- Foreign matter, such as snow or mud, adheres to the camera lens.
- The sun or headlights are shining directly into the camera lens.
- A bright object such as a white wall is reflected in the mirror surface over the monitor.
- The camera has scratches or dirt on it.

## Smear effect




If a bright light, such as sunlight reflected off the vehicle body, is picked up by the camera, a smear effect* characteristic to the camera may occur.

*: Smear effect — A phenomenon that occurs when a bright light is picked up by the camera; when transmitted by the camera, the light source appears to have a vertical streak above and below it.

### Flicker effect

When the camera is used under fluorescent light, sodium lights, or mercury lights etc., the lights and the illuminated areas may appear to flicker.

**CAUTION**

**When using the rear view monitor system, observe the following precautions to avoid an accident that could result in death or serious injuries:**

- Never depend solely on the monitor system when reversing.
- Always check visually and with the mirrors to confirm your intended path is clear.
- Use your own eyes to confirm the vehicle's surroundings, as the displayed image may become faint or dark, and moving images will be distorted, or not entirely visible when the outside temperature is low. When backing up, be sure to check behind and all around the vehicle visually and with the mirrors before proceeding.
- Always check the vehicle surrounding area, because the guide lines are ancillary lines.
- The guide lines are ancillary lines and do not change even if the steering wheel is turned.
- Depicted distances between objects and flat surfaces differ from actual distances.
- Do not use the system if the back door is open.

NOTICE

■ Conditions which may affect the rear view monitor system

- If the back of the vehicle has been hit, the camera's position and mounting angle may have changed. Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
- Rapid temperature changes, such as when hot water is poured on the vehicle in cold weather, may cause the system to function abnormally.
- If the camera lens is dirty, it cannot transmit a clear image. Rinse with water and wipe with a soft cloth. If extremely dirty, wash with a mild cleanser and rinse.
- The displayed image may be darker and moving images may be slightly distorted when the system is cold.

■ Camera precautions

- As the camera has a water proof construction, do not detach, disassemble or modify it. This may cause incorrect operation.
- Do not subject the camera to a strong impact.
- If the camera lens becomes dirty, it cannot transmit a clear image. If water droplets, snow, or mud adhere to the lens, rinse with water and wipe with a soft cloth. If the lens is extremely dirty, wash it with a mild cleanser and rinse. Do not rub hard.
- Do not allow organic solvent, car wax, window cleaner or glass coat to adhere to the camera. If this happens, wipe it off as soon as possible.
- Do not strongly rub the camera lens. If the camera lens is scratched, it cannot transmit a clear image.
- When washing the vehicle, do not apply intensive bursts of water to the camera or camera area. Doing so may result in the camera malfunctioning.
- When replacing tires, please consult any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional. If you replace the tires, the area displayed on the screen may change.

# Driving assist systems

**To help enhance driving safety and performance, the following systems operate automatically in response to various driving situations. Be aware, however, that these systems are supplementary and should not be relied upon too heavily when operating the vehicle.**

## ABS (Anti-lock Brake System)

Helps to prevent wheel lock when the brakes are applied suddenly, or if the brakes are applied while driving on a slippery road surface

## Brake assist

Generates an increased level of braking force after the brake pedal is depressed, when the system detects a panic stop situation

## VSC (Vehicle Stability Control)

Helps the driver to control skidding when swerving suddenly or turning on slippery road surfaces

## TRC (Traction Control)

Helps to maintain drive power and prevent any of the drive wheels from spinning when starting the vehicle or accelerating on slippery roads

## Hill-start assist control

→P. 278

## EPS (Electric Power Steering)

Employs an electric motor to reduce the amount of effort needed to turn the steering wheel

## Active Torque Control 4WD system (AWD models)

Automatically switches from front-wheel drive to AWD (All-Wheel Drive) according to driving conditions, helping to ensure reliable handling and stability. Examples of conditions where the system will switch to AWD are when cornering, going uphill, starting off or accelerating, and when the road surface is slippery due to snow or rain etc.

## VSC+ (Vehicle Stability Control +) (if equipped)

Provides cooperative control of the ABS, TRC, VSC and EPS.
Helps to maintain directional stability when swerving on slippery road surfaces by controlling steering performance

### VDIM (Vehicle Dynamics Integrated Management) (if equipped)

Provides integrated control of the ABS, brake assist, TRC, VSC, hill-start assist control and EPS systems
Helps to maintain vehicle stability when swerving on slippery road surfaces by controlling the brakes and engine output

### PCS (Pre-Crash Safety system) (if equipped)

→P. 280

### Emergency brake signal

In order to reduce the risk of a rear-end collision, when the brakes are applied suddenly the stop lights will automatically flash to alert the vehicle behind

## When the VSC/TRC systems are operating




If the vehicle is in danger of slipping or if any of the drive wheels spins, the slip indicator flashes to indicate that the VSC/TRC systems are operating.

## Disabling the TRC/VSC systems

If the vehicle gets stuck in fresh snow or mud, the TRC/VSC systems may reduce power from the engine to the wheels. You may need to turn the system off to enable you to rock the vehicle in order to free it.

### Turning off the TRC system only

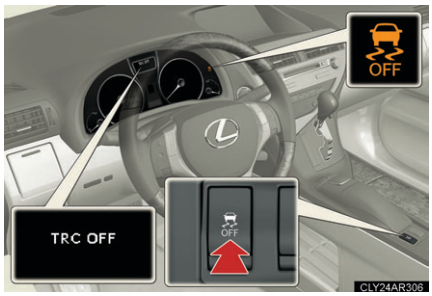



To turn the TRC system off, quickly press and release the switch.

A message will be shown on the multi-information display.

Press the switch again to turn the system back on.

### Turning off both TRC and VSC systems




To turn the TRC and VSC systems off, press and hold the switch for 3 seconds or more while the vehicle is stopped.

A message will be shown on the multi- information display and VSC off indicator light will come on.

Press the switch again to turn the systems back on.

■ **When the message is displayed on the multi-information display showing that TRC has been disabled even if the VSC off switch has not been pressed**

TRC and hill-start assist control cannot be operated. Contact your any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

■ **Sounds and vibrations caused by the ABS, VSC, TRC and brake assist**

- A sound may be heard from the engine compartment when the engine is started or just after the vehicle begins to move. This sound does not indicate that a malfunction has occurred in any of these systems.
- Any of the following conditions may occur when the above systems are operating. None of these indicates that a malfunction has occurred.
  - Vibrations may be felt through the vehicle body and steering.
  - A motor sound may be heard after the vehicle comes to a stop.
  - The brake pedal may pulsate slightly after the ABS is activated.
  - The brake pedal may move down slightly after the ABS is activated.

■ **EPS operation sound**

When the steering wheel is operated, a motor sound (whirring sound) may be heard. This does not indicate a malfunction.

■ **Reactivation of the TRC/VSC systems**

Turning off the engine after turning off the TRC/VSC systems will automatically reactivate them.

■ **Reactivation of the TRC system linked to vehicle speed**

When only the TRC system is turned off, the TRC system will turn on when vehicle speed increases. However, when both TRC and VSC systems are turned off, the systems will not turn on even when vehicle speed increases.

■ **Reduced effectiveness of the EPS system**

The effectiveness of the EPS system is reduced to prevent the system from overheating when there is frequent steering input over an extended period of time. The steering wheel may feel heavy as a result. Should this occur, refrain from excessive steering input or stop the vehicle and turn the engine off. The EPS system should return to normal within 10 minutes.

■ Operating conditions of emergency brake signal

When the following two conditions are met, the emergency brake signal will operate:

- Actual vehicle speed is over 55 km/h (34 mph).
- The brake pedal is depressed in a manner that cause the system to judge from the vehicle deceleration that this is a sudden braking operation.

■ Automatic system cancellation of emergency brake signal

The emergency brake signal will turn off in any of the following situations:

- The emergency flashers are turned on.
- The brake pedal is released.
- The system judges from the vehicle deceleration that this is not a sudden braking operation.



## ⚠ CAUTION

■ The ABS does not operate effectively when

- The limits of tire gripping performance have been exceeded (such as excessively worn tires on a snow covered road).
- The vehicle hydroplanes while driving at high speed on a wet or slick road.

■ Stopping distance when the ABS is operating may exceed that of normal conditions

The ABS is not designed to shorten the vehicle's stopping distance. Always maintain a safe distance from the vehicle in front of you, especially in the following situations:

- When driving on dirt, gravel or snow-covered roads
- When driving with tire chains
- When driving over bumps in the road
- When driving over roads with potholes or roads with uneven surfaces

■ TRC may not operate effectively when

Directional control and power may not be achievable while driving on slippery road surfaces, even if the TRC system is operating.
Drive the vehicle carefully in conditions where stability and power may be lost.

## ⚠ CAUTION

**■ When the VSC is activated**

The slip indicator light flashes. Always drive carefully. Reckless driving may cause an accident, resulting in death or serious injury. Exercise particular care when the indicator light flashes.

**■ When the TRC/VSC systems are turned off**

Be especially careful and drive at a speed appropriate to the road conditions. As these are the systems to help ensure vehicle stability and driving force, do not turn the TRC/VSC systems off unless necessary.

**■ Replacing tires**

Make sure that all tires are of the same size, brand, tread pattern and total load capacity. In addition, make sure that the tires are inflated to the recommended tire inflation pressure level.

The ABS and VSC systems will not function correctly if different tires are installed on the vehicle.

Contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional, for further information when replacing tires or wheels.

**■ Handling of tires and suspension**

Using tires with any kind of problem or modifying the suspension will affect the driving assist systems, and may cause a system malfunction.

# All-wheel drive lock switch (AWD models)

**All-wheel drive lock mode can be used when a large amount of drive power needs to be applied to all the wheels, such as when the vehicle gets stuck in mud and you need to free it.**




Press the switch.

The torque of the engine is distributed to the rear wheels to the maximum extent possible in accordance with driving conditions.

Pressing the switch again cancels all-wheel drive lock mode and returns the active torque control 4WD system to normal mode. (→P. 271)

## ■ All-wheel drive lock mode

- All-wheel drive lock mode is canceled when the brakes are applied to ensure the ABS and VSC systems operate effectively.
- All-wheel drive lock mode is canceled when the vehicle speed exceeds 40 km/h (25 mph).

# Hill-start assist control

**Hill-start assist control helps to prevent the vehicle from rolling backwards when starting on an incline or slippery slope.**




To engage hill-start assist control, further depress the brake pedal when the vehicle is stopped completely.

A buzzer will sound once to indicate the system is activated. The slip indicator will also start flashing.

## ■ Hill-start assist control can be operated when

- The shift lever is in a position other than P.
- The parking brake is not applied.
- The accelerator pedal is not depressed.

## ■ Hill-start assist control

- While hill-start assist control is operating, the brakes remain automatically applied after the driver releases the brake pedal. The stop lights and the high mounted stoplight turn on.
- Hill-start assist control operates for about 2 seconds after the brake pedal is released.
- If the slip indicator does not flash and the buzzer does not sound when the brake pedal is further depressed, slightly reduce the pressure on the brake pedal (do not allow the vehicle to roll backward) and then firmly depress it again. If the system still does not operate, check if the operating conditions explained above have been met.

### Hill-start assist control buzzer

- When hill-start assist control is activated, the buzzer will sound once.
- In the following situations, hill-start assist control will be canceled and the buzzer will sound twice.
  - No attempt is made to drive the vehicle within approximately 2 seconds of releasing the brake pedal.
  - The shift lever is moved to P.
  - The parking brake is applied.
  - The brake pedal is depressed again.
  - The brake pedal has been depressed for more than approximately 3 minutes.
- If a buzzer other than the hill-start assist control buzzer is sounding, the hill-start assist control buzzer may not sound when the system is activated or canceled.

### If the slip indicator comes on

It may indicate a malfunction in the system. Contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

**CAUTION**

### Hill-start assist control

- Do not overly rely on hill-start assist control. Hill-start assist control may not operate effectively on extremely steep inclines or roads covered in ice.
- Unlike the parking brake, hill-start assist control is not intended to hold the vehicle stationary for an extended period of time. Do not attempt to use hill-start assist control to hold the vehicle on an incline for an extended period of time, as doing so may lead to an accident.

# Pre-Crash Safety system*

**When the radar sensor detects the possibility of a frontal collision, the pre-crash safety system such as the brakes and seat belts are automatically engaged to lessen impact as well as vehicle damage.**

## Pre-crash seat belts (front seat belts only)

If the pre-crash sensor detects that a collision is unavoidable, the pre-crash safety system will retract the seat belt before the collision occurs. The same will happen if the driver makes an emergency braking or loses control of the vehicle. (→P. 90)

However, the system will not operate in the event of skidding when the VSC system is disabled.

## Pre-crash brake assist

When there is a high possibility of a frontal collision, the system applies greater braking force in relation to how strongly the brake pedal is depressed. The system may not warn the driver using a warning light, warning display and buzzer when the system detects and judges braking operations.

## Pre-crash braking

When there is a high possibility of a frontal collision, the system warns the driver using a warning light, warning display and buzzer. If the system determines that a collision is unavoidable, the brakes are automatically applied to reduce the collision speed. Pre-crash braking can be disabled using the pre-crash braking off switch.

*: If equipped

## Disabling pre-crash braking

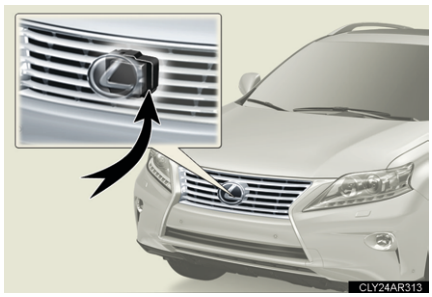



1 Pre-crash braking disabled

2 Pre-crash braking enabled

The pre-crash safety system warning light turn on when pre-crash braking is disabled.

## Radar sensor




The radar sensor detects vehicles or other obstacles on or near the road ahead and determines whether a collision is imminent based on the position, speed, and heading of the obstacles.

■ The pre-crash safety system is operational when

● Pre-crash seat belts (type A):

- Vehicle speed is greater than about 5 km/h (4 mph).
- The speed at which your vehicle is approaching the obstacle or the vehicle running ahead of you is greater than about 30 km/h (19 mph).
- The front occupants are wearing a seat belt.

● Pre-crash seat belts (type B):

- Vehicle speed is greater than about 30 km/h (19 mph).
- The system detects sudden braking or skidding.
- The front occupants are wearing a seat belt.

● Pre-crash brake assist:

- Vehicle speed is greater than about 30 km/h (19 mph).
- The speed at which your vehicle is approaching the obstacle or the vehicle running ahead of you is greater than about 30 km/h (19 mph).
- The brake pedal is depressed.

● Pre-crash braking:

- The pre-crash braking off switch is not pressed.
- Vehicle speed is greater than about 15 km/h (10 mph).
- The speed at which your vehicle is approaching the obstacle or the vehicle running ahead of you is greater than about 15 km/h (10 mph).

■ **Conditions that may trigger the system even if there is no possibility of collision**

- When there is an object by the roadside at the entrance to a curve
- When passing an oncoming vehicle on a curve
- When driving over a narrow iron bridge
- When there is a metal object on the road surface
- When driving on an uneven road surface
- When passing an oncoming vehicle on a left-turn
- When your vehicle rapidly closes on the vehicle in front
- When a grade separation/interchange, sign, billboard, or other structure appears to be directly in the vehicle's line of travel
- When climbing a steep hill causes an overhead billboard or other metallic structure to appear directly in the vehicle's line of travel
- When an extreme change in vehicle height occurs
- When the axis of the radar is out of adjustment
- When passing through certain toll gates
- When driving on a bridge
- When passing through a tunnel

When the system is activated in the situations described above, there is also a possibility that the seat belts will retract quickly and the brakes will be applied with a force greater than normal. When the seat belt is locked in the retracted position, stop the vehicle in a safe place, release the seat belt and refasten it.

■ **Obstacles not detected**

The sensor cannot detect plastic obstacles such as traffic cones. There may also be occasions when the sensor cannot detect pedestrians, animals, bicycles, motorcycles, trees, or snowdrifts.

■ **Situations in which the pre-crash safety system does not function properly**

The system may not function effectively in situations such as the following:

- On roads with sharp bends or uneven surfaces
- If a vehicle suddenly moves in front of your vehicle, such as at an intersection
- If a vehicle suddenly cuts in front of your vehicle, such as when overtaking
- In inclement weather such as heavy rain, fog, snow or sand storms
- When your vehicle is skidding with the VSC system off
- When an extreme change in vehicle height occurs
- When the axis of the radar is out of adjustment

■ **Automatic cancelation of the pre-crash safety system**

When a malfunction occurs due to sensor contamination, etc. that results in the sensors being unable to detect obstacles, the pre-crash safety system will be automatically disabled. In this case, the system will not activate even if there is a collision possibility.

■ **When there is a malfunction in the system, or if the system is temporarily unusable**

Warning lights and/or warning messages will turn on or flash. (→P. 543, 552)

## Certification

CE

The latest "DECLARATION of CONFORMITY" (DoC) is available at the following:
http://www.globaldenso.com/en/products/oem/index.html#2

| |
|---|
| Hereby, DENSO CORPORATION declares that this DNMWR004 is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC. |
| Hér með lýsir DENSO CORPORATION yfir því að DNMWR004 er í samræmi við grunnkröfur og aðrar kröfur, sem gerðar eru í tilskipun 1999/5/EC. |
| Con la presente DENSO CORPORATION dichiara che questo DNMWR004 è conforme ai requisiti essenziali ed alle altre disposizioni pertinenti stabilite dalla direttiva 1999/5/CE. |
| Käesolevaga kinnitab DENSO CORPORATION seadme DNMWR004 vastavust direktiivi 1999/5/EÜ põhinõuetele ja nimetatud direktiivist tulenevatele teistele asjakohastele sätetele. |
| Hierbij verklaart DENSO CORPORATION dat het toestel DNMWR004 in overeenstemming is met de essentiële eisen en de andere relevante bepalingen van richtlijn 1999/5/EG. |
| ΜΕ ΤΗΝ ΠΑΡΟΥΣΑ DENSO CORPORATION ΔΗΛΩΝΕΙ ΟΤΙ DNMWR004 ΣΥΜΜΟΡΦΩΝ ΕΤΑΙ ΠΡΟΣ ΤΙΣ ΟΥΣΙΩΔΕΙΣ ΑΠΑΙΤΗΣΕΙΣ ΚΑΙ ΤΙΣ ΛΟΙΠΕΣ ΣΧΕΤΙΚΕΣ ΔΙΑΤΑΞΕΙΣ ΤΗΣ ΟΔΗΓΙΑΣ 1999/5/ΕΚ. |
| Härmed intygar DENSO CORPORATION att denna DNMWR004 står I överensstämmelse med de väsentliga egenskapskrav och övriga relevanta bestämmelser som framgår av direktiv 1999/5/EG. |
| Por medio de la presente DENSO CORPORATION declara que el DNMWR004 cumple con los requisitos esenciales y cualesquiera otras disposiciones aplicables o exigibles de la Directiva 1999/5/CE. |
| DENSO CORPORATION týmto vyhlasuje, že DNMWR004 spĺňa základné požiadavky a všetky príslušné ustanovenia Smernice 1999/5/ES. |
| DENSO CORPORATION izjavlja, da je ta DNMWR004 v skladu z bistvenimi zahtevami in ostalimi relevantnimi določili direktive 1999/5/ES. |

| |
|---|
| DENSO CORPORATION tímto prohlašuje, že tento DNMWR004 je ve shodě se základními požadavky a dalšími příslušnými ustanoveními směrnice 1999/5/ES. |
| Undertegnede DENSO CORPORATION erklærer herved, at følgende udstyr DNMWR004 overholder de væsentlige krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF. |
| Hiermit erklärt DENSO CORPORATION, dass sich das Gerät DNMWR004 in Übereinstimmung mit den grundlegenden Anforderungen und den übrigen einschlägigen Bestimmungen der Richtlinie 1999/5/EG befindet. |
| DENSO CORPORATION erklærer herved at utstyret DNMWR004 er i samsvar med de grunnleggende krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF. |
| Alulírott, DENSO CORPORATION nyilatkozom, hogy a DNMWR004 megfelel a vonatkozó alapvetõ követelményeknek és az 1999/5/EC irányelv egyéb elõírásainak. |
| DENSO CORPORATION vakuuttaa täten että DNMWR004 tyyppinen laite on direktiivin 1999/5/EY oleellisten vaatimusten ja sitä koskevien direktiivin muiden ehtojen mukainen. |
| Par la présente DENSO CORPORATION déclare que l'appareil DNMWR004 est conforme aux exigences essentielles et aux autres dispositions pertinentes de la directive 1999/5/CE. |
| Niniejszym DENSO CORPORATION oświadcza, że DNMWR004 jest zgodny z zasadniczymi wymogami oraz pozostałymi stosownymi postanowieniami Dyrektywy 1999/5/EC. |
| DENSO CORPORATION declara que este DNMWR004 está conforme com os requisitos essenciais e outras disposições da Directiva 1999/5/CE. |
| Hawnhekk, DENSO CORPORATION, jiddikjara li dan DNMWR004 jikkonforma mal-ħtiġijiet essenzjali u ma provvedimenti oħrajn relevanti li hemm fid-Dirrettiva 1999/5/EC. |
| Ar šo, DENSO CORPORATION, deklarē, ka DNMWR004 atbilst Direktīvas 1999/5/EK būtiskajām prasībām un citiem ar to saistītajiem noteikumiem. |
| Šiuo DENSO CORPORATION deklaruoja, kad šis DNMWR004 atitinka esminius reikalavimus ir kitas 1999/5/EB Direktyvos nuostatas. |

## ⚠ CAUTION

**■ Limitations of the pre-crash safety system**

Do not overly rely on the pre-crash safety system. Always drive safely, taking care to observe your surroundings and checking for any obstacles or other road hazards.

Failure to do so may cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

**■ Cautions regarding the assist contents of the system**

By means of alarms and brake control, the pre-crash safety system is intended to assist the driver in avoiding collisions through the process of LOOK-JUDGE-ACT. There are limits to the degree of assistance the system can provide, so please keep in mind the following important points.

- Assisting the driver in watching the road
  The pre-crash safety system is only able to detect obstacles directly in front of the vehicle, and only within a limited range. It is not a mechanism that allows careless or inattentive driving, and it is not a system that can assist the driver in low-visibility conditions. It is still necessary for the driver to pay close attention to the vehicle's surroundings.
- Assisting the driver in making correct judgment
  When attempting to estimate the possibility of a collision, the only data available to the pre-crash safety system is that from obstacles it has detected directly in front of the vehicle. Therefore, it is absolutely necessary for the driver to remain vigilant and to determine whether or not there is a possibility of collision in any given situation.
- Assisting the driver in taking action
  The pre-crash safety system's braking assist feature is designed to help reduce the severity of a collision, and so only acts when the system has judged that a collision is unavoidable. This system by itself is not capable of automatically avoiding a collision or bringing the vehicle to a stop safely. For this reason, when encountering a dangerous situation the driver must take direct and immediate action in order to ensure the safety of all involved.

## ⚠ CAUTION

**■ When the sensor may not be correctly detecting the vehicle ahead**

Apply the brakes as necessary in any of the following situations:

- When water or snow thrown up by the surrounding vehicles hinders the functioning of the sensor
- When your vehicle is pointing upwards (caused by a heavy load in the luggage compartment etc.)
- Vehicles that cut in suddenly
- Vehicles with small rear ends (trailers with no load on board etc.)
- Motorcycles traveling in the same lane

**■ Handling the radar sensor**

Observe the following to ensure the pre-crash safety system can function effectively:

- Keep the sensor and front grille clean at all times.
  Clean the sensor and front grille with a soft cloth so you do not mark or damage them.
- Do not subject the sensor or surrounding area to a strong impact.
  If the sensor moves even slightly off position, the system may become inaccurate or malfunction. If the sensor or surrounding area is subject to a strong impact, always have the area inspected and adjusted by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
- Do not disassemble the sensor.
- Do not attach accessories or stickers to the sensor, grille or surrounding area.
- Do not modify or paint the sensor and grille cover.

# Utility vehicle precautions

This vehicle belongs to the utility vehicle class, which has higher ground clearance and narrower tread in relation to the height of its center of gravity to make it capable of performing in a wide variety of off-road applications.

## Off-road vehicle feature

- Specific design characteristics give it a higher center of gravity than ordinary passenger cars. This vehicle design feature causes this type of vehicle to be more likely to rollover. And, utility vehicles have a significantly higher rollover rate than other types of vehicles.
- An advantage of the higher ground clearance is a better view of the road allowing you to anticipate problems.
- It is not designed for cornering at the same speeds as ordinary passenger cars any more than low-slung sports cars designed to perform satisfactorily under off-road conditions. Therefore, sharp turns at excessive speeds may cause rollover.

## ⚠ CAUTION

**■ Off-road vehicle precautions**

Always observe the following precautions to minimize the risk of death or serious injury or damage to your vehicle:

- In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a seat belt. Therefore, the driver and all passengers should fasten their seat belts whenever the vehicle is moving.
- Avoid sharp turns or abrupt maneuvers, if at all possible.
  Failure to operate this vehicle correctly may result in loss of control or vehicle roll-over causing death or serious injury.
- Loading cargo on the roof luggage carrier will make the center of the vehicle gravity higher. Avoid high speeds, sudden starts, sharp turns, sudden braking or abrupt maneuvers, otherwise it may result in loss of control or vehicle rollover due to failure to operate this vehicle correctly.
- Always slow down in gusty crosswinds. Because of its profile and higher center of gravity, your vehicle is more sensitive to side winds than an ordinary passenger car. Slowing down will allow you to have better control.
- Do not drive horizontally across steep slopes. Driving straight up or straight down is preferred. Your vehicle (or any similar off-road vehicle) can tip over sideways much more easily than forward or backward.

## Off-road driving

When driving your vehicle off-road, please observe the following precautions to ensure your driving enjoyment and to help prevent the closure of areas to off-road vehicles.

- Drive your vehicle only in areas where off-road vehicles are permitted to travel.
- Respect private property. Get owner's permission before entering private property.
- Do not enter areas that are closed. Honor gates, barriers and signs that restrict travel.

● Stay on established roads. When conditions are wet, driving techniques should be changed or travel delayed to prevent damage to roads.

**⚠ CAUTION**

**■ Off-road driving precautions**

Always observe the following precautions to minimize the risk of death or serious injury or damage to your vehicle:

- Drive carefully when off the road. Do not take unnecessary risks by driving in dangerous places.
- Do not grip the steering wheel spokes when driving off-road. A bad bump could jerk the wheel and injure your hands. Keep both hands and especially your thumbs on the outside of the rim.
- Always check your brakes for effectiveness immediately after driving in sand, mud, water or snow.
- After driving through tall grass, mud, rock, sand, water, etc., check that there is no grass, bush, paper, rags, stone, sand, etc. adhering or trapped to the underbody. Clear off any such matter from the underbody. If the vehicle is used with these materials trapped or adhering to the underbody, a breakdown or fire could occur.
- When driving off-road or in rugged terrain, do not drive at excessive speeds, jump, make sharp turns, strike objects, etc. This may cause loss of control or vehicle rollover causing death or serious injury. You are also risking expensive damage to your vehicle's suspension and chassis.

NOTICE

■ To prevent water damage

Take all necessary safety measures to ensure that water damage to the engine or other components does not occur.

- Water entering the engine air intake will cause severe engine damage.
- Water entering the automatic transmission will cause deterioration in shift quality, locking up of your transmission accompanied by vibration, and ultimately damage.
- Water can wash the grease from wheel bearings, causing rusting and premature failure, and may also enter the differentials, transmission and transfer case (AWD models), reducing the gear oil's lubricating qualities.

■ When you drive through water

If driving through water, such as when crossing shallow streams, first check the depth of the water and the bottom of the stream for firmness. Drive slowly and avoid deep water.

■ Inspection after off-road driving

- Sand and mud that has accumulated around brake discs may affect braking efficiency and may damage brake system components.
- Always perform a maintenance inspection after each day of off-road driving that has taken you through rough terrain, sand, mud, or water.

# Cargo and luggage

**Take notice of the following information about storage precautions, cargo capacity and load:**

- Stow cargo and luggage in the luggage compartment whenever possible.
- Be sure all items are secured in place.
- Be careful to keep the vehicle level. Placing the weight as far forward as possible helps maintain vehicle balance.
- For better fuel economy, do not carry unnecessary weight.

## ⚠ CAUTION

**■ Things that must not be carried in the luggage compartment**

The following things may cause a fire if loaded in the luggage compartment:

- Receptacles containing gasoline
- Aerosol cans

## ⚠ CAUTION

**■ Storage precautions**

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Stow cargo and luggage in the luggage compartment whenever possible.
- Do not stack cargo and luggage in the luggage compartment higher than the seatbacks.
  Such items may be thrown about and possibly injure people in the vehicle in the event of sudden braking or in an accident.
- Do not place cargo or luggage in or on the following locations as the items may get under the brake or accelerator pedal and prevent the pedals from being depressed properly, block the driver's vision, or hit the driver or passengers, causing an accident:
  - At the feet of the driver
  - On the front passenger or rear seats (when stacking items)
  - On the luggage cover
  - On the instrument panel
  - On the dashboard
- Secure all items in the occupant compartment, as they may shift and injure someone in the event of sudden braking, sudden swerving or an accident.
- Never allow anyone to ride in the luggage compartment. It is not designed for passengers. They should ride in their seats with their seat belts properly fastened. Otherwise, they are much more likely to suffer death or serious bodily injury, in the event of sudden braking, sudden swerving or an accident.

**■ Load and distribution**

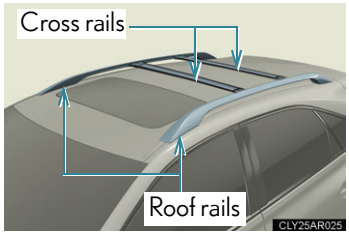
- Do not overload your vehicle.
- Do not apply loads unevenly.
  Improper loading may cause deterioration of steering or braking control which may cause death or serious injury.

## ⚠ CAUTION

**■ Roof luggage carrier precautions (if equipped)**

To use the roof rails as a roof luggage carrier, you must fit the roof rails with two or more genuine Lexus cross rails or their equivalent.

When you load cargo on the roof luggage carrier, observe the following:




- Place the cargo so that its weight is distributed evenly between the front and rear axles.
- If loading long or wide cargo, never exceed the vehicle's overall length or width. (→P. 606)
- Before driving, make sure the cargo is securely fastened on the roof luggage carrier.
- Loading cargo on the roof luggage carrier will make the center of gravity of the vehicle higher. Avoid high speeds, sudden starts, sharp turns, sudden braking or abrupt maneuvers, otherwise the result may be a loss of control or vehicle rollover due to failure to operate this vehicle correctly and result in death or serious injury.
- If driving for long distances, on rough roads, or at high speeds, stop the vehicle now and then during the trip to make sure the cargo remains in its place.
- Do not exceed 75 kg (165 lb.) cargo weight on the roof luggage carrier.

## ⚠ NOTICE

**■ When loading cargo**

Be careful not to scratch the surface of the moon roof.

# Winter driving tips

**Carry out the necessary preparations and inspections before driving the vehicle in winter. Always drive the vehicle in a manner appropriate to the prevailing weather conditions.**

## Pre-winter preparations

- Use fluids that are appropriate to the prevailing outside temperatures.
  - Engine oil
  - Engine coolant
  - Washer fluid
- Have a service technician inspect the condition of the battery.
- Have the vehicle fitted with four snow tires or purchase a set of tire chains for the front tires.

  Ensure that all tires are the same size and brand, and that chains match the size of the tires.

## Before driving the vehicle

Perform the following according to the driving conditions:

- Do not try to forcibly open a window or move a wiper that is frozen. Pour warm water over the frozen area to melt the ice. Wipe away the water immediately to prevent it from freezing.
- To ensure proper operation of the climate control system fan, remove any snow that has accumulated on the air inlet vents in front of the windshield.
- Check for and remove any excess ice or snow that may have accumulated on the exterior lights, vehicle's roof, chassis, around the tires or on the brakes.
- Remove any snow or mud from the bottom of your shoes before getting in the vehicle.

### When driving the vehicle

Accelerate the vehicle slowly, keep a safe distance between you and the vehicle ahead, and drive at a reduced speed suitable to road conditions.

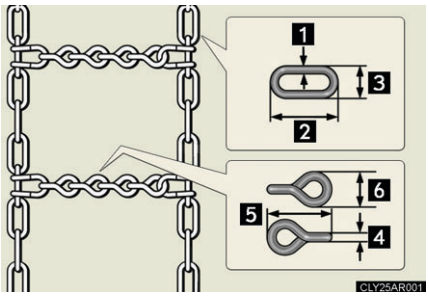
### When parking the vehicle

Park the vehicle and move the shift lever to P without setting the parking brake. The parking brake may freeze up, preventing it from being released. If necessary, block the wheels to prevent inadvertent sliding or creeping.



## Selecting tire chains

Use the correct tire chain size when mounting the tire chains.
Chain size is regulated for each tire size.




Side chain
- 1 3 mm (0.12 in.) in diameter
- 2 25 mm (0.98 in.) in length
- 3 11 mm (0.43 in.) in width

Cross chain
- 4 4 mm (0.16 in.) in diameter
- 5 25 mm (0.98 in.) in length
- 6 14 mm (0.55 in.) in width

## Regulations on the use of tire chains

Regulations regarding the use of tire chains vary depending on location and type of road. Always check local regulations before installing chains.

■ Tire chain installation

Observe the following precautions when installing and removing chains:

- Install and remove tire chains in a safe location.
- Install tire chains on the front tires only. Do not install tire chains on the rear tires.
- Install tire chains on front tires as tightly as possible. Retighten chains after driving 0.5—1.0 km (1/4—1/2 mile).
- Install tire chains following the instructions provided with the tire chains.

**⚠ CAUTION**

■ Driving with snow tires

Observe the following precautions to reduce the risk of accidents.
Failure to do so may result in a loss of vehicle control and cause death or serious injury.

- Use tires of the specified size.
- Maintain the recommended level of air pressure.
- Do not drive at speeds in excess of the speed limit or the speed limit specified for the snow tires being used.
- Use snow tires on all, not just some wheels.

■ Driving with tire chains

Observe the following precautions to reduce the risk of accidents.
Failure to do so may result in the vehicle being unable to be driven safely, and may cause death or serious injury.

- Do not drive in excess of the speed limit specified for the tire chains being used, or 50 km/h (30 mph), whichever is lower.
- Avoid driving on bumpy road surfaces or over potholes.
- Avoid sudden acceleration, abrupt steering, sudden braking and shifting operations that cause sudden engine braking.
- Slow down sufficiently before entering a curve to ensure that vehicle control is maintained.

NOTICE

■ **Repairing or replacing snow tires (vehicles with tire pressure warning system)**

Request repairs or replacement of snow tires from Lexus dealers or legitimate tire retailers.
This is because the removal and attachment of snow tires affects the operation of the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters.

■ **Fitting tire chains (vehicles with tire pressure warning system)**

The tire pressure warning valves and transmitters may not function correctly when tire chains are fitted.

# Trailer towing (RX350)

**The strain of towing a trailer will have a negative impact on the running performance, handling, fuel consumption and endurance of your vehicle. Use the vehicle features in the correct manner and operate the vehicle with care for safer driving and optimal comfort. Damage and/or malfunctions that occur as a result of towing performed for commercial purposes are not covered by the Lexus warranty.**

**Ask your local authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional for further details before towing, as there are additional legal requirements in some countries.**

## Weight limits

Check the allowable towing capacity, GVM (Gross Vehicle Mass), MPAC (Maximum Permissible Axle Capacity), and permissible drawbar load before towing. (→P. 606)

## Towing hitch/bracket

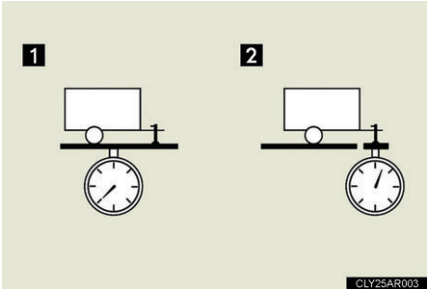
Lexus recommends the use of the Lexus hitch/bracket for your vehicle. Other products of a suitable nature and comparable quality may also be used.

## To prevent an accident

The handling of the vehicle will feel different when towing a trailer. Beware of the 3 most common causes of towing-related accidents: driver error, excessive speed, and overloading.

## Important points regarding trailer loads

### Total trailer weight and permissible drawbar load




**1** Total trailer weight

Weight of the trailer itself plus the trailer load should be within the maximum towing capacity. Exceeding this weight is dangerous. (→P. 606)

When towing a trailer, use a friction coupler or friction stabilizer (sway control device).

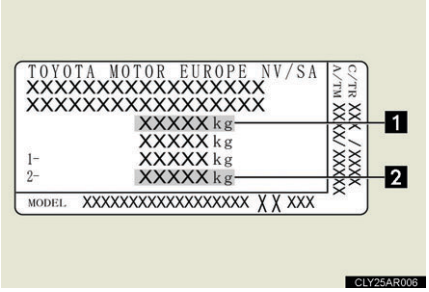
When the total trailer weight is greater than the vehicle weight, we recommended the use of a friction stabilizer (sway control device).

**2** Permissible drawbar load

Allocate the trailer load so that the drawbar load is greater than 25 kg (55.1 lb.) or 4% of the towing capacity. Do not let the drawbar load exceed the indicated weight. (→P. 606)

## Information tag (manufacturer's label)

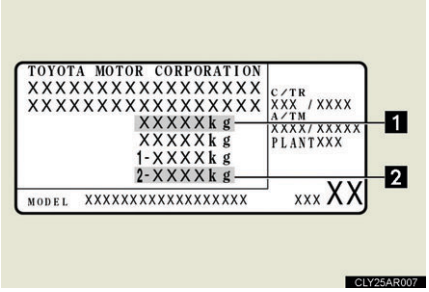
▶ Type A




1 Gross vehicle mass

2 Maximum permissible rear axle capacity

▶ Type B




1 Gross vehicle mass

2 Maximum permissible rear axle capacity

## Gross vehicle mass

The combined weight of the driver, passengers, luggage, towing hitch, total curb mass and drawbar load should not exceed the gross vehicle mass by more than 100 kg (220.5 lb.). Exceeding this weight is dangerous.

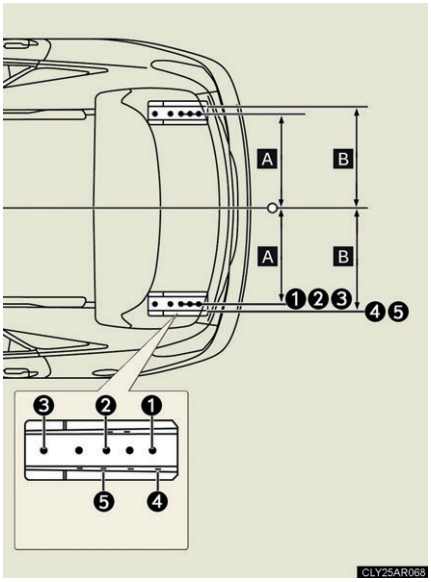
## Maximum permissible rear axle capacity

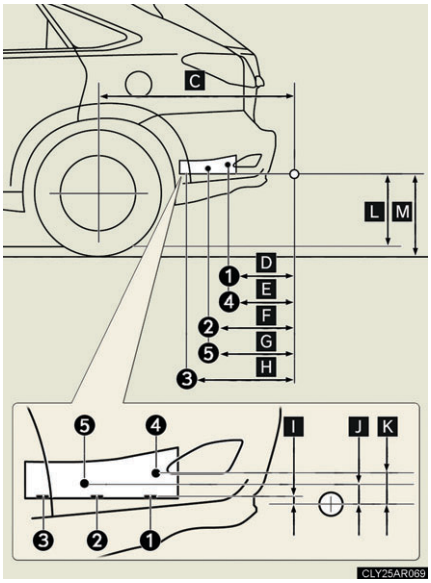
The weight borne by the rear axle should not exceed the maximum permissible axle capacity by 15% or more. Exceeding this weight is dangerous.

The values for towing capacity were derived from testing conducted at sea level. Take note that engine output and towing capacity will be reduced at high altitudes.

## Installation positions for the towing hitch/bracket and hitch ball

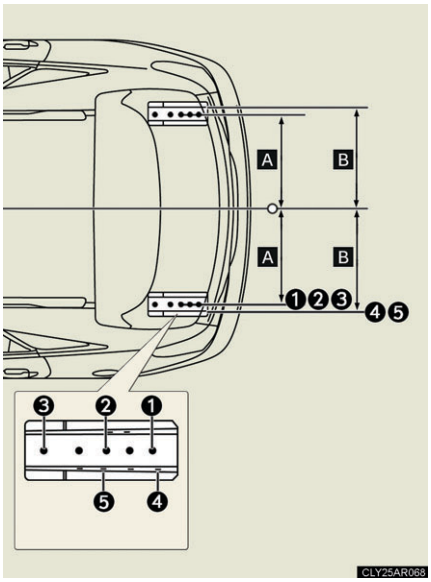
▶ Vehicles without electronically modulated air suspension

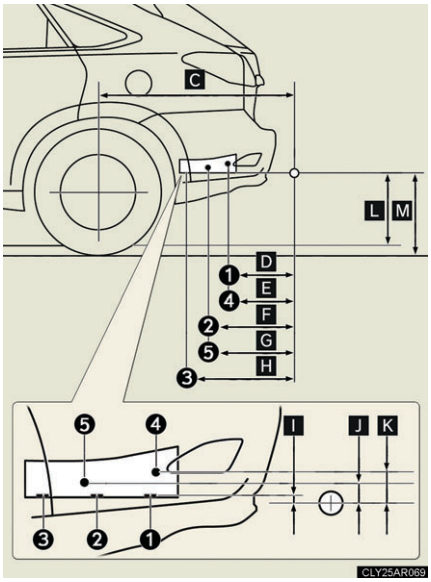



A 528 mm (20.8 in.)
B 567.4 mm (22.3 in.)
C 1107 mm (43.6 in.)
D 352 mm (13.9 in.)
E 363 mm (14.3 in.)
F 461 mm (18.1 in.)
G 467 mm (18.4 in.)
H 596 mm (23.5 in.)
I 25.5 mm (1.0 in.)
J 59 mm (2.3 in.)
K 81 mm (3.2 in.)
L 235/60R18 tires
359 mm (14.1 in.)
M 235/55R19 tires
357 mm (14.1 in.)

▶ Vehicles with electronically modulated air suspension




A 530 mm (20.9 in.)
B 567.4 mm (22.3 in.)
C 1107 mm (43.6 in.)
D 390 mm (15.4 in.)
E 400 mm (15.7 in.)
F 500 mm (19.7 in.)
G 505 mm (19.9 in.)
H 635 mm (25.0 in.)
I 5 mm (0.20 in.)
J 59 mm (2.3 in.)
K 81 mm (3.2 in.)
L 235/60R18 tires
"LO" mode:
416 mm (16.4 in.)
"N" mode:
415 mm (16.3 in.)
"HI" mode:
445 mm (17.5 in.)
M 235/55R19 tires
"LO" mode:
418 mm (16.5 in.)
"N" mode:
418 mm (16.5 in.)
"HI" mode:
448 mm (17.6 in.)

■ **When connecting and disconnecting a trailer (vehicles with electrically modulated air suspension)**

● Connecting

STEP 1 Set the electronically modulated air suspension to LO mode.

STEP 2 Press the height control off switch to turn off the electronically modulated air suspension.

STEP 3 Turn off the “ENGINE START STOP” switch

STEP 4 Connect the trailer.

STEP 5 Turn on the “ENGINE START STOP” switch

STEP 6 Press the height control off switch again to turn on the electronically modulated air suspension.

STEP 7 Set the electronically modulated air suspension to N mode.

● Disconnecting

STEP 1 Set the electronically modulated air suspension to LO mode.

STEP 2 Press the height control off switch to turn off the electronically modulated air suspension.

STEP 3 Turn off the “ENGINE START STOP” switch

STEP 4 Set the supporting leg of the trailer on the ground and raise the hitch by 100 mm (4 in.)

STEP 5 Turn on the “ENGINE START STOP” switch

STEP 6 Press the height control off switch again to turn on the electronically modulated air suspension.

STEP 7 Wait until vehicle height is stabilized.

Make sure the hitch is disconnected. If the hitch does not disconnect, raise the hitch higher and repeat steps 2 through 7.

■ Tire information

- Ensure that your vehicle's tires are properly inflated. Adjust the tire pressure to the recommended pressure. (→P. 617)
- Increase the air pressure of the trailer tires in accordance with the total trailer weight and according to the values recommended by the manufacturer of your trailer.

■ Trailer lights

- Check that the turn signal lights and stoplights are operating correctly every time you hitch up the trailer. Directly wiring up to your vehicle may damage the electrical system and stop the lights from functioning correctly.
- Please consult at any authorized dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional when installing trailer lights, as incorrect installation may cause damage to the vehicle's lights. Please take care to comply with your state's laws when installing trailer lights.

■ Break-in schedule

Lexus recommends that vehicles fitted with new power train components should not be used for towing trailers for the first 800 km (500 miles).

■ Safety checks before towing

- Check that the maximum load limit for the towing hitch/bracket hitch ball is not exceeded. Bear in mind that the coupling weight of the trailer will add to the load exerted on the vehicle. Also make sure that you will not be towing a load that exceeds the maximum permissible axle capacity.
- Ensure that the trailer load is secure.
- Supplementary outside rear view mirrors should be added to the vehicle if the traffic behind cannot be clearly seen with standard mirrors. Adjust the extending arms of these mirrors on both sides of the vehicle so that they always provide maximum visibility of the road behind.

■ Maintenance

- Maintenance must be performed more frequently when using the vehicle for towing due to the greater weight burden placed on the vehicle compared to normal driving.
- Retighten all bolts securing the hitching ball and bracket after towing for approximately 1000 km (600 miles).

## Guidance

Your vehicle will handle differently when towing a trailer. In order to avoid accident, death or serious injury, keep the following in mind when towing:

### Checking connections between trailer and lights

Stop the vehicle and check the operation of the connection between the trailer and lights after driving for a brief period as well as before starting off.

### Practicing driving with a coupled trailer

- Get the feel for turning, stopping and reversing with the trailer coupled by practicing in an area with no or light traffic.
- When reversing with a coupled trailer, hold the section of the steering wheel nearest to you and rotate clockwise to turn the trailer left or counterclockwise to turn it right. Always rotate a little at a time to prevent steering error. Have someone guide you when reversing to lessen the risk of an accident.

### Increasing vehicle-to-vehicle distance

At a speed of 10 km/h (6 mph), the distance to the vehicle running ahead of you should be equivalent to or greater than the combined length of your vehicle and trailer. Avoid sudden braking that may cause skidding. Otherwise, the vehicle may spin out of control. This is especially true when driving on wet or slippery road surfaces.

### Sudden acceleration/steering input/cornering

Executing sharp turns when towing may result in the trailer colliding with your vehicle. Decelerate well in advance when approaching turns and take them slowly and carefully to avoid sudden braking.

### Important points regarding turning

The wheels of the trailer will travel closer to the inside of the curve than the wheels of the vehicle. To make allowance for this, take the turns wider than you would normally do.

### Important points regarding stability

Vehicle movement resulting from uneven road surfaces and strong crosswinds will affect handling. The vehicle may also be rocked by passing buses or large trucks. Frequently check behind when moving alongside such vehicles. As soon as such vehicle movement occurs, immediately start to decelerate smoothly by slowly applying the brakes. Always steer the vehicle straight ahead while braking.

### Passing other vehicles

Consider the total combined length of your vehicle and trailer and ensure that the vehicle-to-vehicle distance is sufficient before executing lane changes.

### Transmission information

Refrain from driving in 6 range in S mode to maintain the effectiveness of the engine brake and the charge performance of electrical components.

### If the engine overheats

Towing a loaded trailer up a long, steep incline in temperatures exceeding 30°C (85°F) may result in the engine overheating. If the engine coolant temperature gauge indicates that the engine is overheating, turn the air conditioning off immediately, leave the road and stop the vehicle in a safe place. (→P. 598)

### When parking the vehicle

Always place wheel chocks under the wheels of both the vehicle and trailer. Firmly set the parking brake and shift the shift lever to P.

## ⚠ CAUTION

**■ When the gross vehicle mass limit or maximum permissible axle capacity is exceeded**

Do not exceed the established speed limit for towing a trailer in built-up areas or 100 km/h (62 mph), whichever is the lower.

**■ Vehicle speed while towing**

Observe the legal maximum speeds for trailer towing.

**■ Before descending hills or long declines**

Reduce speed and downshift. However, never downshift suddenly while descending steep or long downhill grades.

**■ Operation of the brake pedal**

Do not hold the brake pedal depressed often or for long periods of time.
Doing so may result in the brake overheating or reduce braking effects.

**■ To avoid accident or injury**

- For vehicles with electronically modulated air suspension, set the vehicle height to LO mode and turn off the electronically modulated air suspension to prevent the vehicle height from automatically changing.
- Do not use cruise control when you are towing.
- Do not tow the vehicle with the compact spare tire installed.

NOTICE

■ When the rear bumper strengthening material is aluminum

Ensure the steel bracket part does not come directly in contact with that area. When steel and aluminum come into contact, there is a reaction similar to corrosion, which will weaken the section concerned and may result in damage. Apply a rust inhibitor to parts that will come in contact when attaching a steel bracket.

# Trailer towing (RX270)

Lexus does not recommend towing a trailer with your vehicle. Lexus also does not recommend the installation of a tow hitch or the use of a tow hitch carrier for a wheelchair, scooter, bicycle, etc. Your vehicle is not designed for trailer towing or for the use of tow hitch mounted carriers.



**3-1. Using the air conditioning system and defogger**

Automatic air conditioning system ..... 314
Rear window defogger switch ..... 321
Windshield wiper de-icer ..... 322

**3-2. Using the audio system**

Audio system ..... 323
Using the radio ..... 326
Using the CD player ..... 330
Playing MP3 and WMA discs ..... 337
Operating an iPod ..... 344
Operating a USB memory ..... 353
Bluetooth® audio system ..... 361
Using the Bluetooth® audio system ..... 366
Operating a Bluetooth® enabled portable player ..... 369

RX350_270_EE_48D77E.book 313 ページ ２０１４年１月２４日 金曜日 午前１０時４分



Setting up a Bluetooth® enabled portable player ..... 372
Bluetooth® audio system setup ..... 376
Optimal use of the audio system ..... 377
Using the AUX port ..... 379
Using the steering wheel audio switches ..... 381
Hands-free system for mobile phones ..... 384
Using the hands-free system (for mobile phones) ..... 391
Making a phone call ..... 397
Setting a mobile phone ..... 401
Security and system setup ..... 405
Using the phone book ..... 411

**3-3. Using the interior lights**
Interior lights list ..... 417
• Interior lights ..... 418
• Personal lights ..... 418

**3-4. Using the storage features**
List of storage features ..... 420
• Glove box ..... 421
• Bottle holders/ door pockets ..... 422
• Cup holders ..... 423
• Console box ..... 426
• Coin holder ..... 427
• Auxiliary box ..... 428
• Under tray ..... 429

**3-5. Other interior features**
Sun visors ..... 430
Vanity mirror ..... 431
Clock ..... 432
Outside temperature display ..... 433
Multi-display light control ..... 434
Power outlets ..... 435
Heated steering wheel ..... 437
Seat heaters and ventilators ..... 439
Armrest ..... 441
Coat hooks ..... 442
Assist grips ..... 443
Floor mat ..... 444
Luggage compartment features ..... 446

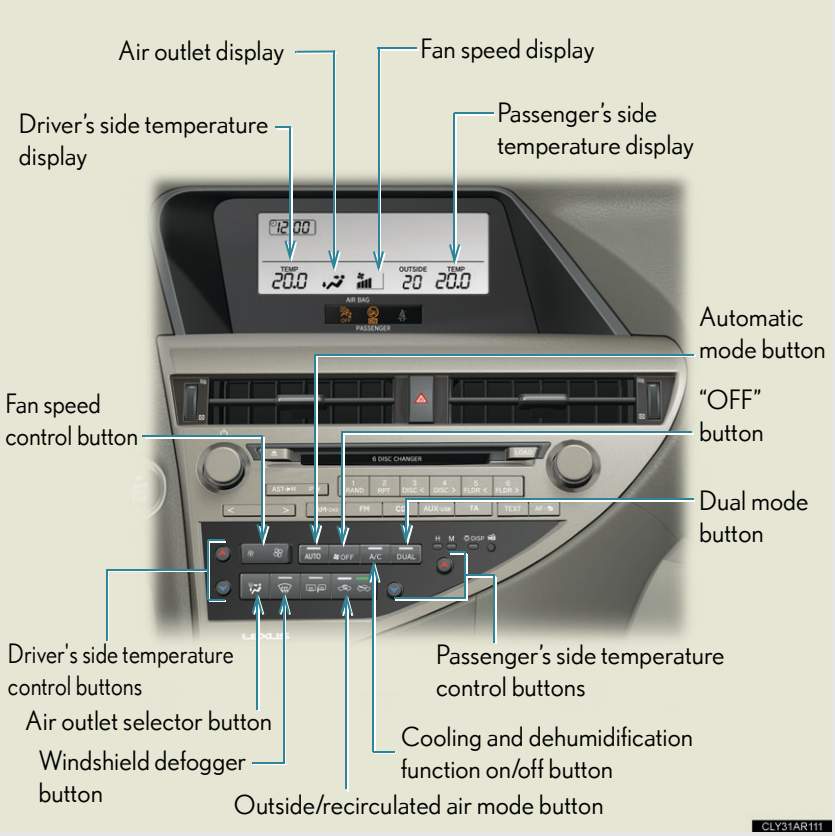
# Automatic air conditioning system

**Air outlets and fan speed are automatically adjusted according to the temperature setting.**

▶ Vehicles with a navigation system

Owners of models equipped with a navigation system should refer to the "Navigation System Owner's Manual".

▶ Vehicles without a navigation system



## Using the automatic air conditioning system

STEP 1 Press AUTO .

The air conditioning system begins to operate. Air outlets and fan speed are automatically adjusted according to the temperature setting.

STEP 2 Press ▲ on  to increase the temperature and ▼ to decrease the temperature.

When DUAL is pressed (the indicator on DUAL is on) or the passenger's side temperature control button is pressed, the temperature for the driver and passenger seats can be adjusted separately.

### Automatic mode indicator

If fan speed setting or air flow modes are operated, the automatic mode indicator goes off. However, automatic mode for functions other than that operated are maintained.

## Adjusting the settings manually

### Basic setting

STEP 1 To turn on the air conditioning system and adjust the fan speed, press ▼ on ▲ to increase the fan speed and ▼ to decrease the fan speed.

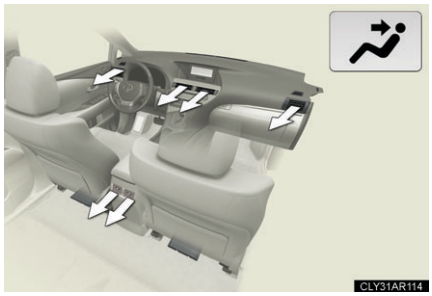
To turn the fan off, press OFF .

STEP 2 To adjust the temperature setting, press ▲ on  to increase the temperature and ▼ to decrease the temperature.

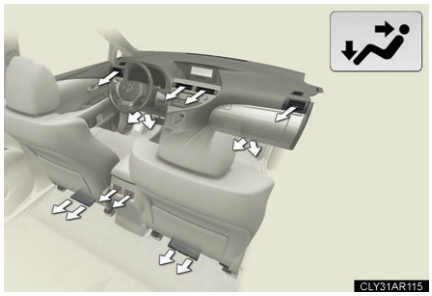
When DUAL is pressed (the indicator on DUAL is on) or the passenger's side temperature control button is pressed, the temperature for the driver and passenger seats can be adjusted separately.

STEP 3 To change the air outlets, press  .

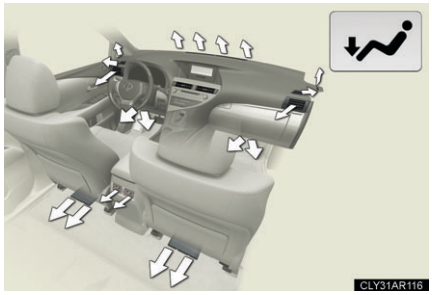
The air outlets used are switched each time the button is pressed. The air flow shown on the display indicates the following:



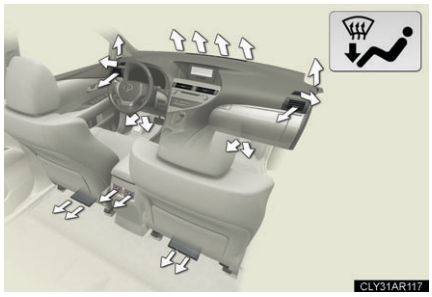

Air flows to the upper body.




Air flows to the upper body and feet.




Air flows to the feet.




Air flows to the feet and the windshield defogger operates.

### ■ Switching between outside air and recirculated air modes

Press  .

The mode switches between (recirculated air mode) and (outside air mode) modes each time the button is pressed.

## Defogging the windshield



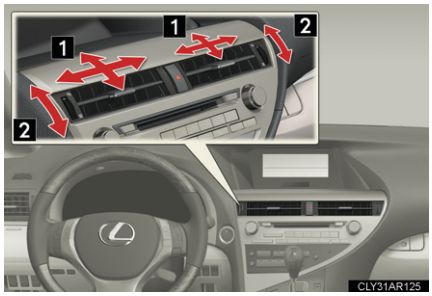

Defogging

The air conditioning system operates automatically.

Recirculated air mode will automatically switch to outside air mode.

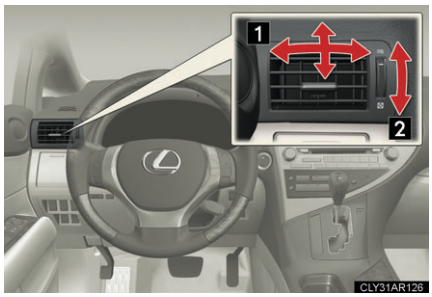
## Adjusting the position of and opening and closing the air outlets

▶ Front center outlets



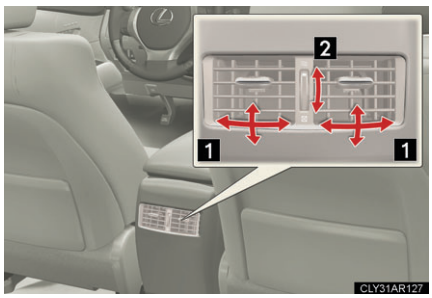

1 Direct air flow to the left or right, up or down.
2 Turn the knob to open or close the vent.

▶ Front side outlets




1 Direct air flow to the left or right, up or down.
2 Turn the knob to open or close the vent.

▶ Rear outlets




1 Direct air flow to the left or right, up or down.
2 Turn the knob to open or close the vent.

■ **Air conditioning system settings**

- When the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned on, the air conditioning system settings will be set to those that were in use the last time the "ENGINE START STOP" switch was turned off.
- Air conditioning system settings are memorized individually on each electronic key, so the settings reproduced will be specific to the key that is used.
- This feature is customizable at any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

■ **Using automatic mode**

Fan speed is adjusted automatically according to the temperature setting and ambient conditions. As a result, the following may occur:

Immediately after the button is pressed, the fan may stop for a while until warm or cool air is ready to flow.

■ **Using the system in recirculated air mode**

The windows will fog up more easily if recirculated air mode is used for an extended period.

■ **Switching between outside air and recirculated air modes**

Recirculated air mode or outside air mode may be automatically switched in accordance with the temperature setting and the inside temperature.

■ **Window defogger feature**

Recirculated air mode may automatically switch to outside air mode in situations where the windows need to be defogged.

■ **When outside air temperature is below 0°C (32°F)**

The cooling and dehumidification function may not operate even when 

is pressed.

■ **When the indicator light on** 

**goes off**

Press 

to turn on the cooling and dehumidification function again. There may be a problem in the air conditioning system if the indicator light goes off again shortly after the button is pressed. Have it inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

### Ventilation and air conditioning odors

- To let fresh air in, set the air conditioning system to the outside air mode.
- During use, various odors from inside and outside the vehicle may enter into and accumulate in the air conditioning system. This may then cause odor to be emitted from the vents.
- To reduce potential odors from occurring:
  - It is recommended that the air conditioning system be set to outside air mode prior to turning the vehicle off.
  - The start timing of the blower may be delayed for a short period of time immediately after the air conditioning system is started in automatic mode.

**CAUTION**

### To prevent the windshield from fogging up

Do not use  during cool air operation in extremely humid weather. The difference between the temperature of the outside air and that of the windshield can cause the outer surface of the windshield to fog up, blocking your vision.

**NOTICE**

### To prevent battery discharge

Do not leave the air conditioning system on longer than necessary when the engine is off.

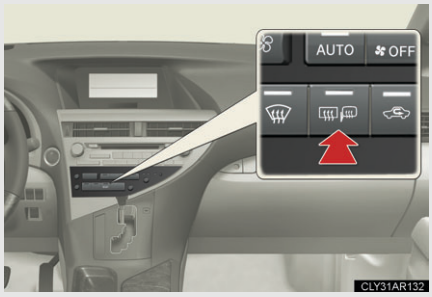
# Rear window defogger switch

**Defoggers are used to defog the rear window, and to remove raindrops, dew and frost from the outside rear view mirrors.**

▶ Vehicles with a navigation system

Owners of models equipped with a navigation system should refer to the "Navigation System Owner's Manual".

▶ Vehicles without a navigation system




Turns the rear window and outside rear view mirror defoggers on/off

The defoggers will automatically turn off after 15 to 60 minutes. The operation time changes according to the ambient temperature and vehicle speed.

■ **Operating conditions**

The "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

■ **The outside rear view mirror defoggers**

Turning the rear window defogger on will turn the outside rear view mirror defoggers on.

**⚠ CAUTION**

■ **When the outside rear view mirror defoggers are on**

Do not touch the outside surface of the rear view mirrors, as they can become very hot and burn you.

# Windshield wiper de-icer*

**This feature is used to prevent ice from building up on the windshield and wiper blades.**

▶ Vehicles with a navigation system

Owners of models equipped with a navigation system should refer to the "Navigation System Owner's Manual".

▶ Vehicles without a navigation system




Turns the windshield wiper de-icer on/off

The windshield wiper de-icer will automatically turn off after approximately 15 minutes.

### Operating conditions

The "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

### ⚠ CAUTION

**When the windshield wiper de-icer is on**

Do not touch the lower part of the windshield or the side of the front pillars, as the surfaces can become very hot and burn you.

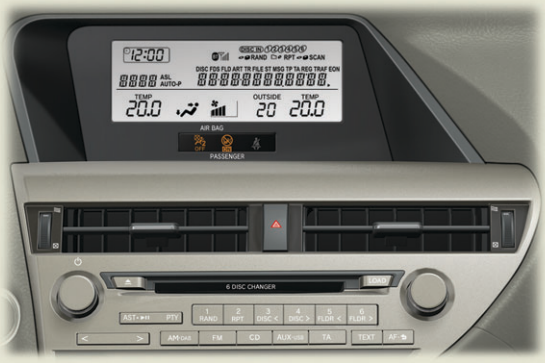
*: If equipped

▶ Vehicles with a navigation system

Owners of models equipped with a navigation system should refer to the “Navigation System Owner’s Manual”.

▶ Vehicles without a navigation system

CD player with a changer and AM/FM radio



| Title | Page |
|---|---|
| Using the radio | P. 326 |
| Using the CD player | P. 330 |
| Playing MP3 and WMA discs | P. 337 |
| Operating an iPod | P. 344 |
| Operating a USB memory | P. 353 |
| Bluetooth® audio system | P. 361 |
| Optimal use of the audio system | P. 377 |
| Using the AUX port | P. 379 |
| Using the steering wheel audio switches | P. 381 |
| Hands-free system for mobile phones | P. 384 |

■ **Using mobile phones**

Interference may be heard through the audio system's speakers if a mobile phone is being used inside or close to the vehicle while the audio system is operating.

## CAUTION

**Certification for the radio (for Italy)**

IL PRODUTTORE PIONEER CORPORATION 4-1, Meguro 1-Chome, Meguro-Ku, Tokyo, Japan DI QUESTO APPARECCHIO MODELLO 86120-48Q90 (radio-CD player) DICHIARA CHE ESSO E' CONFORME AL D.M.28.08.1995 No.548, OTTEMPERANDO ALLE PRESCRIZIONI DI CUI AL D.M.25.6.1985 (PARAGRAFO 3,ALL.A) ED AL D.M.27.8.1987 (PARAGRAFO 3,ALL.I).

**Certification for the disc player with a changer**

This product is a class 1 laser product classified under the Safety of laser products, IEC 60825-1:2007, and contains a class 1 M laser module. To ensure continued safety, do not remove any covers or attempt to gain access to the inside of the product. Refer all servicing to qualified personnel.

CLASS 1 LASER PRODUCT

CAUTION - CLASS 1 M INVISIBLE LASER RADIATION WHEN OPEN, DO NOT VIEW DIRECTLY WITH OPTICAL INSTRUMENTS.

## NOTICE

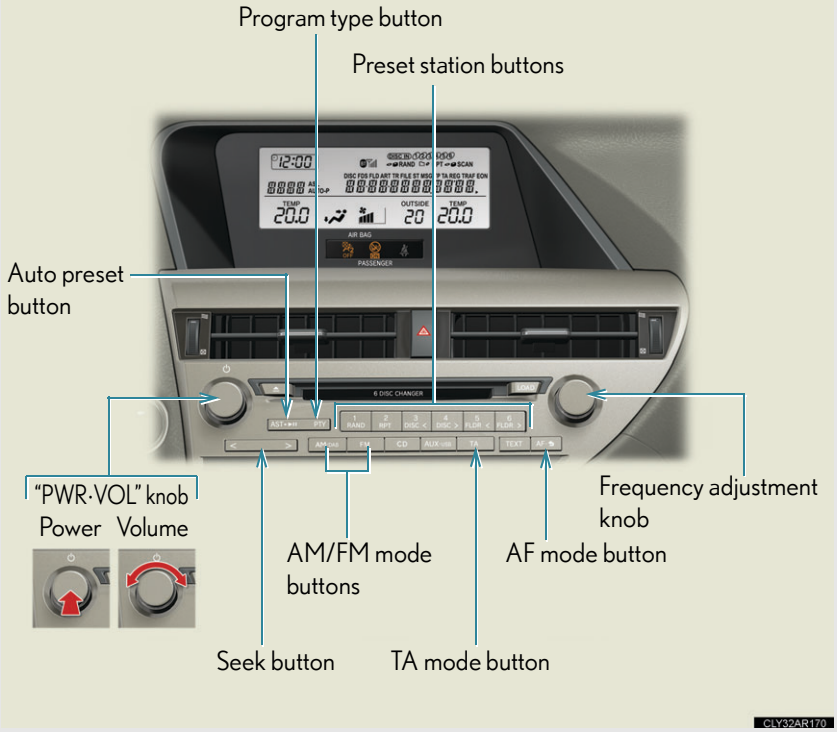
**To prevent battery discharge**

Do not leave the audio system on longer than necessary when the engine is off.

**To avoid damaging the audio system**

Take care not to spill drinks or other fluids over the audio system.

# Using the radio



## Setting station presets

### ■ Manual operation

STEP 1 Search for the desired stations by turning  or pressing ">" or "<" on < >.

STEP 2 Press and hold the button (from 1 RAND to 6 FLDR > ) the station is to be set to until you hear a beep.

### ■ Automatic operation

Press and hold AST until you hear a beep.

Up to 6 stations are set in order of reception quality. When the setting is complete, 2 beeps will be heard.

In FM1 or FM2 mode, the stations automatically set by the audio system will be set in the FM3 presets.

## RDS (Radio Data System)

This feature allows your radio to receive station and program information (classical, news, etc.) from radio stations which broadcast this information.

### ■ Listening to stations of the same network

Press AF .

"AF-ON", "REG-OFF" modes: A station among those of the same network with strong reception is selected.

"AF-ON", "REG-ON" modes: A station among those of the same network with strong reception and broadcasting the same program is selected.

Each time AF is pressed, the mode changes in the following order: "AF-ON", "REG-OFF"→"AF-ON", "REG-ON"→"AF-OFF", "REG-OFF"

### Selecting a program type

Press PTY .

Each time PTY is pressed, the program type changes in the following order: “NEWS”→“SPORTS”→“TALK”→“POP”→“CLASSICS”

### Traffic information

Press TA .

TP mode: The system automatically switches to traffic information when a broadcast with a traffic information signal is received.

The station returns to the previous one when the traffic information ends.

TA mode: Traffic information can be heard only when a signal is received. The system switches to mute mode when a signal is not received. In CD or MP3/WMA mode, the system automatically switches to traffic information when a signal is received.

The audio system returns to mute, CD or MP3/WMA mode when the traffic information ends.

Audio system mode changes as follows each time TA is pressed:

FM modes: “TP”→“TA”→off
Modes other than radio modes: “TA”→off

### Emergency broadcast reception mode

“ALARM” appears in the display in the event that an emergency broadcast is received, and the emergency broadcast is aired.

■ **EON (Enhanced Other Network) system (for traffic announcement function)**

If the RDS station (with EON data) you are listening to is not broadcasting a traffic information program and the audio system is in TA (Traffic announcement) mode, the radio will be switched automatically to a station broadcasting a traffic information program in the EON AF list when traffic information begins.

■ **When the battery is disconnected**

All preset stations are erased.

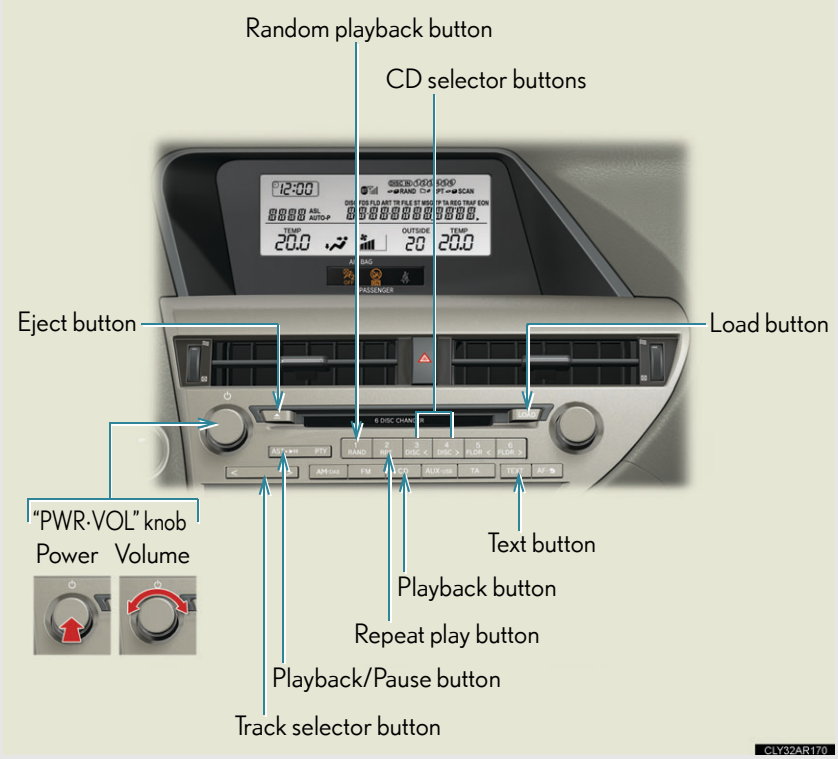
■ **Reception sensitivity**

- It is difficult to maintain perfect radio reception at all times due to the continually changing position of the antenna, differences in signal strength and surrounding objects, such as trains and transmitters.
- When AST is used, automatic station selection and automatic registering of the stations may not be possible.
- The radio antenna is mounted inside the rear spoiler and the rear window. To maintain clear radio reception, do not attach metallic window tinting or other metallic objects to the antenna wire mounted inside the rear window.

■ **Digital Audio Broadcast (DAB) radio**

The optional radio antenna and tuner are necessary for the use of Digital Audio Broadcast (DAB) radio.

# Using the CD player



## Loading a CD

### ■ Loading a CD

STEP 1 Press LOAD.

"WAIT" is shown on the display.

STEP 2 When the indicator on the slot turns from amber to green, insert a CD.

The display changes from "WAIT" to "LOAD".

### ■ Loading multiple CDs

STEP 1 Press and hold LOAD until you hear a beep.

"WAIT" is shown on the display.

STEP 2 When the indicator on the slot turns from amber to green, insert a CD.

The display changes from "WAIT" to "LOAD".

The indicator on the slot turns to amber when the CD is being inserted.

STEP 3 When the indicator on the slot turns from amber to green, insert the next CD.

Repeat the procedure for the remaining CDs.

To cancel the operation, press LOAD. If you do not insert a disc within 15 seconds, loading will be canceled automatically.

## Ejecting CDs

### ■ Ejecting a CD




To select the CD to be ejected, press 3 DISC < or 4 DISC > .

The selected disc number is shown on the display.

STEP 2 Press and remove the CD.

### ■ Ejecting all the CDs

Press and hold until you hear a beep, and then remove the CDs.

## Selecting, fast-forwarding and reversing tracks

### ■ Selecting a track

Press ">" to move up or "<" to move down using < > until the desired track number is displayed.

### ■ Fast-forwarding and reversing tracks

To fast-forward or reverse, press and hold ">" or "<" on < > until you hear a beep.

## Selecting a CD

To select the desired CD, press 3 DISC < or 4 DISC > .

## Playing and pausing tracks

To play or pause a track, press AST.

## Random playback

### ■ Current CD

Press 1 RAND .

Songs are played in random order.

To cancel, press 1 RAND again.

### ■ All CDs

Press and hold 1 RAND until you hear a beep.

Tracks on all loaded CDs are played in random order.

To cancel, press 1 RAND again.

## Repeat play

### ■ Repeating a track

Press 2 RPT .

To cancel, press 2 RPT again.

### ■ Repeating all of the tracks on a CD

Press and hold 2 RPT until you hear a beep.

To cancel, press 2 RPT again.

## Switching the display

Press TEXT.

Each time the button is pressed, the display changes in the following order:
Elapsed time → CD title → Track title

■ **CD player protection feature**

To protect the internal components, playback is automatically stopped when a problem is detected.

■ **Display**

Up to 12 characters can be displayed at a time.

If there are 13 or more characters, pressing and holding TEXT until you hear a beep enables to display the remaining characters.
A maximum of 24 characters can be displayed.

If TEXT is pressed until you hear a beep again or has not been operated for more than 6 seconds, the display will return to the first 12 characters.

Depending on the contents recorded, the characters may not be displayed properly or may not be displayed at all.

■ **When "ERROR" or "WAIT" is shown on the display**

"ERROR": This indicates a problem either in the CD or inside the player. The CD may be dirty, damaged, or inserted up-side down.

"WAIT": This indicates that operation is stopped due to a high temperature inside the player. Wait for a while and then press CD. If the CD still cannot be played back, contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

■ **Discs that can be used**

Discs with the marks shown below can be used.
Playback may not be possible depending on recording format or disc features, or due to scratches, dirt or deterioration.




CDs with copy-protection features may not be used.

■ **Lens cleaners**

Do not use lens cleaners. Doing so may damage the CD player.

■ **If discs are left inside the CD player or in the ejected position for extended periods of time**

The discs may be damaged and may not play properly.

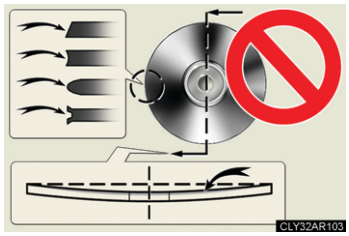
## NOTICE

### CDs and adapters that cannot be used

Do not use the following types of CDs.
Also, do not use 8 cm (3 in.) CD adapters, Dual Discs or printable discs.
Doing so may damage the CD player and/or the CD load/eject function.



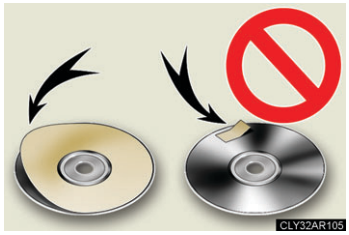

- CDs that have a diameter that is not 12 cm (4.7 in.)




- Low-quality and deformed CDs




- CDs with a transparent or translucent recording area




- CDs that have had tape, stickers or CD-R labels attached to them, or that have had the label peeled off

## NOTICE

### CD player precautions

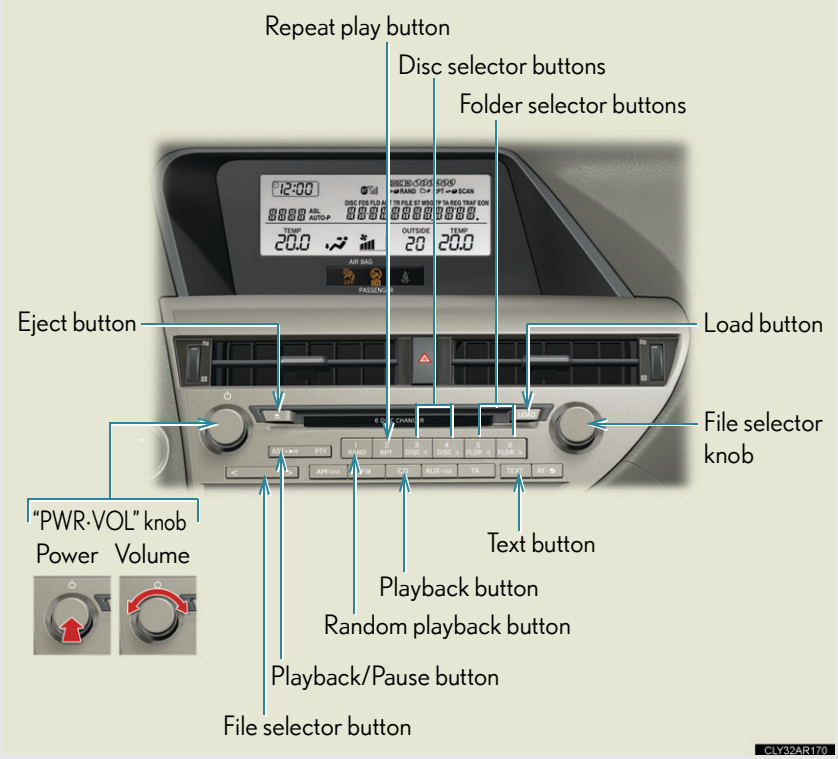
Failure to follow the precautions below may result in serious damage to the CDs or the player itself.

- Do not insert anything other than CDs into the CD slot.
- Do not apply oil to the CD player.
- Store CDs away from direct sunlight.
- Never try to disassemble any part of the CD player.




- Do not insert more than one CD at a time.

# Playing MP3 and WMA discs



## Loading and ejecting MP3 and WMA discs

→P. 331, 332

## Selecting MP3 and WMA discs

→P. 332

## Selecting a folder

### Selecting a folder one at a time

Press 6 FLDR > or 5 FLDR < to select the desired folder.

### Returning to the first folder

Press and hold 5 FLDR < until you hear a beep.

## Fast-forwarding and reversing files

To fast-forward or reverse, press and hold “>” or “<” on < > until you hear a beep.

## Selecting files

Turn  or press “>” or “<” on < > to select the desired file.

## Playing and pausing files

To play or pause a file, press AST.

## Random playback

### ■ Playing files from a folder in random order

Press 1 RAND .

To cancel, press 1 RAND again.

### ■ Playing all the files from a disc in random order

Press and hold 1 RAND until you hear a beep.

To cancel, press 1 RAND again.

## Repeat play

### ■ Repeating a file

Press 2 RPT .

To cancel, press 2 RPT again.

### ■ Repeating all the files in a folder

Press and hold 2 RPT until you hear a beep.

To cancel, press 2 RPT again.

## Switching the display

Press TEXT.

Each time the button is pressed, the display changes in the following order: Folder no./File no./Elapsed time → Folder name → File name → Album title (MP3 only) → Track title → Artist name

■ **CD player protection feature**

→P. 334

■ **Display**

→P. 334

■ **When "ERROR", "WAIT" or "NO MUSIC" is shown on the display**

"ERROR": This indicates a problem either in the CD or inside the player. The CD may be dirty, damaged, or inserted up-side down.

"WAIT": This indicates that operation is stopped due to a high temperature inside the player. Wait for a while and then press CD. If the CD still cannot be played back, contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

"NO MUSIC": This indicates that an MP3/WMA file is not included in the CD.

■ **Discs that can be used**

→P. 334

■ **Lens cleaners**

→P. 334

■ **If discs are left inside the CD player or in the ejected position for extended periods of time**

→P. 334

■ **MP3 and WMA files**

MP3 (MPEG Audio LAYER 3) is a standard audio compression format.

Files can be compressed to approximately 1/10 of their original size by using MP3 compression.

WMA (Windows Media Audio) is a Microsoft audio compression format.

This format compresses audio data to a size smaller than that of the MP3 format.

There is a limit to the MP3 and WMA file standards that can be used and to the media/formats on which the files are recorded.

● MP3 file compatibility

- Compatible standards
  MP3 (MPEG1 LAYER3, MPEG2 LSF LAYER3)
- Compatible sampling frequencies
  MPEG1 LAYER3: 32, 44.1, 48 (kHz)
  MPEG2 LSF LAYER3: 16, 22.05, 24 (kHz)
- Compatible bit rates (compatible with VBR)
  MPEG1 LAYER3: 64, 80, 96, 112, 128, 160, 192, 224, 256, 320 (kbps)
  MPEG2 LSF LAYER3: 64, 80, 96, 112, 128, 144, 160 (kbps)
- Compatible channel modes: stereo, joint stereo, dual channel and monaural

● WMA file compatibility

- Compatible standards
  WMA Ver. 7, 8, 9
- Compatible sampling frequencies
  32, 44.1, 48 (kHz)
- Compatible bit rates (only compatible with 2-channel playback)
  Ver. 7, 8: CBR 48, 64, 80, 96, 128, 160, 192 (kbps)
  Ver. 9: CBR 48, 64, 80, 96, 128, 160, 192, 256, 320 (kbps)

● Compatible media

Media that can be used for MP3 and WMA playback are CD-Rs and CD-RWs.

Playback in some instances may not be possible if the CD-R or CD-RW is not finalized. Playback may not be possible or the audio may jump if the disc is scratched or marked with fingerprints.

● Compatible disc formats

The following disc formats can be used:

• Disc formats: CD-ROM Mode 1 and Mode 2
CD-ROM XA Mode 2, Form 1 and Form 2

• File formats: ISO9660 Level 1, Level 2, (Romeo, Joliet)
MP3 and WMA files written in any format other than those listed above may not play correctly, and their file names and folder names may not be displayed correctly.

Items related to standards and limitations are as follows:

- Maximum directory hierarchy: 8 levels (including the root)
- Maximum length of folder names/file names: 32 characters
- Maximum number of folders: 192 (including the root)
- Maximum number of files per disc: 255

● File names

The only files that can be recognized as MP3/WMA and played are those with the extension .mp3 or .wma.

● Discs containing multi-session recordings

As the audio system is compatible with multi-sessions, it is possible to play discs that contain MP3 and WMA files. However, only the first session can be played.

● ID3 and WMA tags

ID3 tags can be added to MP3 files, making it possible to record the track title, artist name, etc.

The system is compatible with ID3 Ver. 1.0, 1.1, and Ver. 2.2, 2.3 ID3 tags. (The number of characters is based on ID3 Ver. 1.0 and 1.1.)

WMA tags can be added to WMA files, making it possible to record the track title and artist name in the same way as with ID3 tags.

● MP3 and WMA playback

When a disc containing MP3 or WMA files is inserted, all files on the disc are first checked. Once the file check is finished, the first MP3 or WMA file is played. To make the file check finish more quickly, we recommend you do not write in any files other than MP3 or WMA files or create any unnecessary folders.

Discs that contain a mixture of music data and MP3 or WMA format data cannot be played.

● Extensions

If the file extensions .mp3 and .wma are used for files other than MP3 and WMA files, they will be mistakenly recognized and played as MP3 and WMA files. This may result in large amounts of interference and damage to the speakers.

● Playback

- To play MP3 files with steady sound quality, we recommend a fixed bit rate of at least 128 kbps and a sampling frequency of 44.1 kHz.
- CD-R or CD-RW playback may not be possible in some instances, depending on the characteristics of the disc.
- There is a wide variety of freeware and other encoding software for MP3 and WMA files on the market, and depending on the status of the encoding and the file format, poor sound quality or noise at the start of playback may result. In some cases, playback may not be possible at all.
- When files other than MP3 or WMA files are recorded on a disc, it may take more time to recognize the disc and in some cases, playback may not be possible at all.
- Microsoft, Windows, and Windows Media are registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the U.S.A. and other countries.

⚠ NOTICE

■ **CDs and adapters that cannot be used**

→P. 335

■ **CD player precautions**

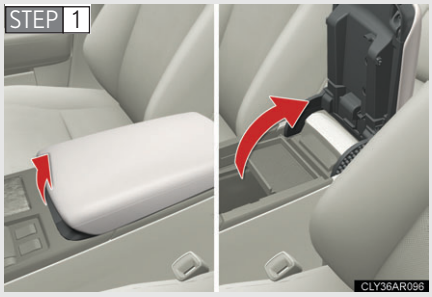
→P. 336

# Operating an iPod

**Connecting an iPod enables you to enjoy music from the vehicle speakers.**

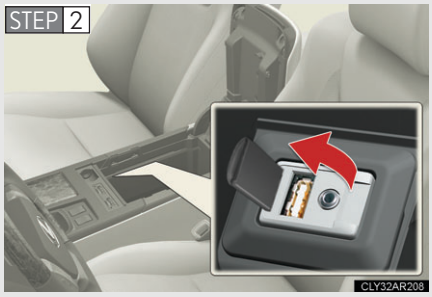
## ■ Connecting an iPod

STEP 1




Pull up the lever to release the lock, and lift the armrest.

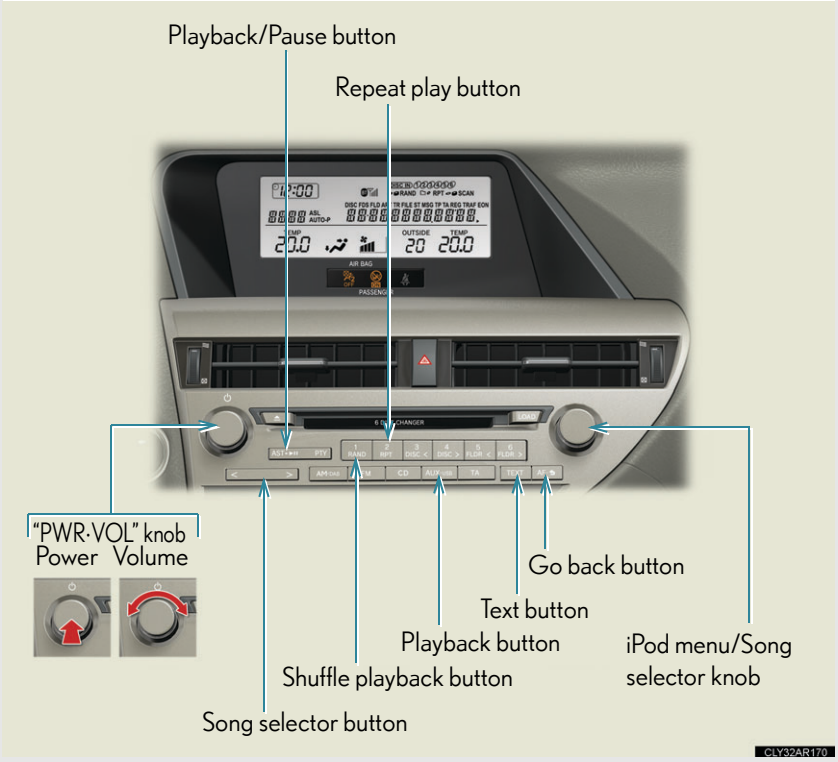
STEP 2




Open the cover and connect an iPod using an iPod cable.

Turn on the power of the iPod if it is not turned on.

## Control panel



## Selecting a play mode

STEP 1 Press  to select iPod menu mode.

STEP 2 Turning  changes the play mode in the following order:

"PLAYLISTS"→"ARTISTS"→"ALBUMS"→"SONGS"→
"PODCASTS"→"GENRES"→"COMPOSERS"→
"AUDIOBOOKS"

STEP 3 Press  to select the desired play mode.

## ■ Play mode list

| Play mode | First selection | Second selection | Third selection | Fourth selection |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| “PLAYLISTS” | Playlists select | Songs select | - | - |
| “ARTISTS” | Artists select | Albums select | Songs select | - |
| “ALBUMS” | Albums select | Songs select | - | - |
| “SONGS” | Songs select | - | - | - |
| “PODCASTS” | Albums select | Songs select | - | - |
| “GENRES” | Genre select | Artists select | Albums select | Songs select |
| “COMPOSERS” | Composers select | Albums select | Songs select | - |
| “AUDIOBOOKS” | Songs select | - | - | - |

## ■ Selecting a list

STEP 1 Turn  to display the first selection list.

STEP 2 Press  to select the desired item.

Pressing the knob changes to the second selection list.

STEP 3 Repeat the same procedure to select the desired item.

To return to the previous selection list, select “GO BACK” or press AF.

## Selecting songs

Turn  or press “>” or “<” on < > to select the desired song.

## Playing and pausing songs

To play or pause a song, press AST.

## Fast-forwarding and reversing songs

To fast-forward or reverse, press and hold “>” or “<” on < > until you hear a beep.

## Shuffle playback

### ■ Playing songs from one playlist or album in random order

Press 1 RAND .

To cancel, press 1 RAND again.

### ■ Playing songs from all the playlists or albums in random order

Press and hold 1 RAND until you hear a beep.

To cancel, press 1 RAND again.

## Repeat play

Press 2 RPT .

To cancel, press 2 RPT again.

## Switching the display

Press TEXT.

Each time the button is pressed, the display changes in the following order:
Elapsed time → Album title → Track title → Artist name

## Adjusting sound quality and volume balance

STEP 1 Press  to enter iPod menu mode.

STEP 2 Pressing  changes sound modes. (→P. 377)

### About iPod

Made for iPod iPhone

- "Made for iPod" and "Made for iPhone" mean that an electronic accessory has been designed to connect specifically to iPod, or iPhone, respectively, and has been certified by the developer to meet Apple performance standards.
- Apple is not responsible for the operation of this device or its compliance with safety and regulatory standards. Please note that the use of this accessory with iPod or iPhone may affect wireless performance.
- iPhone, iPod, iPod classic, iPod nano and iPod touch are trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.

■ **iPod functions**

- When an iPod is connected and the audio source is changed to iPod mode, the iPod will resume play from the same point in which it was last used.
- Depending on the iPod that is connected to the system, certain functions may not be available. If a function is unavailable due to a malfunction (as opposed to a system specification), disconnecting the device and reconnecting it once again may resolve the problem.
- While connected to the system, the iPod cannot be operated with its own controls. It is necessary to use the controls of the vehicle's audio system instead.
- When the battery level of an iPod is very low, the iPod may not operate. If so, charge the iPod before use.
- Supported models (→P. 351)

■ **iPod problems**

To resolve most problems encountered when using your iPod, disconnect your iPod from the vehicle iPod connection and reset it.
For instructions on how to reset your iPod, refer to your iPod Owner's Manual.

■ **Display**

→P. 334

■ **Error messages**

"ERROR": This indicates a problem in the iPod or its connection.

"NO MUSIC": This indicates that there is no music data in the iPod.

"EMPTY": This indicates that some available songs are not found in a selected playlist.

"UPDATE": This indicates that the version of the iPod is not compatible. Upgrade your iPod software to the latest version.

■ **Compatible models**

The following iPod®, iPod nano®, iPod classic®, iPod touch® and iPhone® devices can be used with this system.

● Made for

- iPod touch (4th generation)
- iPod touch (3rd generation)
- iPod touch (2nd generation)
- iPod touch (1st generation)
- iPod classic
- iPod with video
- iPod nano (6th generation)
- iPod nano (5th generation)
- iPod nano (4th generation)
- iPod nano (3rd generation)
- iPod nano (2nd generation)
- iPod nano (1st generation)
- iPhone 4
- iPhone 3GS
- iPhone 3G
- iPhone

Depending on differences between models or software versions etc., some models might be incompatible with this system.

Items related to standards and limitations are as follows:

● Maximum number of lists in device: 9999

● Maximum number of songs in device: 65535

● Maximum number of songs per list: 65535

**⚠ CAUTION**

■ **Caution while driving**

Do not connect iPod or operate the controls.

NOTICE

■ **If the armrest cannot be fully closed**

Depending on the size and shape of the iPod that is connected to the system, the armrest may not close fully. In this case, do not forcibly close the armrest as this may damage the iPod or the terminal, etc.

■ **To prevent damage to iPod**

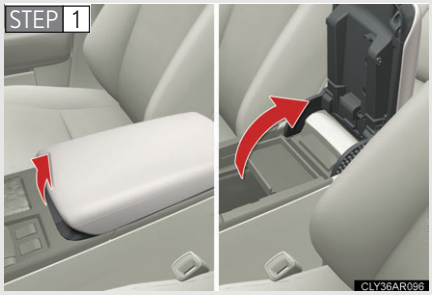
- Do not leave iPod in the vehicle. The temperature inside the vehicle may become high, resulting in damage to the player.
- Do not push down on or apply unnecessary pressure to the iPod while it is connected as this may damage the iPod or its terminal.
- Do not insert foreign objects into the port as this may damage the iPod or its terminal.

# Operating a USB memory

**Connecting a USB memory enables you to enjoy music from the vehicle speakers.**

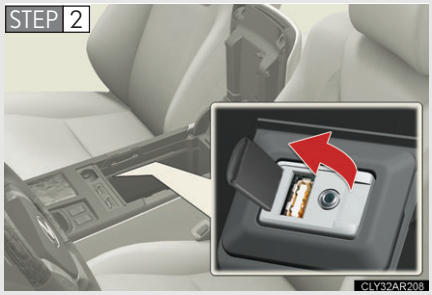
## ■ Connecting a USB memory

STEP 1




Pull up the lever to release the lock, and lift the armrest.

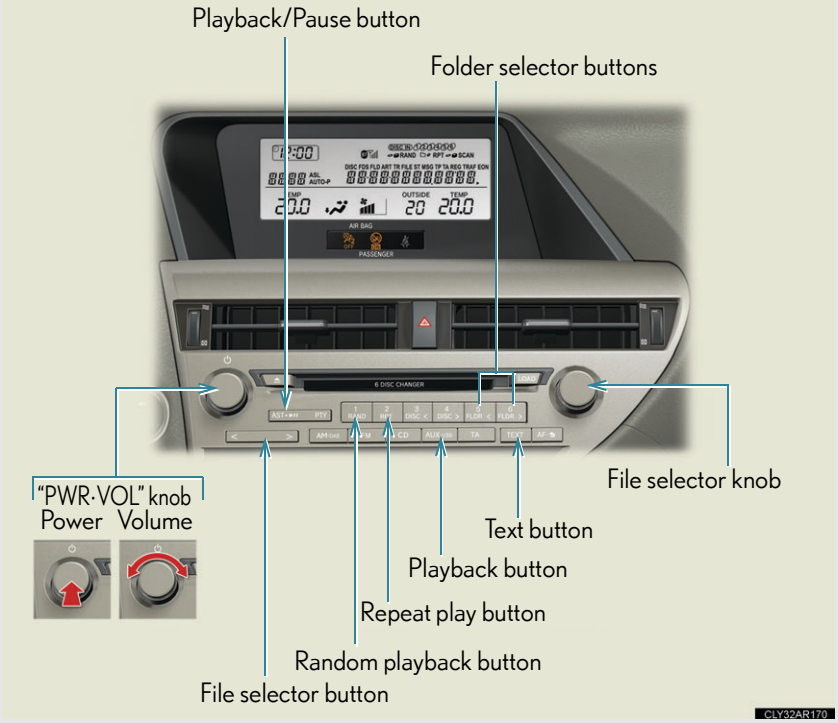
STEP 2




Open the cover and connect a USB memory.

Turn on the power of the USB memory if it is not turned on.

## Control panel



## Selecting a folder

### ■ Selecting folders one at a time

Press 6 FLDR > or 5 FLDR < to select the desired folder.

### ■ Returning to the first folder

Press and hold 5 FLDR < until you hear a beep.

## Selecting files

Turn  or press ">" or "<" on < > to select the desired file.

## Playing and pausing files

To play or pause a file, press AST.

## Fast-forwarding and reversing files

To fast-forward or reverse, press and hold ">" or "<" on < > until you hear a beep.

## Random playback

### ■ Playing files from a folder in random order

Press 1 RAND .

To cancel, press 1 RAND again.

### ■ Playing all the files from a USB memory in random order

Press and hold 1 RAND until you hear a beep.

To cancel, press 1 RAND again.

## Repeat play

### Repeating a file

Press 2 RPT .

To cancel, press 2 RPT again.

### Repeating all the files in a folder

Press and hold 2 RPT until you hear a beep.

To cancel, press 2 RPT again.

## Switching the display

Press TEXT.

Each time the button is pressed, the display changes in the following order: Elapsed time → Folder name → File name → Album title (MP3 only) → Track title → Artist name

---

### USB memory functions

- Depending on the USB memory that is connected to the system, the device itself may not be operable and certain functions may not be available. If the device is inoperable or a function is unavailable due to a malfunction (as opposed to a system specification), disconnecting the device and reconnecting it once again may resolve the problem.
- If the USB memory still does not begin operation after being disconnected and reconnected, format the memory.

### Display

→P. 334

### Error messages

"ERROR": This indicates a problem in the USB memory or its connection.

"NO MUSIC": This indicates that no MP3/WMA files are included in the USB memory.

## ■ USB memory

### ● Compatible devices

USB memories that can be used for MP3 and WMA playback

### ● Compatible device formats

The following device formats can be used:

• USB communication formats: USB2.0 FS (12 mbps)
• File formats: FAT16/32 (Windows)
• Correspondence class: Mass storage class

MP3 and WMA files written in any format other than those listed above may not play correctly, and their file names and folder names may not be displayed correctly.

Items related to standards and limitations are as follows:

- Maximum directory hierarchy: 8 levels
- Maximum number of folders in a device: 999 (including the root)
- Maximum number of files in a device: 65025
- Maximum number of files per folder: 255

### ● MP3 and WMA files

MP3 (MPEG Audio LAYER 3) is a standard audio compression format.

Files can be compressed to approximately 1/10 of their original size using MP3 compression.

WMA (Windows Media Audio) is a Microsoft audio compression format.

This format compresses audio data to a size smaller than that of the MP3 format.

There is a limit to the MP3 and WMA file standards that can be used and to the media/formats on which the files are recorded.

● MP3 file compatibility

- Compatible standards
  MP3 (MPEG1 AUDIO LAYERII, III, MPEG2 AUDIO LAYERII, III, MPEG2.5)
- Compatible sampling frequencies
  MPEG1 AUDIO LAYERII, III: 32, 44.1, 48 (kHz)
  MPEG2 AUDIO LAYERII, III: 16, 22.05, 24 (kHz)
  MPEG2.5: 8, 11.025, 12 (kHz)
- Compatible bit rates (compatible with VBR)
  MPEG1 AUDIO LAYERII, III: 32-320 (kbps)
  MPEG2 AUDIO LAYERII, III: 32-160 (kbps)
  MPEG2.5: 32-160 (kbps)
- Compatible channel modes: stereo, joint stereo, dual channel and monaural

● WMA file compatibility

- Compatible standards
  WMA Ver. 9
- Compatible sampling frequencies
  HIGH PROFILE 32, 44.1, 48 (kHz)
- Compatible bit rates
  HIGH PROFILE 32-320 (kbps, VBR)

● File names

The only files that can be recognized as MP3/WMA and played are those with the extension .mp3 or .wma.

● ID3 and WMA tags

ID3 tags can be added to MP3 files, making it possible to record the track title, artist name, etc.

The system is compatible with ID3 Ver. 1.0, 1.1, and Ver. 2.2, 2.3, 2.4 ID3 tags. (The number of characters is based on ID3 Ver. 1.0 and 1.1.)

WMA tags can be added to WMA files, making it possible to record the track title and artist name in the same way as with ID3 tags.

● MP3 and WMA playback

- When a device containing MP3 or WMA files is connected, all files in the USB memory device are checked. Once the file check is finished, the first MP3 or WMA file is played. To make the file check finish more quickly, we recommend that you do not include any files other than MP3 or WMA files or create any unnecessary folders.
- When the USB device is connected and the audio source is changed to USB memory mode, the USB device will start playing the first file in the first folder. If the same device is removed and reinserted (and the contents have not been changed), the USB device will resume play from the same point in which it was last used.

● Extensions

If the file extensions .mp3 and .wma are used for files other than MP3 and WMA files, they will be skipped (not played).

● Playback

- To play MP3 files with steady sound quality, we recommend a fixed bit rate of at least 128 kbps and a sampling frequency of 44.1 kHz.
- There is a wide variety of freeware and other encoding software for MP3 and WMA files on the market, and depending on the status of the encoding and the file format, poor sound quality or noise at the start of playback may result. In some cases, playback may not be possible at all.
- Microsoft, Windows, and Windows Media are registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the U.S.A. and other countries.

**⚠ CAUTION**

**■ Caution while driving**

Do not connect USB memories or operate the controls.

NOTICE

**■ If the armrest cannot be fully closed**

Depending on the size and shape of the USB memory that is connected to the system, the armrest may not close fully. In this case, do not forcibly close the armrest as this may damage the USB memory or the terminal, etc.

**■ To prevent damage to USB memories**

- Do not leave USB memories in the vehicle. The temperature inside the vehicle may become high, resulting in damage to the player.
- Do not push down on or apply unnecessary pressure to the USB memory while it is connected as this may damage the USB memory or its terminal.
- Do not insert foreign objects into the port as this may damage the USB memory or its terminal.

# Bluetooth® audio system

**The Bluetooth® audio system enables you to enjoy music played on a portable digital audio player (portable player) from the vehicle speakers via wireless communication.**

**This audio system supports Bluetooth®, a wireless data system capable of playing portable audio music without cables. If your portable player does not support Bluetooth®, the Bluetooth® audio system will not function.**


| Title | Page |
|---|---|
| Using the Bluetooth® audio system | P. 366 |
| Operating a Bluetooth® enabled portable player | P. 369 |
| Setting up a Bluetooth® enabled portable player | P. 372 |
| Bluetooth® audio system setup | P. 376 |



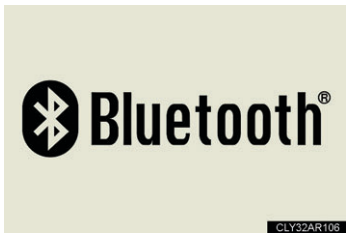

■ **Conditions under which the system will not operate**

- If using a portable player that does not support Bluetooth®
- If the portable player is switched off
- If the portable player is not connected
- If the portable player's battery is low
- If the portable player is behind the seat or in the glove box or console box
- If metal is covering or touching the portable player

■ **When transferring ownership of the vehicle**

Be sure to initialize the system to prevent personal data from being improperly accessed. (→P. 409)

■ **About Bluetooth®**




Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG. Inc.

■ **Compatible models**

- Bluetooth® specifications:
  Ver. 1.1, or higher (Recommended: Ver. 1.2 or higher)
- Following profiles:
  - A2DP (Advanced Audio Distribution Profile) Ver. 1.0, or higher (Conformed: Ver. 1.2
  - AVRCP (Audio/Video Remote Control Profile) Ver. 1.0 or higher (Conformed: Ver. 1.3)

Portable players must correspond to the above specifications in order to be connected to the Bluetooth® audio system. However, please note that some functions may be limited depending on the type of portable player.

## Certification for the Bluetooth® audio system

Pioneer CE

### EC Declaration of Conformity

**Manufacturer:** Pioneer Corporation
1-1, Shin-ogura, Saiwai-ku, Kawasaki-shi,
Kanagawa 212-0031, JAPAN

**EU Representative:** Pioneer Europe NV
Haven 1087, Keetberglaan 1
9120 MELSELE, BELGIUM

**The EU Directives covered by this Declaration**

1999/5/EC Radio & Telecommunication Terminal Equipment Directive

**The product covered by this declaration**

Receiver Assy

model **DEX-6418**

**The basis on which conformity is being declared**

The product identified above complies with the requirements of the above specified Directive by meeting following standards:
EN300328 V1.7.1, EN301489-1 V1.8.1, EN301489-17 V2.1.1,
ISO7637-2:2004, EN62479 : 2010
and EN60065:2002 + A1 : 2006 + A11 : 2008 + A2 : 2010

The technical documentation required to demonstrate that the product meets the requirements of the above specified Directive has been compiled by the signatory below and is available for inspection by the relevant enforcement authorities.

A sample of the product has been tested by the manufacturer.

Technical File No: KCE11-012

The CE mark was first applied in: 2011

Done at Melsele

08/08/2011

I Vlietinck

Ivan Vlietinck

Manager Public Affairs

PIONEER EUROPE NV
Haven 1087 - Keetberglaan 1 - 9120 Melsele - Belgium
Telefoon +32 (0)3 570 05 11 - Fax +32 (0)3 570 08 86 - URL http://www.pioneer.eu - BTW BE 406.999.132 - RPR Dendermonde

Ovim , PIONEER, izjavljuje da ovaj DEX-6418 je usklađen sa bitnim zahtjevima idrugim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC.

## ⚠ CAUTION

**■ Caution while driving**

Do not connect portable players or operate the controls.

**■ Caution regarding interference with electronic devices**

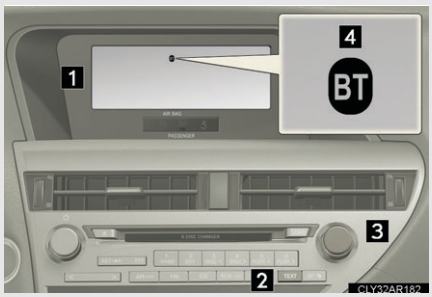
- Your audio unit is fitted with Bluetooth® antennas. People with implantable cardiac pacemakers, cardiac resynchronization therapy-pacemakers or implantable cardioverter defibrillators should maintain a reasonable distance between themselves and the Bluetooth® antennas. The radio waves may affect the operation of such devices.
- Before using Bluetooth® devices, users of any electrical medical device other than implantable cardiac pacemakers, cardiac resynchronization therapy-pacemakers or implantable cardioverter defibrillators should consult the manufacturer of the device for information about its operation under the influence of radio waves. Radio waves could have unexpected effects on the operation of such medical devices.

NOTICE

**To prevent damage to portable players**

Do not leave portable players in the vehicle. The temperature inside the vehicle may become high, resulting in damage to the player.

## ■ Audio unit




1 Display
A message, name, number, etc. is displayed.

Lower-case characters and special characters cannot be displayed.

2 Displays information that is too long to be displayed at one time on the display (press and hold)

3 Selects items such as menu and number
Turn: Selects an item
Press: Inputs the selected item

4 Bluetooth® connection condition

If "BT" is not displayed, the Bluetooth® audio system cannot be used.

## Using the Bluetooth® audio system for the first time

Before using the Bluetooth® audio system, it is necessary to register a Bluetooth® enabled portable player in the system. Follow the procedure below to register (pair) a portable player:

STEP 1 Press  and select "BT•A MENU" using  .

STEP 2 Select "BT•A Setup" using  .

STEP 3 Select "Pair Audio" using  .

STEP 4 Select "Record Name" using  , and say the name to be registered after the beep.

The name to be registered will be repeated aloud.

STEP 5 Select "Confirm" using  .

A passkey will be displayed.

STEP 6 Input the passkey into the audio player.

Refer to the manual that comes with the portable player for the operation of the portable player.

If the portable player has a Bluetooth® phone, the phone can be registered at the same time.

STEP 7 When "Pair Phone?" is displayed, select "Yes" or "No" using  . (Bluetooth® phone →P. 387)

3 Interior features

## Menu list of the Bluetooth® audio system

| First menu | Second menu | Third menu | Operation detail |
|---|---|---|---|
| "Setup" | "BT·A Setup" | "Pair Audio" | Registering a portable player |
| | | "Select Audio" | Selecting a portable player to be used |
| | | "Change Name" | Changing the registered name of a portable player |
| | | "List Audios" | Listing the registered portable players |
| | | "Set Passkey" | Changing the passkey |
| | | "Delete Audio" | Deleting a registered portable player |
| | "System Setup" | "Guidance Vol" | Setting voice guidance volume |
| | | "Device Name" | Displaying the Bluetooth® device address and name |
| | | "Initialize" | Initializing the system |

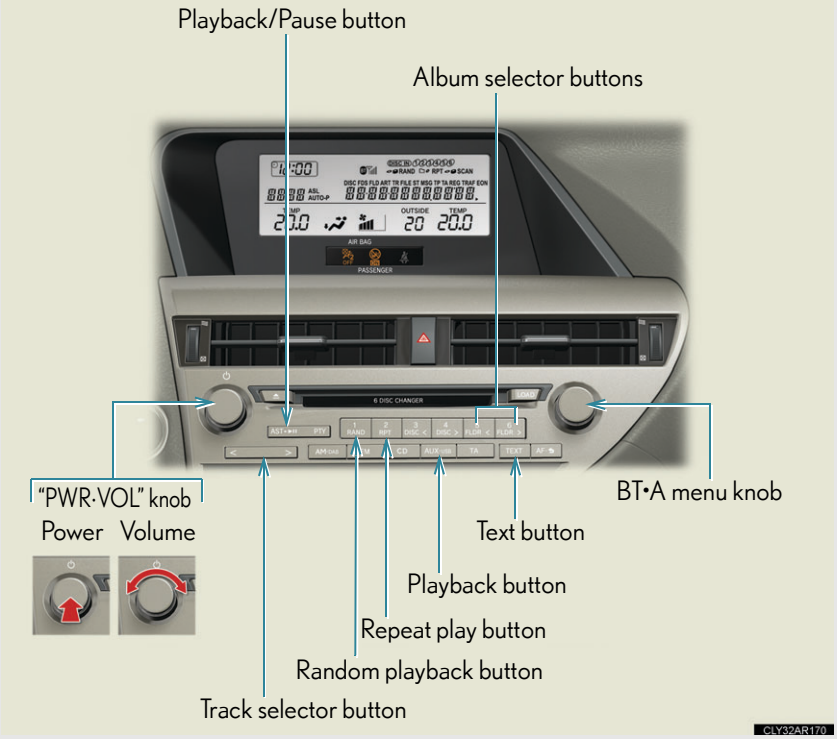
■ **Operations that cannot be performed while driving**

- Operating the system using 
- Registering a portable player to the system

■ **Changing the passkey**

→P. 375

# Operating a Bluetooth® enabled portable player



## Selecting an album

To select the desired album, press 5 FLDR < or 6 FLDR > .

## Selecting tracks

Press ">" or "<" on < > to select the desired track.

## Playing and pausing tracks

To play or pause a track, press AST.

## Fast-forwarding and reversing tracks

To fast-forward or reverse, press and hold ">" or "<" on < > until you hear a beep.

## Random playback

Press 1 RAND .

To cancel, press 1 RAND again.

## Repeat play

Press 2 RPT .

To cancel, press 2 RPT again.

## Switching the display

Press TEXT.

Each time the button is pressed, the display changes in the following order:
Elapsed time → Album title → Track title → Artist name

■ **Bluetooth® audio system functions**

Depending on the portable player that is connected to the system, certain functions may not be available.

■ **Display**

→P. 334

■ **Error messages**

"Memory Error": This indicates a problem in the system.

# Setting up a Bluetooth® enabled portable player

**Registering a portable player in the Bluetooth® audio system allows the system to function. The following functions can be used for registered portable players:**

## ■ Functions and operation procedures

To enter the menu for each function, follow the steps below.

STEP 1 Press  to select "BT•A MENU" or press the off-hook switch and select "Setup" using  .

STEP 2 Select "BT•A Setup" using  .

STEP 3 Select one of the following items using  :

- Registering a portable player
  "Pair Audio"
- Selecting a portable player to be used
  "Select Audio"
- Changing the registered name of a portable player
  "Change Name"
- Listing the registered portable players
  "List Audios"
- Changing the passkey
  "Set Passkey"
- Deleting a registered portable player
  "Delete Audio"

## Registering a portable player

Select “Pair Audio” using  , and perform the procedure for registering a portable player. (→P. 367)

## Selecting a portable player to be used

STEP 1 Select “Select Audio” using  .

STEP 2 Select the portable player to be used using  .

STEP 3 Select “From Car” or “From Audio” using  .

If “From Car” is selected, the portable player will be automatically connected whenever the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is in either ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode.

## Changing the registered name of a portable player

STEP 1 Select “Change Name” using  .

STEP 2 Select the desired portable player name to be changed using  .

STEP 3 Select “Record Name” using  , and say the new name after the beep.

The name to be registered will be repeated aloud.

STEP 4 Select “Confirm” using  .

## Listing the registered portable players

Select “List Audios” using  . The list of registered portable players will be read aloud.

When listing is complete, the system returns to “BT•A Setup”.

## Changing the passkey

STEP 1 Select “Set Passkey” using  .

STEP 2 Select a 4 to 8-digit number using  .

The number should be input 1 digit at a time.

STEP 3 When the entire number to be registered as a passkey has been input, press  again.

If the number to be registered has 8 digits, pressing of the knob is not necessary.

## Deleting a registered portable player

STEP 1 Select “Delete Audio” using  .

STEP 2 Select the desired portable player to be deleted using  .

If the portable player to be deleted is paired as a Bluetooth® phone, the registration of the mobile phone can be deleted at the same time.

STEP 3 When “Del Phone?” is displayed, select “Yes” or “No” using  . (Bluetooth® phone →P. 387)

---

**■ The number of portable players that can be registered**

Up to 2 portable players can be registered in the system.

■ System setup items and operation procedures

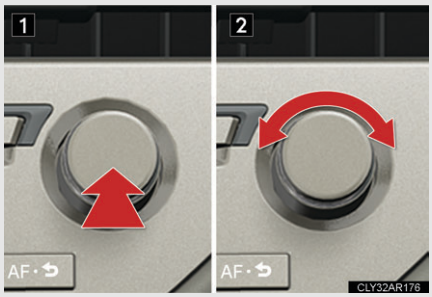
To enter the menu of each setting, follow the steps below.

STEP 1 Press  to select "BT•A MENU" or press the off-hook switch and select "Setup" using  .

STEP 2 Select "System Setup" using  .

STEP 3 Select one of the following items using  :

- Setting voice guidance volume
  "Guidance Vol" (→P. 408)
- Displaying the Bluetooth® device address and name
  "Device Name" (→P. 409)
- Initializing the system
  "Initialize" (→P. 409)




1 Displays the current mode

2 Changes the following settings:

- Sound quality and volume balance
→P. 377

  The sound quality and balance setting can be changed to produce the best sound.

- Automatic Sound Levelizer on/off
→P. 378

## Adjusting sound quality and volume balance

### Changing sound quality modes

Press  .

Pressing the button changes sound modes in the following order:

“BAS”→“MID”→“TRE”→“FAD”→“BAL”→“ASL”

### Adjusting sound quality

Turning  adjusts the level.

| Mode displayed | Sound quality mode | Level | Turn counter-clockwise | Turn clockwise |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| “BAS” | Bass* | -5 to 5 | Low | High |
| “MID” | Mid-range* | -5 to 5 | | |
| “TRE” | Treble* | -5 to 5 | | |
| “FAD” | Front/rear volume balance | F7 to R7 | Shifts to rear | Shifts to front |
| “BAL” | Left/right volume balance | L7 to R7 | Shifts to left | Shifts to right |

*: The sound quality level is adjusted individually in each audio mode.

## Turning the Automatic Sound Levelizer (ASL) on/off

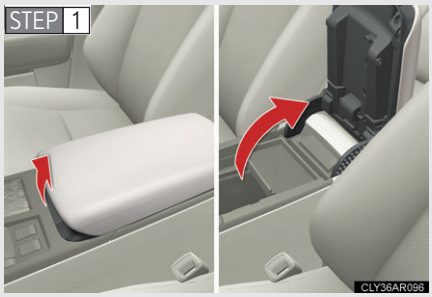
Turning  clockwise turns on the ASL, and turning  counter-clockwise turns off the ASL.

ASL automatically adjusts the volume and tone quality according to the noise level as you drive your vehicle.

# Using the AUX port

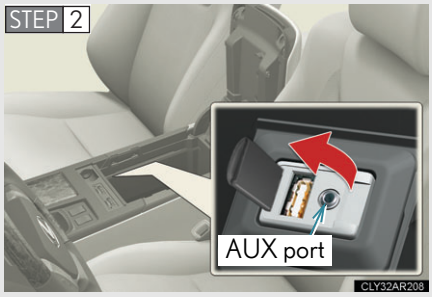
**This port can be used to connect a portable audio device and listen to it through the vehicle's speakers.**

STEP 1




Pull up the lever to release the lock, and lift the armrest.

STEP 2




Open the cover and connect the portable audio device.

STEP 3 Press AUX-USB.



■ **Operating portable audio devices connected to the audio system**

The volume can be adjusted using the vehicle's audio controls. All other adjustments must be made on the portable audio device itself.

■ **When using a portable audio device connected to the power outlet**

Noise may occur during playback. Use the power source of the portable audio device.

## ⚠ CAUTION

**■ Caution while driving**

Do not connect portable audio device or operate the controls.

## ⚠ NOTICE

**■ If the armrest cannot be fully closed**

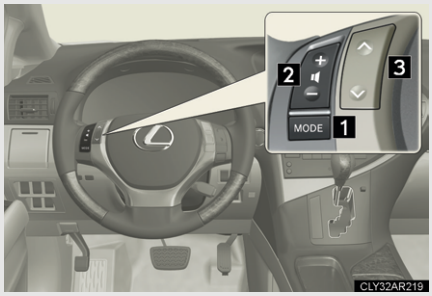
Depending on the size and shape of the portable audio device that is connected to the system, the armrest may not close fully. In this case, do not forcibly close the armrest as this may damage the portable audio device or the terminal, etc.

**■ To prevent damage to portable audio device**

- Do not leave portable audio device in the vehicle. The temperature inside the vehicle may become high, resulting in damage to the player.
- Do not push down on or apply unnecessary pressure to the portable audio device while it is connected as this may damage the portable audio device or its terminal.
- Do not insert foreign objects into the port as this may damage the portable audio device or its terminal.

# Using the steering wheel audio switches

**Some audio features can be controlled using the switches on the steering wheel.**




1 Turns the power on, selects an audio source

2 Increases/decreases volume

3 Radio mode: Selects a radio station

CD mode: Selects a track, file (MP3 and WMA) and disc

Bluetooth® audio mode:

Selects a track and album

iPod mode:

Selects a song

USB memory mode:

Selects a file and folder

## Turning the power on

Press MODE when the audio system is turned off.

The audio system can be turned off by holding the switch down until you hear a beep.

## Changing the audio source

Press MODE when the audio system is turned on. The audio source changes as follows each time the button is pressed. If no discs are inserted in the player, that mode will be skipped.

FM1→FM2→FM3→CD player→Bluetooth® audio→AUX→ iPod or USB memory→MW→FM1

## Adjusting the volume

Press "+" on  to increase the volume and "-" to decrease the volume.

Hold down the button to continue increasing or decreasing the volume.

## Selecting a radio station

STEP 1 Press MODE to select radio mode.

STEP 2 Press "∧" or "∨" on  to select a radio station.

To scan for receivable stations, press and hold "∧" or "∨" on the button until you hear a beep.

## Selecting a track/file or song

STEP 1 Press MODE to select CD, Bluetooth® audio, iPod or USB memory mode.

STEP 2 Press "∧" or "∨" on  to select the desired track/file or song.

## Selecting an album

STEP 1 Press MODE to select Bluetooth® audio mode.

STEP 2 Press and hold "∧" or "∨" on  until you hear a beep.

## Selecting a folder

STEP 1 Press MODE to select USB memory mode.

STEP 2 Press and hold "∧" or "∨" on  until you hear a beep.

## Selecting a disc in the CD player

STEP 1 Press MODE to select CD mode.

STEP 2 Press and hold "∧" or "∨" on  until you hear a beep.

### Canceling automatic selection of a radio station

Press  again.

**CAUTION**

**To reduce the risk of an accident**

Exercise care when operating the audio switches on the steering wheel.

# Hands-free system for mobile phones

**The hands-free system is a function that allows you to use your mobile phone without touching it.**

**This system supports Bluetooth® mobile phones. Bluetooth® is a wireless data system that allows the mobile phone to wirelessly connect to the hands-free system and make/receive calls.**

## ■ Hands-free system quick guide

STEP 1 Setting a mobile phone. (→P. 393)

STEP 2 Adding an entry to the phone book. (Up to 20 names can be stored) (→P. 411)

STEP 3 Dialing by inputting a name. (→P. 398)

| Title | Page |
|---|---|
| Using the hands-free system<br>■Using the hands-free phone system for the first time | P. 393 |
| Making a phone call<br>■Making a phone call<br>• Dialing by inputting a name<br>• Speed dialing<br>• Redial<br>• Call back<br>■Receiving a phone call<br>• Answering a phone call<br>• Refusing a phone call<br>■Transferring a phone call<br>■Using the call history memory<br>• Dialing<br>• Storing data in the phone book<br>• Deleting | P. 397 |
| Setting a mobile phone<br>■Functions and operation procedures | P. 401 |
| Security and system setup<br>■Security setting items and operation procedures<br>■System setup items and operation procedures | P. 405 |

| Title | Page |
|---|---|
| Using the phone book<br>■Adding a new phone number<br>■Changing the registered name in the phone book<br>■Listing the registered data<br>■Setting speed dials<br>■Deleting the registered data<br>■Deleting speed dials | P. 411 |

■ **Conditions under which the system will not operate**

- If using a mobile phone that does not support Bluetooth®
- If the mobile phone is switched off
- If you are outside service range
- If the mobile phone is not connected
- If the mobile phone's battery is low
- If the mobile phone is behind the seat or in the glove box or console box
- If metal is covering or touching the phone

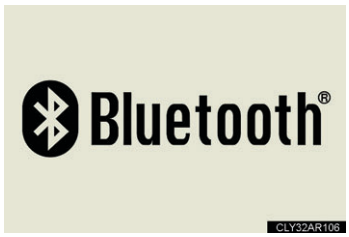
■ **When using the hands-free system**

- The audio system and voice guidance are muted when making a call.
- If both parties speak at the same time, it may be difficult to hear.
- If the incoming call volume is overly loud, an echo may be heard.
- Try to face toward the microphone as much as possible when speaking.
- In the following circumstances, it may be difficult to hear the other party:
  - When driving on unpaved roads
  - When driving at high speeds
  - When a window is open
  - When the air conditioning is blowing directly on the microphone
  - When the air conditioning is set to high

■ **When transferring ownership of the vehicle**

Be sure to initialize the system to prevent personal data from being improperly accessed. (→P. 409)

■ **About Bluetooth®**




Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG. Inc.

■ **Compatible models**

Compatible with HFP (Hands Free Profile) Ver. 1.0 or higher (Conformed: Ver. 1.5) and OPP (Object Push Profile) Ver. 1.1.

If your mobile phone does not support HFP, you cannot enter the Bluetooth® phone. If your mobile phone supports OPP alone, you cannot use the Bluetooth® phone.

## Certification for the hands-free system

Pioneer CE

### EC Declaration of Conformity

**Manufacturer:** Pioneer Corporation
1-1, Shin-ogura, Saiwai-ku, Kawasaki-shi,
Kanagawa 212-0031, JAPAN

**EU Representative:** Pioneer Europe NV
Haven 1087, Keetberglaan 1
9120 MELSELE, BELGIUM

**The EU Directives covered by this Declaration**

1999/5/EC Radio & Telecommunication Terminal Equipment Directive

**The product covered by this declaration**

Receiver Assy

model **DEX-6418**

**The basis on which conformity is being declared**

The product identified above complies with the requirements of the above specified Directive by meeting following standards:
EN300328 V1.7.1, EN301489-1 V1.8.1, EN301489-17 V2.1.1,
ISO7637-2:2004, EN62479 : 2010
and EN60065:2002 + A1 : 2006 + A11 : 2008 + A2 : 2010

The technical documentation required to demonstrate that the product meets the requirements of the above specified Directive has been compiled by the signatory below and is available for inspection by the relevant enforcement authorities.

A sample of the product has been tested by the manufacturer.

Technical File No: KCE11-012

The CE mark was first applied in: 2011

Done at Melsele

08/08/2011

I Vlietinck

Ivan Vlietinck

Manager Public Affairs

PIONEER EUROPE NV
Haven 1087 - Keetberglaan 1 - 9120 Melsele - Belgium
Telefoon +32 (0)3 570 05 11 - Fax +32 (0)3 570 08 86 - URL http://www.pioneer.eu - BTW BE 406.999.132 - RPR Dendermonde

Ovim , PIONEER, izjavljuje da ovaj DEX-6418 je usklađen sa bitnim zahtjevima idrugim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC.

## ⚠ CAUTION

**■ Caution while driving**

Do not use a mobile phone or connect the Bluetooth® phone.

**■ Caution regarding interference with electronic devices**

- Your audio unit is fitted with Bluetooth® antennas. People with implantable cardiac pacemakers, cardiac resynchronization therapy-pacemakers or implantable cardioverter defibrillators should maintain a reasonable distance between themselves and the Bluetooth® antennas. The radio waves may affect the operation of such devices.
- Before using Bluetooth® devices, users of any electrical medical device other than implantable cardiac pacemakers, cardiac resynchronization therapy-pacemakers or implantable cardioverter defibrillators should consult the manufacturer of the device for information about its operation under the influence of radio waves. Radio waves could have unexpected effects on the operation of such medical devices.

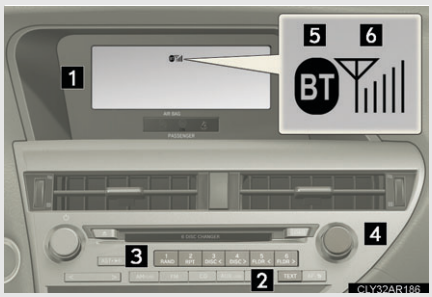
NOTICE

**■ To prevent damage to mobile phones**

Do not leave mobile phones in the vehicle. The temperature inside the vehicle may become high, resulting in damage to the phone.

# Using the hands-free system (for mobile phones)

## ■ Audio unit




1 Display
A message, name, phone number, etc. is displayed.

Lower-case characters and special characters cannot be displayed.

2 Displays information that is too long to be displayed at one time on the display (press and hold)

3 Selects speed dials

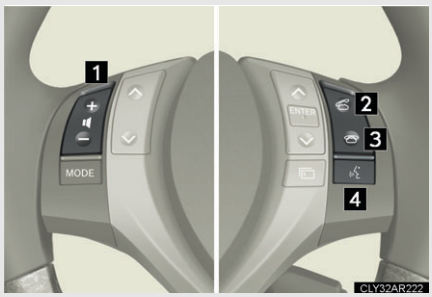
4 Selects items such as menu and number
Turn: Selects an item
Press: Inputs the selected item

5 Bluetooth® connection condition

If “BT” is not displayed, the hands-free phone system cannot be used.

6 Reception level

## ■ Steering wheel switches




1 Volume

During an incoming call: Adjusts the ring tone volume

During an ongoing call: Adjusts the receiver volume

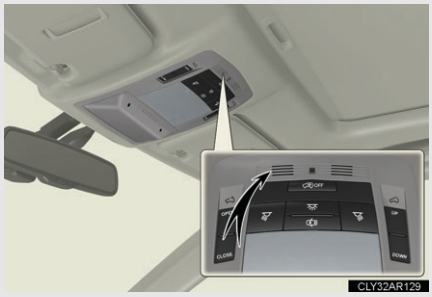
The voice guidance volume cannot be adjusted using this button.

2 Off-hook switch
Turns the hands-free system on/starts a call

3 On-hook switch
Turns the hands-free system off/ends a call/refuses a call

4 Talk switch
Turns the voice command system on (press)/turns the voice command system off (press and hold)

## ■ Microphone



## Using the hands-free phone system for the first time

Before using the hands-free phone system, it is necessary to register a mobile phone in the system. The system will enter phone registration mode automatically when starting the system with no mobile phone registered. Follow the procedure below to register (pair) a mobile phone:

STEP 1 Press the off-hook switch or the talk switch, and select "Pair Phone" using  .

STEP 2 Select "Record Name" using  , and say the name to be registered after the beep.

The name to be registered will be repeated aloud.

STEP 3 Select "Confirm" using  .

A passkey will be displayed.

STEP 4 Input the passkey into the mobile phone.

Refer to the manual that comes with the mobile phone for the operation of the phone.

If the mobile phone has a Bluetooth® audio player, the audio player can be registered at the same time.

STEP 5 When "Pair Audio?" is displayed, select "Yes" or "No" using  . (Bluetooth® audio player →P. 362)

## Menu list of the hands-free phone system

| First menu | Second menu | Third menu | Operation detail |
|---|---|---|---|
| “Callback” | - | - | Dialing a number stored in the incoming call history memory |
| “Redial” | - | - | Dialing a number stored in the outgoing call history memory |
| “Phonebook” | “Add Entry” | - | Adding a new phone number |
| | “Change Name” | - | Changing the registered name in the phone book |
| | “Delete Entry” | - | Deleting the registered data |
| | “Del Spd Dial” | - | Deleting speed dials |
| | “List Names” | - | Listing the registered data |
| | “Speed Dial” | - | Setting speed dials |

| First menu | Second menu | Third menu | Operation detail |
|---|---|---|---|
| "Setup" | "Security" | "Set PIN" | Setting a PIN code |
| | | "Phbk Lock" | Locking the phone book |
| | | "Phbk Unlock" | Unlocking the phone book |
| | "Phone Setup" | "Pair Phone" | Registering a mobile phone |
| | | "Select Phone" | Selecting a mobile phone to be used |
| | | "Change Name" | Changing the registered name of a mobile phone |
| | | "List Phones" | Listing the registered mobile phones |
| | | "Set Passkey" | Changing the passkey |
| | | "Delete Phone" | Deleting a registered mobile phone |
| | "System Setup" | "Guidance Vol" | Setting voice guidance volume |
| | | "Device Name" | Displaying the Bluetooth® device address and name |
| | | "Initialize" | Initializing the system |

■ **Automatic volume adjustment**

When vehicle speed reaches 80 km/h (50 mph) or more, the volume automatically increases. The volume returns to the previous volume setting when vehicle speed drops to 70 km/h (43 mph) or less.

■ **Operations that cannot be performed while driving**

- Operating the system using 
- Registering a mobile phone to the system

■ **Changing the passkey**

→P. 403

# Making a phone call

■ **Making a phone call**
- ● Dialing by inputting a name “Dial by name”
- ● Speed dialing
- ● Dialing a number stored in the outgoing history memory “Redial”
- ● Dialing a number stored in the incoming history memory “Call back”

■ **Receiving a phone call**
- ● Answering a phone call
- ● Refusing a phone call

■ **Transferring a phone call**

■ **Using the call history memory**
- ● Dialing
- ● Storing data in the phone book
- ● Deleting

## Dialing by inputting a name

STEP 1 Press the talk switch and say a registered name.
The desired name or number is displayed.

STEP 2 Dial by one of the following methods:

a. Press the off-hook switch.

b. Select “Dial” using  .

In STEP 1, if the pronounced name cannot be recognized, select the desired name using  .

## Speed dialing

STEP 1 Press the off-hook switch.
STEP 2 Press the preset button in which the desired number is registered.
STEP 3 Press the off-hook switch.

## When receiving a phone call

### Answering a phone call

Press the off-hook switch.

### Refusing a phone call

Press the on-hook switch.

## Transferring a phone call

A call can be transferred between the mobile phone and system while dialing, receiving a call, or during a call. Use one of the following methods:

a. Operate the mobile phone.

Refer to the manual that comes with the mobile phone for the operation of the phone.

b. Press the off-hook switch*.

*: This operation can be performed only when transferring a call from the mobile phone to the system during a call.

## Using the call history memory

Follow the procedure below to use a number stored in the call history memory:

STEP 1 Press the off-hook switch and select “Redial” (when using a number stored in the outgoing call history memory) or “Call back” (when using a number stored in the incoming call history memory) using  .

STEP 2 Select the desired number using  .

STEP 3 The following operations can be performed:

Dialing: Press the off-hook switch or select “Dial” using  .

Storing the number in the phone book: Select “Store” and then “Confirm” using  .

Deleting: Select “Delete” and then “Confirm” using  .

---

**■ Call history**

Up to 5 numbers can be stored in each of the outgoing and incoming call history memories.

**■ When talking on the phone**

- Do not talk at the same time as with the other party.
- Keep the volume of the incoming voice down. Otherwise, voice echo will increase.

# Setting a mobile phone

**Registering a mobile phone in the hands-free phone system allows the system to function. The following functions can be used for registered mobile phones:**

## ■ Functions and operation procedures

To enter the menu for each function, follow the steps below.

STEP 1 Press the off-hook switch and select “Setup” using  .

STEP 2 Select “Phone Setup” using  .

STEP 3 Select one of the following items using  :

- Registering a mobile phone
  “Pair Phone”
- Selecting a mobile phone to be used
  “Select Phone”
- Changing the registered name of a mobile phone
  “Change Name”
- Listing the registered mobile phones
  “List Phones”
- Changing the passkey
  “Set Passkey”
- Deleting a registered mobile phone
  “Delete Phone”

## Registering a mobile phone

Select “Pair Phone” using  , and perform the procedure for registering a mobile phone. (→P. 393)

## Selecting a mobile phone to be used

STEP 1 Select “Select Phone” using  .

STEP 2 Select the mobile phone to be used using  .

## Changing the registered name of a mobile phone

STEP 1 Select “Change Name” using  .

STEP 2 Select the desired mobile phone name to be changed using  .

STEP 3 Select “Record Name” using  , and say the new name after the beep.

The name to be registered will be repeated aloud.

STEP 4 Select “Confirm” using  .

## Listing the registered mobile phones

Select “List Phones” using  . The list of registered mobile phones will be read aloud.
When listing is complete, the system returns to “Phone Setup”.

## Changing the passkey

STEP 1 Select “Set Passkey” using  .

STEP 2 Select a 4 to 8-digit number using  .

The number should be input 1 digit at a time.

STEP 3 When the entire number to be registered as a passkey has been input, press  again.

If the number to be registered has 8 digits, pressing of the knob is not necessary.

## Deleting a registered mobile phone

STEP 1 Select “Delete Phone” using  .

STEP 2 Select the desired mobile phone to be deleted using  .

If the mobile phone to be deleted is paired as a Bluetooth® audio player, the registration of the audio player can be deleted at the same time.

STEP 3 When “Del Audio?” is displayed, select “Yes” or “No” using  . (Bluetooth® audio player →P. 362)

---

■ **The number of mobile phones that can be registered**

Up to 6 mobile phones can be registered in the system.

# Security and system setup

To enter the menu of each setting, follow the steps below.

## ■ Security setting items and operation procedures

STEP 1 Press the off-hook switch and select “Setup” using  .

STEP 2 Select “Security” using  .

STEP 3 Select one of the following items using  :

- Setting or changing the PIN (Personal Identification Number)
  “Set PIN”
- Locking the phone book
  “Phbk Lock”
- Unlocking the phone book
  “Phbk Unlock”

■ **System setup items and operation procedures**

STEP 1 Press the off-hook switch and select “Setup” using  .

STEP 2 Select “System Setup” using  .

STEP 3 Select one of the following items using  :

- Setting voice guidance volume
  “Guidance Vol”
- Displaying the Bluetooth® device address and name
  “Device Name”
- Initializing the system
  “Initialize”

## Setting or changing the PIN

### ■ Setting a PIN

STEP 1 Select “Set PIN” using  .

STEP 2 Enter a PIN using  .

Input the code 1 digit at a time.

### ■ Changing the PIN

STEP 1 Select “Set PIN” using  .

STEP 2 Enter the registered PIN using  .

STEP 3 Enter a new PIN using  .

Input the code 1 digit at a time.

## Locking or unlocking the phone book

STEP 1 Select “Phbk Lock” or “Phbk Unlock” using  .

STEP 2 Input a new PIN using  and select “Confirm” using  .

Input the code 1 digit at a time.

## Setting voice guidance volume

STEP 1 Select “Guidance Vol” using  .

STEP 2 Change the voice guidance volume.

To decrease the volume: Turn  counterclockwise.

To increase the volume: Turn  clockwise.

## Displaying the Bluetooth® device address and name

STEP 1 Select “Device Name” using  .

STEP 2 Turn  to display the Bluetooth® device address and name.

STEP 3 Select “Go Back” using  to return to “System Setup”.

## Initializing the system

STEP 1 Select “Initialize” and then “Confirm” using  .

STEP 2 Select “Confirm” again using  .

■ **Initialization**

- The following data in the system can be initialized:
  - Phone book
  - Outgoing and incoming call history
  - Speed dials
  - Registered mobile phone data
  - Security code
  - Registered Bluetooth® enabled portable player data
  - Passkeys for the mobile phones
  - Passkey for the Bluetooth® audio players
  - Guidance volume
  - Receiver volume
  - Ring tone volume
- Once the initialization has been completed, the data cannot be restored to its original state.

■ **When the phone book is locked**

The following functions cannot be used:

- Dialing by inputting a name
- Speed dialing
- Dialing a number stored in the call history memory
- Using the phone book

# Using the phone book

To enter the menu of each setting, follow the steps below.

STEP 1 Press the off-hook switch and select “Phonebook” using  .

STEP 2 Select one of the following items using  :

- Adding a new phone number
  “Add Entry”
- Changing the registered name in the phone book
  “Change Name”
- Listing the registered data
  “List Names”
- Setting speed dials
  “Speed Dial”
- Deleting the registered data
  “Delete Entry”
- Deleting speed dials
  “Del Spd Dial”

## Adding a new phone number

The following methods can be used to add a new phone number:

- Transferring data from the mobile phone
- Inputting a phone number using 
- Selecting a phone number from the outgoing or incoming call history

## ■ Adding procedure

STEP 1 Select “Add Entry” using  .

STEP 2 Use one of the following methods to input a telephone number:

Transferring data from the mobile phone:

STEP2-1 Select “By Phone” and then “Confirm” using  .

STEP2-2 When “Transfer” appears in the display, transfer the data from the mobile phone.

Refer to the manual that comes with the mobile phone for details on transferring data.

STEP2-3 Select the desired data using  .

Inputting a phone number using  :

STEP2-1 Select “Manual Input” using  .

STEP2-2 Input a phone number using  , and press  again.

Input the phone number 1 digit at a time.

Selecting a phone number from the outgoing or incoming call history:

STEP2-1 Select “Call History” using  .

STEP2-2 Select “Outgoing” or “Incoming” using  .

STEP2-3 Select the desired data using  .

STEP 3 Select “Record Name” using  , and say the desired name after the beep.

The name to be registered will be repeated aloud.

STEP 4 Select “Confirm” using  .

STEP 5 Select “Confirm” again using  .

In STEP 5 , selecting “Speed Dial” instead of “Confirm” registers the newly added phone number as a speed dial.

## Changing the registered name in the phone book

STEP 1 Select “Change Name” using  .

STEP 2 Select the desired name to be changed using  .

STEP 3 Select “Record Name” using  and say the new name after the beep.

The name to be registered will be repeated aloud.

STEP 4 Select “Confirm” using  .

## Listing the registered data

Select “List Names” using  . The list of the registered data will be read aloud.

When listing is complete, the system returns to “Phonebook”.

Pressing the off-hook switch while an entry is being read aloud selects the entry and calls the registered phone number.

## Setting speed dials

STEP 1 Select “Speed Dial” using  .

STEP 2 Select the desired data using  .

STEP 3 Select the desired preset button and register the data into speed dial by either of the following methods:

a. Press the desired preset button and select “Confirm” using  .

b. Press and hold the desired preset button.

## Deleting the registered data

STEP 1 Select “Delete Entry” using  .

STEP 2 Select the desired data to be deleted using  .

## Deleting speed dials

STEP 1 Select “Del Spd Dial” using  .

STEP 2 Press the preset button to which the desired speed dial is registered after the beep.

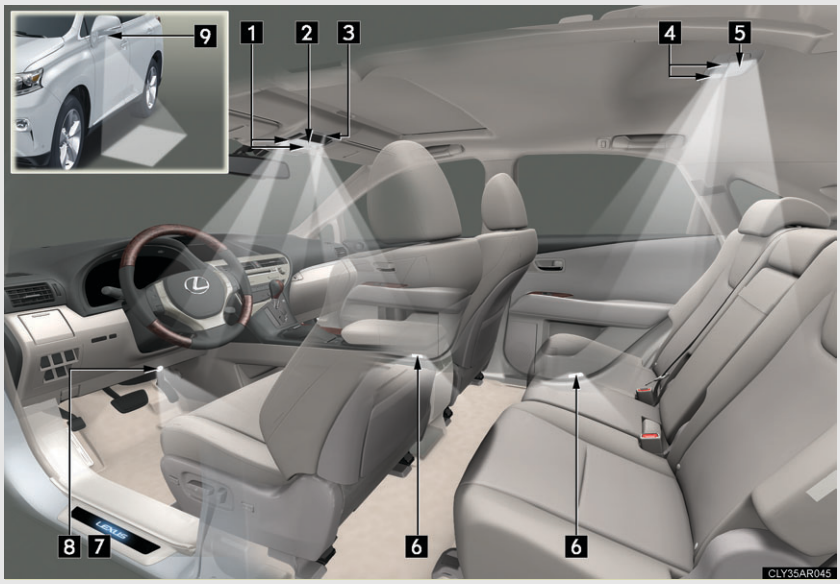
The name to be deleted will be heard.

STEP 3 Select “Confirm” using  .

### Limitation of number of digits

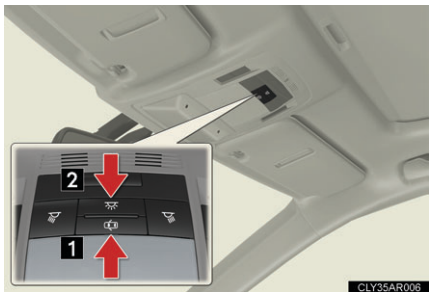
A phone number that exceeds 24 digits cannot be registered.

# Interior lights list




1 Front personal lights (→P. 418)
2 Front interior light (→P. 418)
3 Shift lever light (when the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode)
4 Rear personal lights (→ P. 418)
5 Rear interior light
6 Door courtesy lights
7 Scuff lights (if equipped)
8 Footwell lights
9 Outer foot lights

## Interior lights




1 Turns the lights on/off linked to door positions.

2 Turns the lights on/off

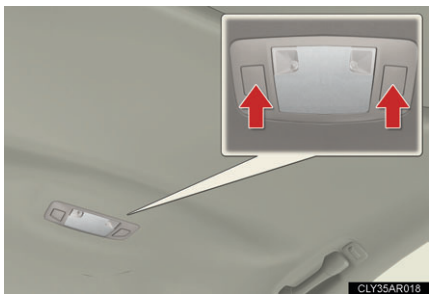
## Personal lights

▶ Front




Turns the light on/off

▶ Rear




Turns the light on/off

■ **Illuminated entry system**

The lights automatically turn on/off according to "ENGINE START STOP" switch mode, the presence of the electronic key, whether the doors are locked/unlocked, and whether the doors are open/closed.

■ **To prevent battery discharge**

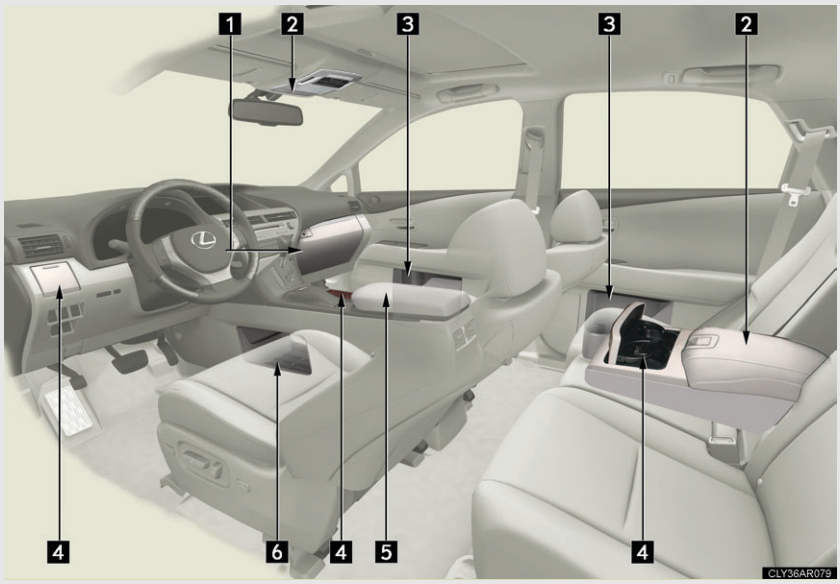
When the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned off, the lights will go off automatically after 20 minutes.

- Personal lights
- Interior lights
- Door courtesy lights
- Scuff lights (if equipped)
- Footwell lights

■ **Customization**

Settings (e.g. the time elapsed before the lights turn off) can be changed. (Customizable features →P. 622)

# List of storage features




1 Glove box
2 Auxiliary boxes (if equipped)
3 Bottle holders/door pockets
4 Cup holders
5 Console box/coin holder
6 Under tray

## CAUTION

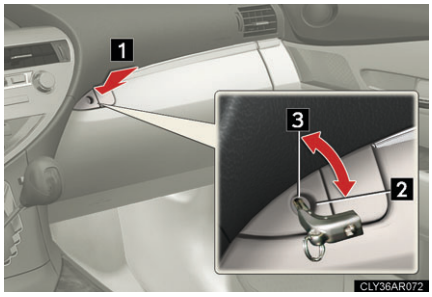
**■ Items that should not be left in the storage spaces**

Do not leave glasses, lighters or spray cans in the storage spaces, as this may cause the following when cabin temperature becomes high:

- Glasses may be deformed by heat or cracked if they come into contact with other stored items.
- Lighters or spray cans may explode. If they come into contact with other stored items, the lighter may catch fire or the spray can may release gas, causing a fire hazard.

## Glove box

The glove box can be opened by pressing the lock release button and locked and unlocked using the mechanical key.




1 Opens
2 Locks
3 Unlocks

### Power back door main switch (vehicles with a power back door)

The power back door main switch is located in the glove box. (→P. 62)

### CAUTION

**Caution while driving**

Keep the glove box closed. In the event of sudden braking or sudden swerving, an accident may occur due to an occupant being struck by the open glove box or the items stored inside.

## Bottle holders/door pockets

▶ Front




The front door pockets can be opened and closed.

▶ Rear




### CAUTION

**■ Caution while driving (front door pockets)**

Keep the door pockets closed.
Injuries may result in the event of an accident or sudden braking.

**■ Items unsuitable for the bottle holders**

Do not place anything other than bottles in the bottle holders.
Other items may be thrown out of the holders in the event of an accident or sudden braking and cause injury.

NOTICE

■ **When stowing a bottle**

Put the cap on before stowing the bottle. Do not place open bottles in the bottle holders. The contents may spill.

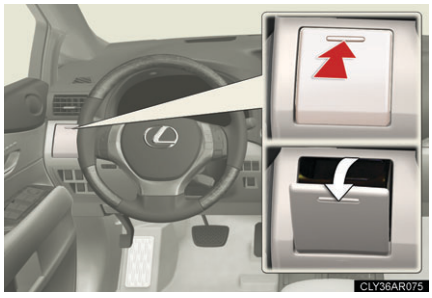
## Cup holders

▶ Front (Center console)



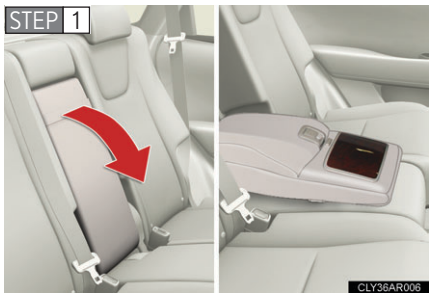

Press down the lid on the farthest side from the driver.

▶ Front (Instrument panel)

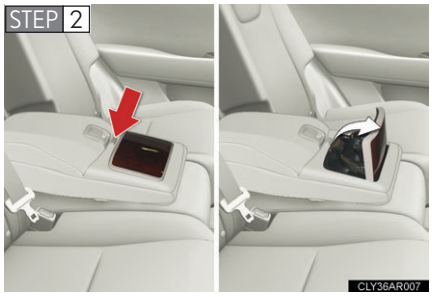



Press in and release the cup holder.

▶ Rear




Pull down the armrest.




Press down the button on the armrest.

### ■ Cup holder insert




The cup holder insert may be removed for cleaning.

## ⚠ CAUTION

**■ Items unsuitable for the cup holder**

Do not place anything other than cups or beverage cans in the cup holders. Even when the lid is closed, items must not be stored in the cup holders.
Other items may be thrown out of the holders in the event of an accident or sudden braking and cause injury. If possible, cover hot drinks to prevent burns.

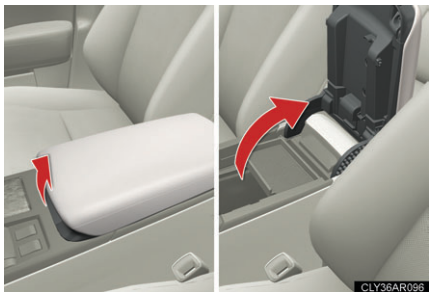
**■ To prevent burns**

Put a lid on containers with hot liquids inside.

**■ When not in use**

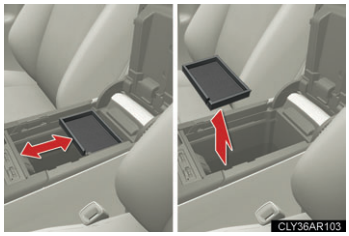
Keep the cup holders closed.
Injuries may result in the event of an accident or sudden braking.

## Console box



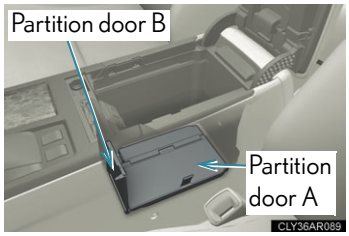

Pull up the lever to release the lock, and lift the armrest.

### Tray in the console box



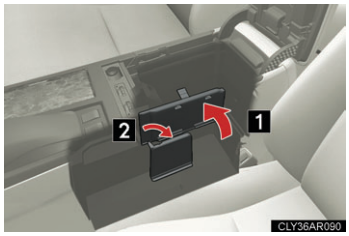

The tray slides forward/backward and can be removed.

### Console box storage space




The console box comes with partition doors.

Partition door A can be removed.




The storage space can be expanded by opening the partition doors.

1 Lift the tab

2 Pull partition door B as shown in the illustration

**CAUTION**

**Caution while driving**

Keep the console box closed.
Injuries may result in the event of an accident or sudden braking.

**NOTICE**

**Tray**

Do not insert items exceeding the height of the tray. Doing so may prevent opening and closing of the lid.

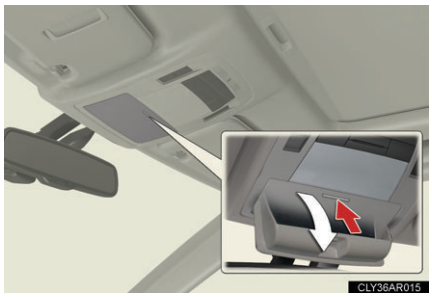
## Coin holder




Pull up the lever to release the lock, and slide the armrest.

## Auxiliary box (if equipped)

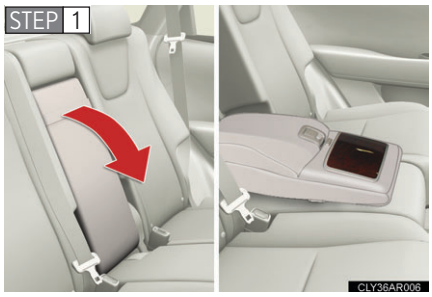
▶ Overhead



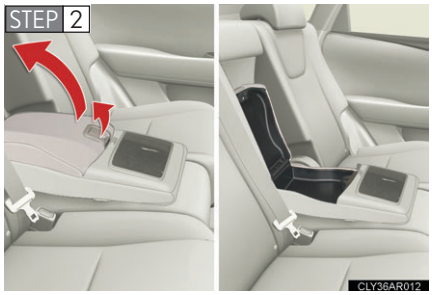

Press in the lid.

This box is useful for temporarily storing sunglasses and similar small items.

▶ Rear seat




Pull down the armrest.



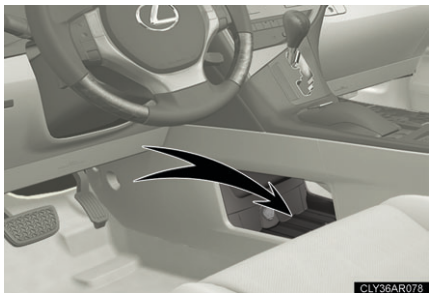

Pull up the lever to release the lock and lift the armrest.

## ⚠ CAUTION

**■ Caution while driving**

Do not leave the auxiliary box open while driving.
Items stored in the auxiliary box may fall out and cause death or serious injury in case of an accident or sudden stop.

## Under tray



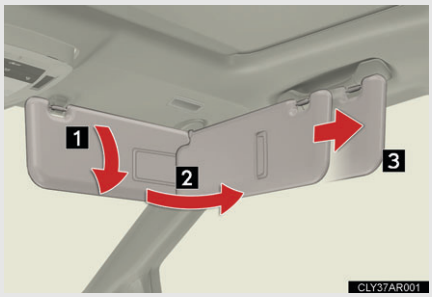

## ⚠ CAUTION

**■ Items unsuitable for the under tray**

Observe the following precautions when putting items in the under tray. Failure to do so may cause items to be thrown out of the tray in the event of sudden braking or steering. In these cases, the items may interfere with pedal operation or cause driver distraction, resulting in an accident.

- Do not store items in the tray that can easily shift or roll out.
- Do not stack items in the tray higher than the tray's edge.
- Do not put items in the tray that may protrude over the tray's edge.

# Sun visors

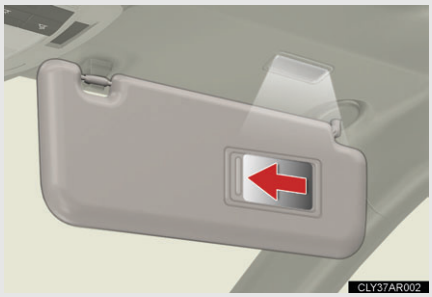



1 To set the visor in the forward position, flip it down.

2 To set the visor in the side position, flip down, unhook, and swing it to the side.

3 To use the side extender, place the visor in the side position, then slide it backward.

# Vanity mirror




Slide the cover to open.

The light turns on when the cover is opened.

### To prevent battery discharge

When the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is turned off, the lights will go off automatically after 20 minutes.

### NOTICE

### When not in use

Keep the vanity mirror closed.

# Clock

**The clock can be adjusted by pressing the buttons.**

▶ Without a navigation system




1 Adjusts the hours
2 Adjusts the minutes

▶ With a navigation system

Refer to the “Navigation System Owner’s Manual”.

---

■ **The clock is displayed when**

The clock is displayed when the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode.

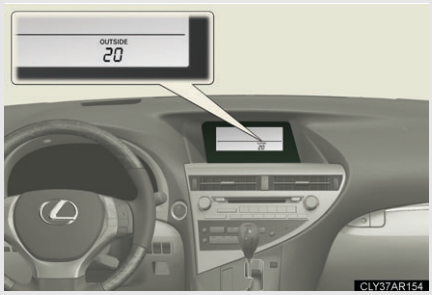
■ **When the battery is disconnected**

The time display will automatically be set to 1:00.

# Outside temperature display

**The temperature display shows temperatures within the range of -40°C (-40°F) and 50°C (122°F).**

▶ Without a navigation system




▶ With a navigation system

Refer to the “Navigation System Owner’s Manual”.

### ■ If the temperature does not appear

The system may be malfunctioning. Take your vehicle to your Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

### ■ Display

In the following situations, the correct outside temperature may not be displayed, or the display may take longer than normal to change:

- When the vehicle is stopped, or moving at low speeds (less than 25 km/h [16 mph])
- When the outside temperature has changed suddenly (at the entrance/exit of a garage, tunnel, etc.)

# Multi-display light control*

**The brightness of the multi-display can be adjusted to four levels.**




Press and release the "DISP" switch until the brightness of the display is adjusted to the desired level.

## ■ Instrument panel linked brightness control

When the headlight switch is turned on, the brightness of the multi-display will be reduced in accordance with the brightness of the instrument panel. (→P. 197)

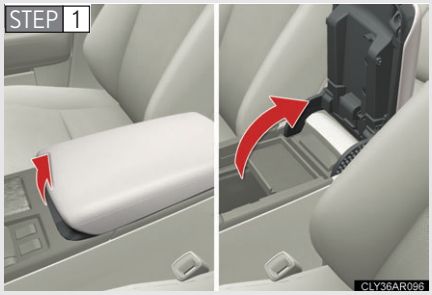
*: If equipped

# Power outlets

**The power outlets can be used for 12 V accessories that run on less than 10 A.**

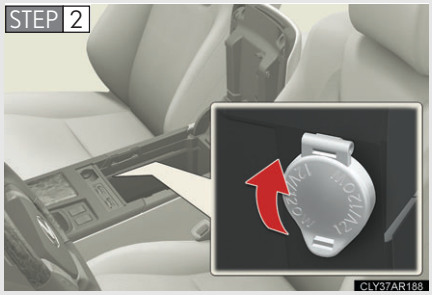
▶ Inside the console

STEP 1




Pull up the lever to release the lock, and lift the armrest.

STEP 2




Open the cover.

▶ Under tray




Open the cover.

▶ Luggage compartment




Open the cover.

■ **The power outlet can be used when**

The “ENGINE START STOP” switch is in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode.

⚠ NOTICE

■ **To avoid damaging the power outlets**

Close the power outlet lid when the power outlet is not in use.
Foreign objects or liquids that enter the power outlet may cause a short circuit.

■ **To prevent the fuse from being blown**

Do not use an accessory that uses more than 12 V 10 A.

■ **To prevent battery discharge**

Do not use the power outlets longer than necessary when the engine is off.

# Heated steering wheel*

**The heated steering wheel heats the leather portions on the left and right of the steering wheel.**




Turns the heater on/off

The indicator light comes on when the heater is operating.

### ■ The heated steering wheel can be used when

The “ENGINE START STOP” switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

### ■ To prevent battery discharge

The heated steering wheel will automatically turn off after about 30 minutes.

### ■ If the indicator light does not come on

If the indicator light does not come on when the switch is pressed, a malfunction may have occurred in the system. Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.



*: If equipped

## ⚠ CAUTION

**■ Burns**

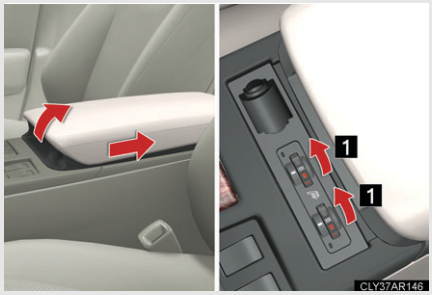
Care should be taken to prevent injury if anyone in the following categories comes in contact with the steering wheel when the heated steering wheel is on:

- Babies, small children, the elderly, the sick and the physically challenged
- Persons with sensitive skin
- Persons who are fatigued
- Persons who have taken alcohol or drugs that induce sleep (sleeping drugs, cold remedies, etc.)

# Seat heaters and ventilators*

**The seat heaters and ventilators heat the seats and maintain good airflow by blowing air from the seats.**

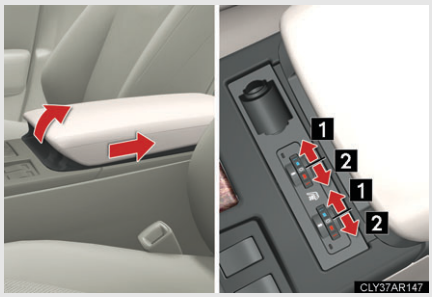
## ■ Seat heaters




1 Turns the seat heater on

The indicator light comes on.
The higher the number is, the warmer the seat becomes.

## ■ Seat heaters/ventilators




1 Turns the seat heater on

The indicator light comes on.
The higher the number is, the warmer the seat becomes.

2 Blows air from the seat

The indicator light comes on.
The higher the number is, the stronger the airflow becomes.

---

**■ Operating condition**

The “ENGINE START STOP” switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

**■ When not in use**

Set the knob at “0”. The indicator light turns off.



*: If equipped

## ⚠ CAUTION

**■ Burns**

- Use caution when seating the following persons in a seat with the seat heater on to avoid the possibility of burns:
  - Babies, small children, the elderly, the sick and the physically challenged
  - Persons with sensitive skin
  - Persons who are fatigued
  - Persons who have taken alcohol or drugs that induce sleep (sleeping drugs, cold remedies, etc.)
- Do not cover the seat with anything when using the seat heater.
  Using the seat heater with a blanket or cushion increases the temperature of the seat and may lead to overheating.

## ⚠ NOTICE

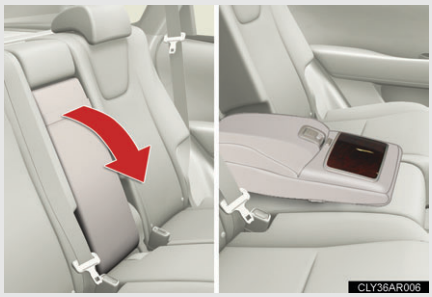
**■ To prevent damage to the seat heaters/ventilators**

Do not put heavy objects that have an uneven surface on the seat and do not stick sharp objects (needles, nails, etc.) into the seat.

**■ To prevent the battery discharged**

Do not leave the system on longer than necessary when the engine is off.

# Armrest



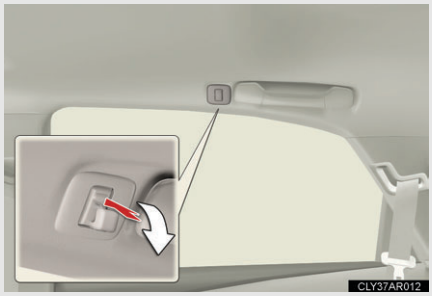

Pull the armrest down for use.

## NOTICE

**■ To prevent damage to the armrest**

Do not place too much strain on the armrest.

# Coat hooks




To use the coat hook, push it in.

## ⚠ CAUTION

**■ Items that must not be hung on the hook**

Do not hang a coat hanger or other hard or sharp object on the hook. If the SRS curtain shield airbags deploy, these items may become projectiles that cause death or serious injury.

# Assist grips

An assist grip installed on the ceiling can be used to support your body while sitting on the seat.




## ⚠ CAUTION

**■ Assist grip**

Do not use the assist grip when getting in or out of the vehicle or rising from your seat.

## ⚠ NOTICE

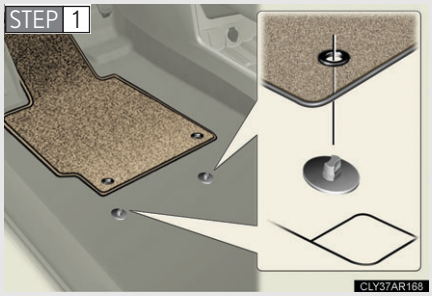
**■ To prevent damage to the assist grip**

Do not hang any heavy object or put a heavy load on the assist grip.

# Floor mat

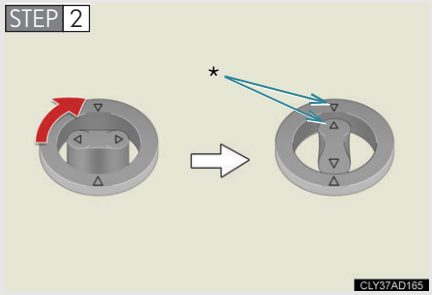
**Use only floor mats designed specifically for vehicles of the same model and model year as your vehicle. Fix them securely in place onto the carpet.**

STEP 1




Insert the retaining hooks (clips) into the floor mat eyelets.

STEP 2




Turn the upper knob of each retaining hook (clip) to secure the floor mats in place.

*: Always align the Δ marks.

The shape of the retaining hooks (clips) may differ from that shown in the illustration.

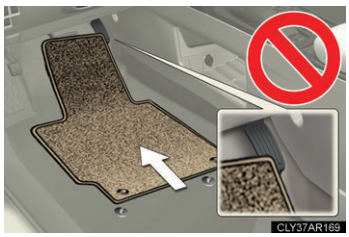
## ⚠ CAUTION

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may cause the driver's floor mat to slip, possibly interfering with the pedals while driving. An unexpectedly high speed may result or it may become difficult to stop the vehicle, leading to a serious accident.

**■ When installing the driver's floor mat**

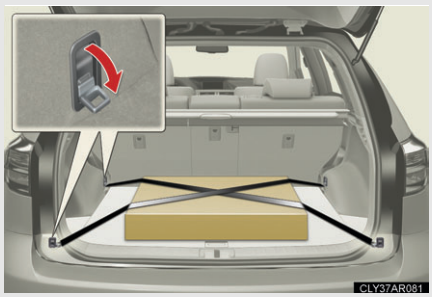
- Do not use floor mats designed for other models or different model year vehicles, even if they are Lexus Genuine floor mats.
- Only use floor mats designed for the driver's seat.
- Always install the floor mat securely using the retaining hooks (clips) provided.
- Do not use two or more floor mats on top of each other.
- Do not place the floor mat bottom-side up or upside-down.

**■ Before driving**




- Check that the floor mat is securely fixed in the correct place with all the provided retaining hooks (clips). Be especially careful to perform this check after cleaning the floor.
- With the engine stopped and the shift lever in P, fully depress each pedal to the floor to make sure it does not interfere with the floor mat.

## ■ Cargo hooks

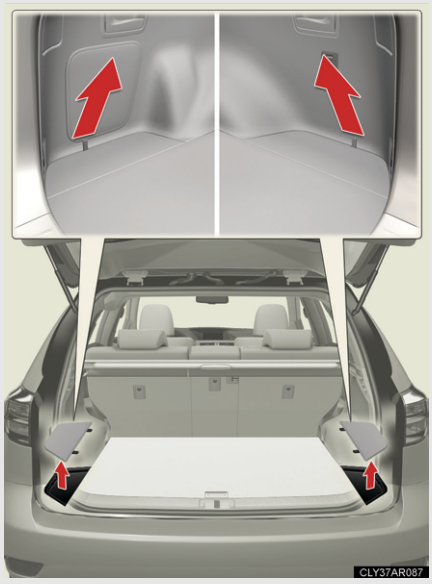



Pull the hook to use.

The cargo hooks are provided for securing loose items.

## ■ Auxiliary boxes

▶ Deck side boxes




Pull the strap upwards when lifting the cover up.

▶ Deck floor box

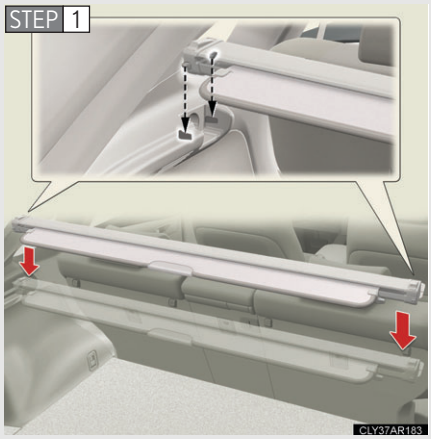





Pull the lever upwards when lifting the deck board up.

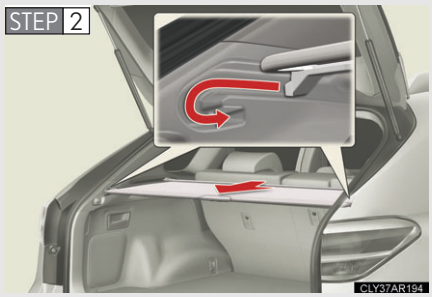
## ■ Luggage cover (if equipped)

STEP 1




Push from above until the claws on both sides are securely locked in position.

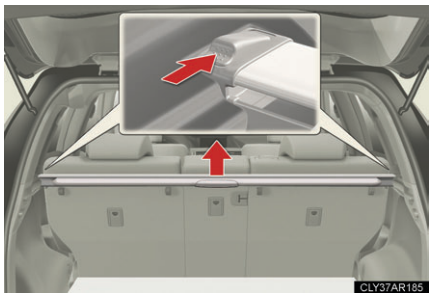
STEP 2




Pull out the luggage cover and hook it onto the anchors.

## Removing the luggage covers

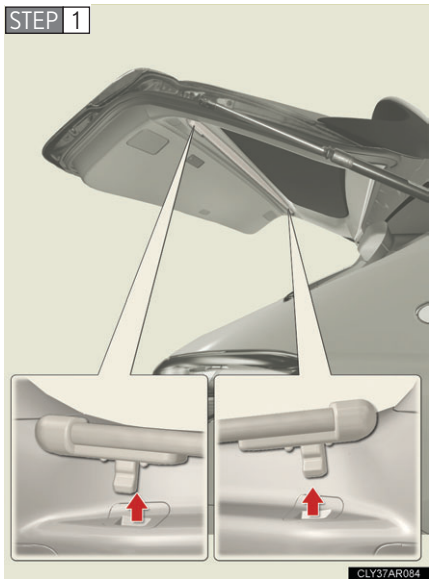
▶ Front luggage cover




Press the buttons to remove the luggage cover.

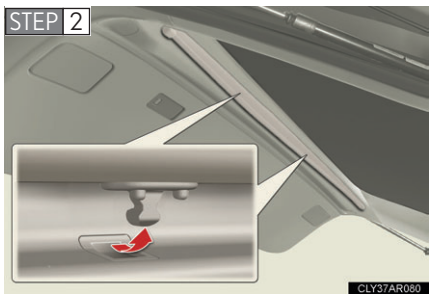
▶ Rear luggage cover

STEP 1




Detach the outer clips of the rear luggage cover from the back door.

STEP 2




Detach the inner clips of the rear luggage cover from the back door.

■ **Installing the rear luggage cover**

- Ensure that the luggage cover is in the proper installation position.
  Push the clips of the rear luggage cover into the indentions on the back door until they are locked into place.
- Check that the rear luggage cover is securely attached.

**⚠ CAUTION**

**■ When the cargo hooks are not in use**

To avoid injury, always return the cargo hooks to their stowed positions.

RX350_270_EE_48D77E.book 451 ページ ２０１４年１月２４日 金曜日 午前１０時４分

# Maintenance and care 4

**4-1. Maintenance and care**

Cleaning and protecting the vehicle exterior ..... 452

Cleaning and protecting the vehicle interior ..... 455

**4-2. Maintenance**

Maintenance requirements ..... 458

**4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance**

Do-it-yourself service precautions ..... 461

Hood ..... 465

Positioning a floor jack ..... 466

Engine compartment ..... 468

Tires ..... 483

Tire inflation pressure ..... 495

Wheels ..... 497

Air conditioning filter ..... 499

Electronic key battery ..... 501

Checking and replacing fuses ..... 504

Light bulbs ..... 516

# Cleaning and protecting the vehicle exterior

**Perform the following to protect the vehicle and maintain it in prime condition:**

- Working from top to bottom, liberally apply water to the vehicle body, wheel wells and underside of the vehicle to remove any dirt and dust.
- Wash the vehicle body using a sponge or soft cloth, such as a chamois.
- For hard-to-remove marks, use car wash soap and rinse thoroughly with water.
- Wipe away any water.
- Wax the vehicle when the waterproof coating deteriorates.

If water does not bead on a clean surface, apply wax when the vehicle body is cool.

## Automatic car washes

- Before washing the vehicle:
  - Fold the mirrors.
  - Turn off the power back door system (if equipped).
- Brushes used in automatic car washes may scratch the vehicle surface and harm your vehicle's paint.
- In certain automatic car washes, the rear spoiler may interfere with machine operation. This may prevent the vehicle from being cleaned properly or result in damage to the rear spoiler.

## High pressure car washes

- Do not allow the nozzles of the car wash to come within close proximity of the windows and the air suspension unit (if equipped).
- Before using the car wash, check that the fuel filler door on your vehicle is closed properly.

■ Aluminum wheels

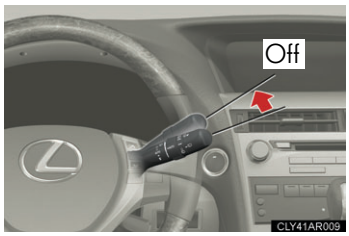
- Remove any dirt immediately by using a neutral detergent. Do not use hard brushes or abrasive cleaners. Do not use strong or harsh chemical cleaners. Use the same mild detergent and wax as used on the paint.
- Do not use detergent on the wheels when they are hot, for example after driving for long distance in the hot weather.
- Wash detergent from the wheels immediately after use.

■ Bumpers

Do not scrub with abrasive cleaners.

## ⚠ CAUTION

■ When cleaning the windshield




Set the wiper switch to off.

If the wiper switch is in AUTO, the wipers may operate unexpectedly in the following situations, and may result in hands being caught or other serious injuries and cause damage to the wiper blades.

- When the upper part of the windshield where the raindrop sensor is located is touched by hand
- When a wet rag or similar is held close to the raindrop sensor
- If something bumps against the windshield
- If you directly touch the raindrop sensor body or if something bumps into the raindrop sensor

■ Precautions regarding the exhaust pipe

Exhaust gasses cause the exhaust pipe to become quite hot.

When washing the vehicle, be careful not to touch the pipe until it has cooled sufficiently, as touching a hot exhaust pipe can cause burns.

## NOTICE

■ **To prevent paint deterioration and corrosion on the body and components (aluminum wheels etc.)**

- Wash the vehicle immediately in the following cases:
  - After driving near the sea coast
  - After driving on salted roads
  - If you see coal tar or tree sap on the paint surface
  - If dead insects, insect droppings or bird droppings are present on the paint surface
  - After driving in an area contaminated with soot, oily smoke, mine dust, iron powder or chemical substances
  - If the vehicle becomes heavily soiled by dust or mud
  - If liquids such as benzene and gasoline are spilled on the paint surface
- If the paint is chipped or scratched, have it repaired immediately.
- To prevent the wheels from corroding, remove any dirt and store in a place with low humidity when storing the wheels.

■ **Cleaning the exterior lights**

- Wash carefully. Do not use organic substances or scrub with a hard brush. This may damage the surfaces of the lights.
- Do not apply wax on the surfaces of the lights. Wax may cause damage to the lenses.

■ **To prevent damage to the windshield wiper arms**

When lifting the wiper arms away from the windshield, pull the driver side wiper arm upward first, and repeat for the passenger side. When returning the wipers to their original position, do so from the passenger side first.

■ **When using an automatic car wash**

Set the wiper switch to the off position.

If the wiper switch is in AUTO, the wipers may operate and the wiper blades may be damaged.

# Cleaning and protecting the vehicle interior

**The following procedures will help protect your vehicle's interior and keep it in top condition:**

## Protecting the vehicle interior

Remove dirt and dust using a vacuum cleaner. Wipe dirty surfaces with a cloth dampened with lukewarm water.

## Cleaning the leather areas

- Remove dirt and dust using a vacuum cleaner.
- Wipe any excess dirt and dust with a soft cloth dampened with diluted detergent.

  Use a diluted water solution of approximately 5% neutral wool detergent.
- Wring out any excess water from the cloth and thoroughly wipe off all remaining traces of detergent.
- Wipe the surface with a dry, soft cloth to remove any remaining moisture. Allow the leather to dry in a shaded ventilated area.

## Cleaning the synthetic leather areas

- Remove loose dirt using a vacuum cleaner.
- Apply a mild soap solution to the synthetic leather using a sponge or soft cloth.
- Allow the solution to soak in for a few minutes. Remove the dirt and wipe off the solution with a clean, damp cloth.

■ **Caring for leather areas**

Lexus recommends cleaning the interior of the vehicle at least twice a year to maintain the quality of the vehicle's interior.

■ **Shampooing the carpets**

There are several commercial foaming-type cleaners available. Use a sponge or brush to apply the foam. Rub in overlapping circles. Do not apply water. Excellent results are obtained by keeping the carpet as dry as possible.

■ **Seat belts**

Clean with mild soap and lukewarm water using a cloth or sponge. Also check the belts periodically for excessive wear, fraying or cuts.

**⚠ CAUTION**

■ **Water in the vehicle**

- Do not splash or spill liquid in the vehicle.
- Do not get any of the SRS components or wiring in the vehicle interior wet. (→P. 132)

  An electrical malfunction may cause the airbags to deploy or not function properly, resulting in death or severe injury.

■ **Cleaning the interior (especially instrument panel)**

Do not use polish wax or polish cleaner. The instrument panel may reflect off the windshield, obstructing the driver's view and leading to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

## NOTICE

### Cleaning detergents

- Do not use the following types of detergent, as they may discolor the vehicle interior or cause streaks or damage to painted surfaces:
  - Non-seat portions: Organic substances such as benzene or gasoline, alkaline or acidic solutions, dye, or bleach
  - Seats: Acidic solutions, such as thinner, benzene, or alcohol
- Do not use polish wax or polish cleaner. The instrument panel's or other interior part's painted surface may be damaged.

### Preventing damage to leather surfaces

Observe the following precautions to avoid damage to and deterioration of leather surfaces:

- Remove any dust or dirt from leather surfaces immediately.
- Do not expose the vehicle to direct sunlight for extended periods of time. Park the vehicle in the shade, especially during summer.
- Do not place items made of vinyl, plastic, or that contain wax on the upholstery, as they may stick to the leather surface if the vehicle interior heats up significantly.

### Water on the floor

Do not wash the vehicle floor with water.
Vehicle systems such as the audio system may be damaged if water comes into contact with electrical components under the floor of vehicle. Water may also cause the body to rust.

### Cleaning the inside of the rear window

- Do not use glass cleaner to clean the rear window, as this may cause damage to the rear window defogger heater wires or antenna. Use a cloth dampened with lukewarm water to gently wipe the window clean. Wipe the window in strokes running parallel to the heater wires or antenna.
- Be careful not to scratch or damage the heater wires or antenna.

# Maintenance requirements

**To ensure safe and economical driving, day-to-day care and regular maintenance are essential. Lexus recommends the following maintenance:**

## Scheduled maintenance

Scheduled maintenance should be performed at specified intervals according to the maintenance schedule.

For full details of your maintenance schedule, read the “Lexus Service Booklet” or “Lexus Warranty Booklet”.

## Do-it-yourself maintenance

What about do-it-yourself maintenance?

Many maintenance items are easy to do yourself if you have a little mechanical ability and a few basic automotive tools.

Note, however, that some maintenance tasks require special tools and skills. These are best performed by qualified technicians. Even if you're an experienced do-it-yourself mechanic, we recommend that repairs and maintenance be conducted by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional. Any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer will keep a record of maintenance, which could be useful should you ever require Warranty Service. Should you choose to select a qualified and equipped professional other than an authorized Lexus repairer to service or maintain your vehicle, we recommend that you request that a record of maintenance be kept.

### Where to go for maintenance service?

In order to maintain your vehicle in the best possible condition, Lexus recommends that maintenance service operations as well as other inspections and repairs be carried out by authorized Lexus dealers or repairers or other duly qualified and equipped professionals. For repairs and services covered by your warranty, please visit an authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, who will use genuine Lexus parts in repairing any difficulties you may encounter. There can also be advantages in utilizing authorized Lexus dealers or repairers for non-warranty repairs and services, as members of the Lexus network will be able to expertly assist you with any difficulties you may encounter.

Your Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional will perform all of the scheduled maintenance on your vehicle reliably and economically due to their experience with Lexus vehicles.

### Does your vehicle need repairs?

Be on the alert for changes in performance and sounds, and visual tip-offs that indicate service is needed. Some important clues are:

- Engine missing, stumbling or pinging
- Appreciable loss of power
- Strange engine noises
- A fluid leak under the vehicle (However, water dripping from the air conditioning system after use is normal.)
- Change in exhaust sound (This may indicate a dangerous carbon monoxide leak. Drive with the windows open and have the exhaust system checked immediately.)
- Flat-looking tires, excessive tire squeal when cornering, uneven tire wear
- Vehicle pulls to one side when driving straight on a level road
- Strange noises related to suspension movement
- Loss of brake effectiveness, spongy feeling brake pedal, pedal almost touches the floors, vehicle pulls to one side when braking
- Engine coolant temperature continually higher than normal

If you notice any of these clues, take your vehicle to any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional, as soon as possible. Your vehicle may need adjustment or repair.

## ⚠ CAUTION

**■ If your vehicle is not properly maintained**

Improper maintenance could result in serious damage to the vehicle and possible serious injury or death.

**■ Handling of the battery**

Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds which are known to cause brain damage. Wash your hands after handling.
(→P. 479)

# Do-it-yourself service precautions

**If you perform maintenance by yourself, be sure to follow the correct procedures as given in these sections.**

| Items | | Parts and tools |
|---|---|---|
| Battery condition | (→P. 479) | • Warm water<br>• Baking soda<br>• Grease<br>• Conventional wrench (for terminal clamp bolts)<br>• Distilled water |
| Engine coolant level | (→P. 477) | • "Toyota Super Long Life Coolant" or a similar high quality ethylene glycol-based non-silicate, non-amine, non-nitrite and non-borate coolant with long-life hybrid organic acid technology. "Toyota Super Long Life Coolant" is premixed with 50% coolant and 50% deionized water.<br>• Funnel (used only for adding coolant) |
| Engine oil level | (→P. 472) | • "Toyota Genuine Motor Oil" or equivalent<br>• Rag or paper towel<br>• Funnel (used only for adding engine oil) |
| Fuses | (→P. 504) | • Fuse with same amperage rating as original |

| Items | Parts and tools |
|---|---|
| Light bulbs (→P. 516) | • Bulb with same number and wattage rating as original<br>• Phillips-head screwdriver<br>• Flathead screwdriver<br>• Wrench |
| Radiator and condenser (→P. 478) | — |
| Tire inflation pressure (→P. 495) | • Tire pressure gauge<br>• Compressed air source |
| Washer fluid (→P. 482) | • Water or washer fluid containing antifreeze (for winter use)<br>• Funnel (used only for adding water or washer fluid) |

## ⚠ CAUTION

The engine compartment contains many mechanisms and fluids that may move suddenly, become hot, or become electrically energized. To avoid death or serious injury, observe the following precaution:

**■ When working on the engine compartment**

- Keep hands, clothing and tools away from the moving fans and engine drive belt.
- Be careful not to touch the engine, radiator, exhaust manifold, etc. right after driving as they may be hot. Oil and other fluids may also be hot.
- Do not leave anything that may burn easily, such as paper and rags, in the engine compartment.
- Do not smoke, cause sparks or expose an open flame to fuel or the battery. Fuel and battery fumes are flammable.
- Be extremely cautious when working on the battery. It contains poisonous and corrosive sulfuric acid.
- Take care because brake fluid can harm your hands or eyes and damage painted surfaces.
  If fluid gets on your hands or in your eyes, flush the affected area with clean water immediately.

  If you still experience discomfort, consult a doctor.

**■ When working near the electric cooling fans or radiator grille**

Be sure the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is off.
With the "ENGINE START STOP" switch in IGNITION ON mode, the electric cooling fans may automatically start to run if the air conditioning is on and/or the coolant temperature is high. (→P. 478)

**■ Safety glasses**

Wear safety glasses to prevent flying or falling material, fluid spray, etc. from getting in your eyes

NOTICE

■ **If you remove the air cleaner filter**

Driving with the air cleaner filter removed may cause excessive engine wear due to dirt in the air.

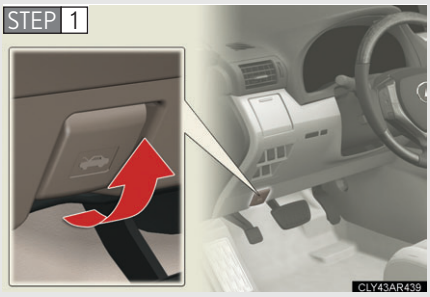
■ **If the fluid level is low or high**

It is normal for the brake fluid level to go down slightly as the brake pads wear or when the fluid level in the accumulator is high.
If the reservoir needs frequent refilling, it may indicate a serious problem.

# Hood

**Release the lock from the inside of the vehicle to open the hood.**

STEP 1




Pull the hood lock release lever.

The hood will pop up slightly.

STEP 2




Pull up the hood catch and lift the hood.

## ⚠ CAUTION

**■ Pre-driving check**

Check that the hood is fully closed and locked.
If the hood is not locked properly, it may open while the vehicle is in motion and cause an accident, which may result in death or serious injury.

# Positioning a floor jack

When raising your vehicle with a floor jack, position the jack correctly. Improper placement may damage your vehicle or cause injury.

## Front




## Rear



## ⚠ CAUTION

**■ When raising your vehicle**

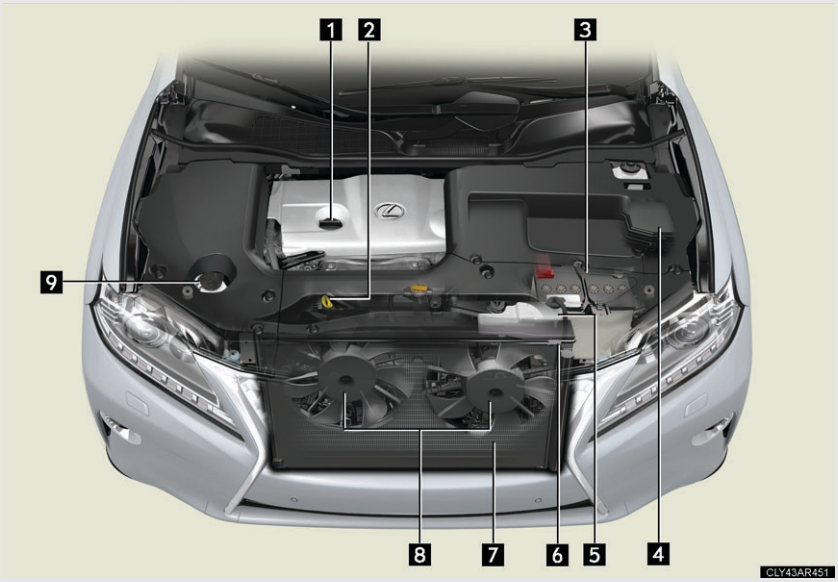
Make sure to observe the following precautions to reduce the possibility of death or serious injury:




- Lift up the vehicle using a floor jack such as the one shown in the illustration.
- When using a floor jack, follow the instructions of the manual provided with the jack.
- Do not use the jack that was supplied with your vehicle.
- Do not put any part of your body underneath the vehicle when it is supported only by the floor jack.
- Always use floor jack and/or automotive jack stands on a solid, flat, level surface.
- Do not start the engine while the vehicle is supported by the floor jack.
- Stop the vehicle on level, firm ground, firmly set the parking brake and shift the shift lever to P.
- Make sure to set the floor jack properly at the jack point.
  Raising the vehicle with an improperly positioned floor jack will damage the vehicle and may cause the vehicle to fall off the floor jack.
- Do not raise the vehicle while someone is in the vehicle.
- When raising the vehicle, do not place any objects on top of or underneath the floor jack.
- Vehicles with electronically modulated air suspension:
  Be sure to turn off the height control and stop the engine. Otherwise, the vehicle height may change due to the automatic leveling function. (→P. 256)

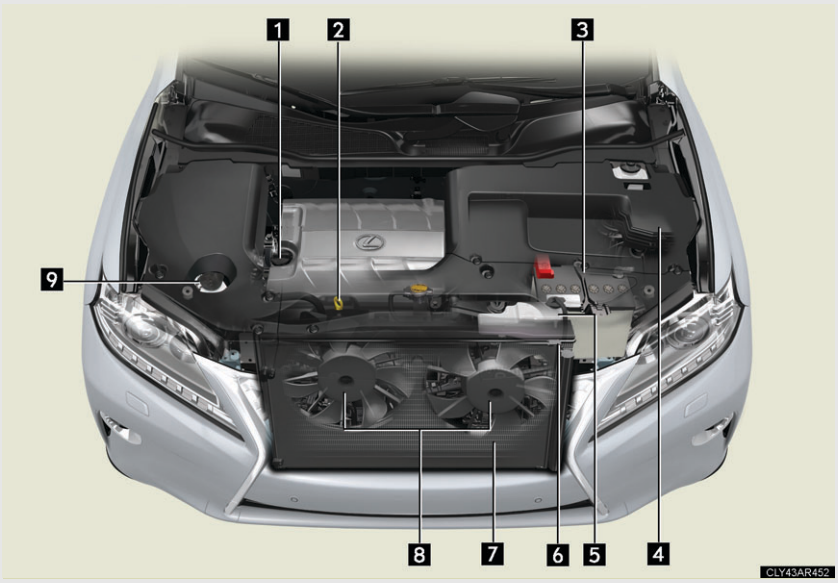
# Engine compartment

▶ RX270




1 Engine oil filler cap (→P. 474)
2 Engine oil level dipstick (→P. 472)
3 Battery (→P. 479)
4 Fuse box (→P. 504)
5 Engine coolant reservoir (→P. 477)
6 Condenser (→P. 478)
7 Radiator (→P. 478)
8 Electric cooling fans
9 Washer fluid tank (→P. 482)

▶ RX350

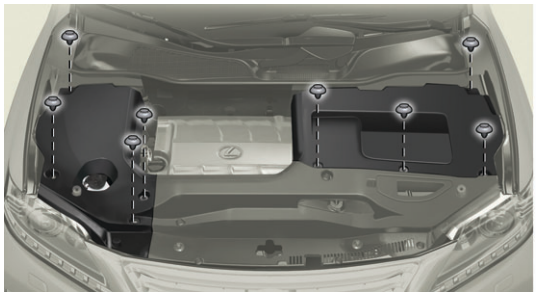


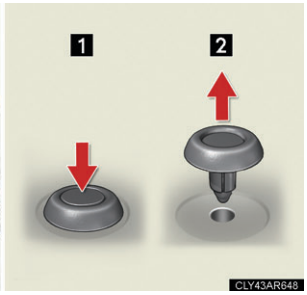

1 Engine oil filler cap (→P. 474)
2 Engine oil level dipstick (→P. 472)
3 Battery (→P. 479)
4 Fuse box (→P. 504)
5 Engine coolant reservoir (→P. 477)
6 Condenser (→P. 478)
7 Radiator (→P. 478)
8 Electric cooling fans
9 Washer fluid tank (→P. 482)

## Engine compartment cover

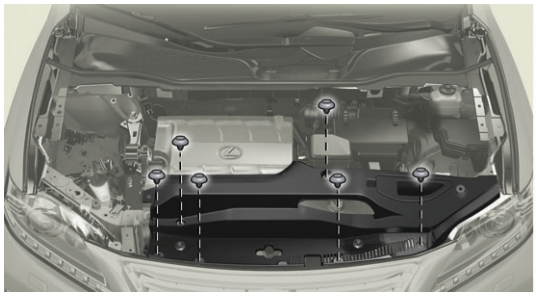
### Removing the engine compartment covers

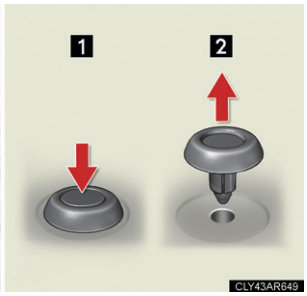
▶ Outside



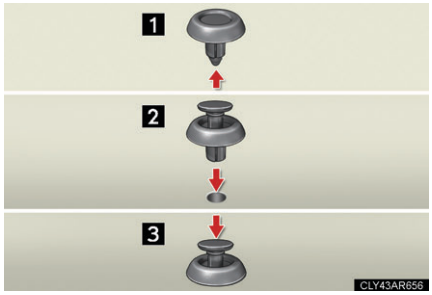



▶ Front






### Installing the clips

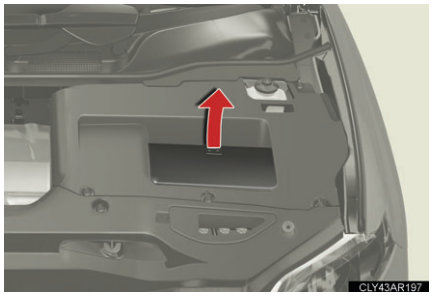


NOTICE

■ **After installing an engine compartment cover**

Make sure that the cover is securely installed in its original position.

## Battery cover




Removing the battery cover

NOTICE

■ **When installing the battery cover**

Securely install the cover over the battery. Failure to do so may cause water to enter the engine compartment when it rains or the vehicle is washed, resulting in a malfunction.

## Engine oil

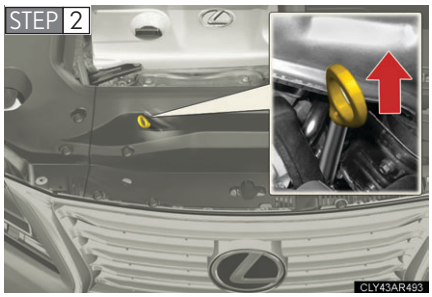
With the engine at operating temperature and turned off, check the oil level on the dipstick.

### Checking the engine oil

STEP 1 Park the vehicle on level ground. After warming up the engine and turning it off, wait more than 5 minutes for the oil to drain back into the bottom of the engine.

▶ RX270

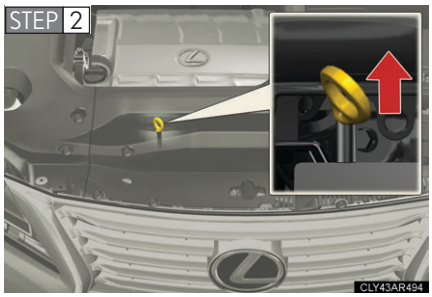
STEP 2




Holding a rag under the end, pull the dipstick out.

▶ RX350

STEP 2



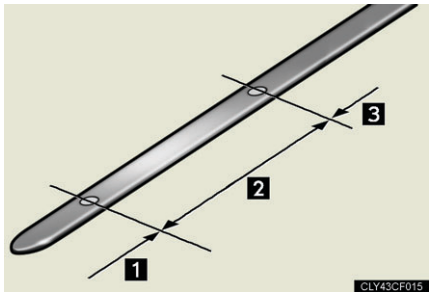

Holding a rag under the end, pull the dipstick out.

STEP 3 Wipe the dipstick clean.

STEP 4 Reinsert the dipstick fully.

STEP 5 Holding a rag under the end, pull the dipstick out and check the oil level.

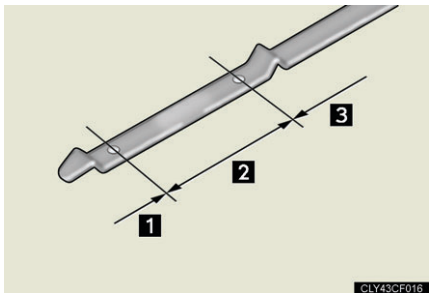
▶ Flat dipstick




1 Low
2 Normal
3 Excessive

The shape of the dipstick may differ depending on the type of vehicle or engine.

▶ Non-flat dipstick




1 Low
2 Normal
3 Excessive

The shape of the dipstick may differ depending on the type of vehicle or engine.

STEP 6 Wipe the dipstick and reinsert it fully.

## Adding engine oil

▶ RX270




If the oil level is below or near the low level mark, add engine oil of the same type as that already in the engine.

▶ RX350




If the oil level is below or near the low level mark, add engine oil of the same type as that already in the engine.

Make sure to check the oil type and prepare the items needed before adding oil.

| | |
|---|---|
| Oil grade | →P. 610 |
| Oil quantity (Low→Full) | 1.5 L (1.6 qt., 1.3 Imp. qt.) |
| Items | Clean funnel |

STEP 1 Remove the oil filler cap.

STEP 2 Add engine oil slowly, checking the dipstick.

STEP 3 Install the filler cap, turning it clockwise.

### Engine oil consumption

A certain amount of engine oil will be consumed while driving. In the following situations, oil consumption may increase, and engine oil may need to be refilled in between oil maintenance intervals.

- When the engine is new, for example directly after purchasing the vehicle or after replacing the engine
- If low quality oil or oil of an inappropriate viscosity is used
- When driving at high engine speeds or with a heavy load, when towing, or when driving while accelerating or decelerating frequently
- When leaving the engine idling for a long time, or when driving frequently through heavy traffic

**⚠ CAUTION**

### Used engine oil

- Used engine oil contains potentially harmful contaminants which may cause skin disorders such as inflammation or skin cancer, so care should be taken to avoid prolonged and repeated contact. To remove used engine oil from your skin, wash thoroughly with soap and water.
- Dispose of used oil and filters only in a safe and acceptable manner. Do not dispose of used oil and filters in household trash, in sewers or onto the ground.
  Call any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional, service station or auto parts store for information concerning recycling or disposal.
- Do not leave used engine oil within the reach of children.

NOTICE

■ **To prevent serious engine damage**

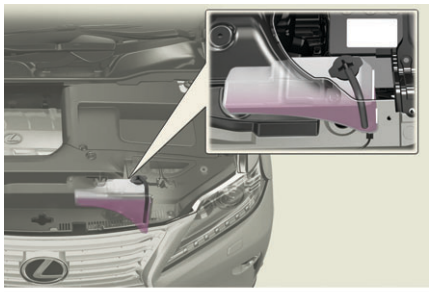
Check the oil level on a regular basis.

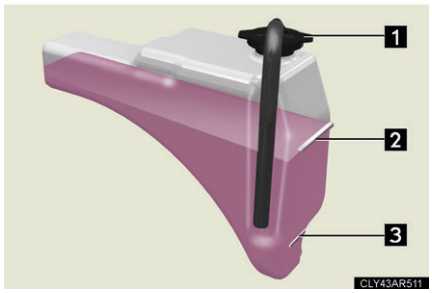
■ **When replacing the engine oil**

- Be careful not to spill engine oil on the vehicle components.
- Avoid overfilling, or the engine could be damaged.
- Check the oil level on the dipstick every time you refill the vehicle.
- Be sure the engine oil filler cap is properly tightened.

## Engine coolant

The coolant level is satisfactory if it is between the “FULL” and “LOW” lines on the reservoir when the engine is cold.






1 Reservoir cap
2 “FULL” line
3 “LOW” line

If the level is on or below the “LOW” line, add coolant up to the “FULL” line. (→P. 598)

### Coolant selection

Only use “Toyota Super Long Life Coolant” or a similar high quality ethylene glycol based non-silicate, non-amine, non-nitrite, and non-borate coolant with long-life hybrid organic acid technology.

“Toyota Super Long Life Coolant” is a mixture of 50% coolant and 50% deionized water. (Minimum temperature: -35°C [-31°F])

For more details about coolant, contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

■ **If the coolant level drops within a short time after replenishing**

Visually check the radiator, hoses, radiator cap, drain cock and water pump.
If you cannot find a leak, have any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional, test the cap and check for leaks in the cooling systems.

**⚠ CAUTION**

■ **When the engine is hot**

Do not remove the radiator cap.
The cooling system may be under pressure and may spray hot coolant if the cap is removed, causing serious injuries, such as burns.

**⚠ NOTICE**

■ **When adding engine coolant**

Coolant is neither plain water nor straight antifreeze. The correct mixture of water and antifreeze must be used to provide proper lubrication, corrosion protection and cooling. Be sure to read the antifreeze or coolant label.

■ **If you spill coolant**

Be sure to wash it off with water to prevent damage to parts or paint.

## Radiator and condenser

Check the radiator and condenser and clear away any foreign objects.
If any of the above parts are extremely dirty or you are not sure of their condition, have your vehicle checked by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

**⚠ CAUTION**

■ **When the engine is hot**

Do not touch the radiator or condenser as they may be hot and cause serious injuries, such as burns.

## Battery

Check the battery as follows.

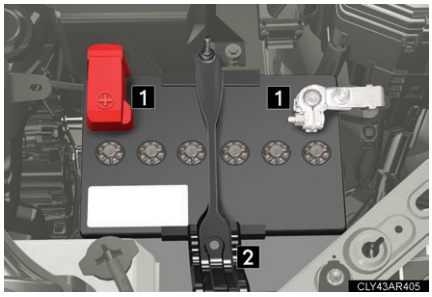
### Caution symbol

The meanings of each caution symbol on the top of the battery are as follows:

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
|  | No smoking, no naked flames, no sparks |  | Battery acid |
|  | Shield eyes |  | Note operating instructions |
|  | Keep away from children |  | Explosive gas |

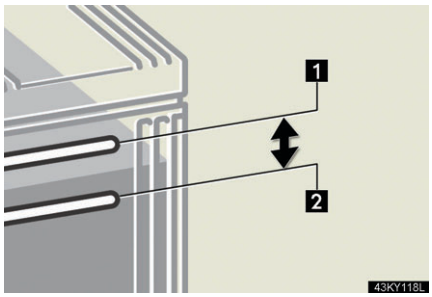
### Battery exterior

Make sure that the battery terminals are not corroded and that there are no loose connections, cracks, or loose clamps.




1 Terminals
2 Hold-down clamp

## Checking battery fluid




Check that the level is between "UPPER LEVEL" and "LOWER LEVEL".

1 "UPPER LEVEL"

2 "LOWER LEVEL"

If the fluid level is at or below "LOWER LEVEL", add distilled water.

### Before recharging

When recharging, the battery produces hydrogen gas which is flammable and explosive. Therefore, observe the following before recharging:

- If recharging with the battery installed on the vehicle, be sure to disconnect the ground cable.
- Make sure the power switch on the charger is off when connecting and disconnecting the charger cables to the battery.

### After recharging/reconnecting the battery

In some cases, the engine may not start. Follow the procedure below to initialize the system.

STEP 1 Shift the shift lever to P, and turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch off.

STEP 2 Open and close any of the doors.

STEP 3 Start the engine. (If the engine does not start first time, repeat the procedure.)

If the engine will not start even after multiple attempts at the above method, contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

## ⚠ CAUTION

**■ Chemicals in the battery**

Batteries contain poisonous and corrosive sulfuric acid and may produce hydrogen gas which is flammable and explosive. To reduce the risk of death or serious injury, take the following precautions while working on or near the battery:

- Do not cause sparks by touching the battery terminals with tools.
- Do not smoke or light a match near the battery.
- Avoid contact with eyes, skin and clothes.
- Never inhale or swallow electrolyte.
- Wear protective safety glasses when working near the battery.
- Keep children away from the battery.

**■ Where to safely charge the battery**

Always charge the battery in an open area. Do not charge the battery in a garage or closed room where there is insufficient ventilation.

**■ Emergency measures regarding electrolyte**

- If electrolyte gets in your eyes
  Flush your eyes with clean water for at least 15 minutes and get immediate medical attention. If possible, continue to apply water with a sponge or cloth while traveling to the nearest medical facility.
- If electrolyte gets on your skin
  Wash the affected area thoroughly. If you feel pain or burning, get medical attention immediately.
- If electrolyte gets on your clothes
  It can soak through clothing on to your skin. Immediately take off the clothing and follow the procedure above if necessary.
- If you accidentally swallow electrolyte
  Drink a large quantity of water or milk. Get emergency medical attention immediately.

NOTICE

■ When recharging the battery

Never recharge the battery while the engine is running. Also, be sure all accessories are turned off.

## Washer fluid




If any washer does not work or the warning message appears on the multi-information display, the washer tank may be empty. Add washer fluid.

CAUTION

■ When adding washer fluid

Do not add washer fluid when the engine is hot or running as washer fluid contains alcohol and may catch fire if spilled on the engine etc.

NOTICE

■ Do not use any fluid other than washer fluid

Do not use soapy water or engine antifreeze instead of washer fluid.
Doing so may cause streaking on the vehicle's painted surfaces.

■ Diluting washer fluid

Dilute washer fluid with water as necessary.
Refer to the freezing temperatures listed on the label of the washer fluid bottle.

**Replace or rotate tires in accordance with maintenance schedules and treadwear.**

## Checking tires



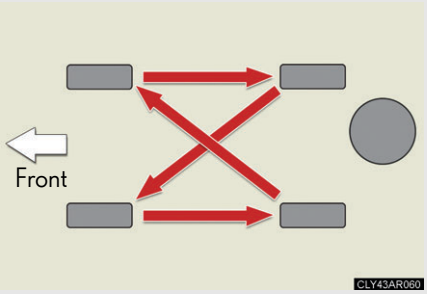

1 New tread
2 Treadwear indicator
3 Worn tread

The location of treadwear indicators is shown by the "TWI" or "△" marks, etc., molded on the sidewall of each tire.

Check spare tire condition and pressure if not rotated.

## Tire rotation

▶ Vehicles with a compact spare tire




Rotate the tires in the order shown.

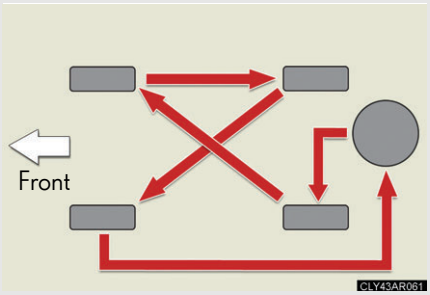
To equalize tire wear and help extend tire life, Lexus recommends that you rotate your tires approximately at the following intervals:

2WD models:
Every 10000 km (6000 miles)

AWD models:
Every 5000 km (3000 miles)

Vehicles with tire pressure warning system: Do not fail to initialize the tire pressure warning system after tire rotation.

▶ Vehicles with a full-size spare tire




Rotate the tires in the order shown.

To equalize tire wear and help extend tire life, Lexus recommends that you rotate your tires approximately at the following intervals:

2WD models:
Every 10000 km (6000 miles)

AWD models:
Every 5000 km (3000 miles)

Vehicles with tire pressure warning system: Do not fail to initialize the tire pressure warning system after tire rotation.

### The tire pressure warning system (if equipped)

Your Lexus is equipped with a tire pressure warning system that uses tire pressure warning valves and transmitters to detect low tire inflation pressure before serious problems arise. (→P. 546)

## Installing tire pressure warning valves and transmitters

When replacing tires or wheels, tire pressure warning valves and transmitters must also be installed.

When new tire pressure warning valves and transmitters are installed, new tire pressure warning valve and transmitter ID codes must be registered in the tire pressure warning computer and the tire pressure warning system must be initialized. Have tire pressure warning valve and transmitter ID codes registered by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional. (→P. 486)

## Initializing the tire pressure warning system

### The tire pressure warning system must be initialized in the following circumstances:

- When rotating the tires
- When the tire inflation pressure is changed such as when changing travelling speed or load weight
- When changing the tire size

When the tire pressure warning system is initialized, the current tire inflation pressure is set as the benchmark pressure.

### How to initialize the tire pressure warning system

STEP 1 Park the vehicle in a safe place and turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch off.

While the vehicle is moving, initialization is not performed.

STEP 2 Adjust the tire inflation pressure to the specified cold tire inflation pressure level. (→P. 617)

Make sure to adjust the tire pressure to the specified cold tire inflation pressure level. The tire pressure warning system will operate based on this pressure level.

STEP 3 Turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch to IGNITION ON mode.

STEP 4




Press and hold the tire pressure warning reset switch until the tire pressure warning light blinks slowly 3 times.

STEP 5 Wait for a few minutes in “ENGINE START STOP” switch to on, and then turn the “ENGINE START STOP” switch off.

## Registering ID codes

The tire pressure warning valve and transmitter is equipped with a unique ID code. When replacing a tire pressure warning valve and transmitter, it is necessary to register the ID code. Have the ID code registered by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

■ **When to replace your vehicle's tires**

Tires should be replaced if:

- You have tire damage such as cuts, splits, cracks deep enough to expose the fabric, and bulges indicating internal damage
- A tire goes flat repeatedly or cannot be properly repaired due to the size or location of a cut or other damage

If you are not sure, consult with any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

■ **Replacing tires and wheels**

If the ID code of the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter is not registered, the tire pressure warning system will not work properly. After driving for about 10 minutes, the tire pressure warning light blinks for 1 minute and stays on to indicate a system malfunction.

■ **Tire life**

- Standard tire over 6 years old must be checked by a qualified technician even if they have seldom or never been used or damage is not obvious.
- The compact spare tire could be deformed gradually in the long term even if you don't use it. Be sure to have the compact spare tire checked by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional if it is over 5 years.

■ **Routine tire inflation pressure checks**

The tire pressure warning system does not replace routine tire inflation pressure checks. Make sure to check tire inflation pressure as part of your routine of daily vehicle checks.

■ **If the tread on snow tires wears down 4 mm (0.16 in.)**

The effectiveness of the tires as snow tires is lost

■ **The initialization operation**

- Make sure to carry out initialization after adjusting the tire inflation pressure. Also, make sure the tires are cold before carrying out initialization or tire inflation pressure adjustment.
- If you have accidentally turned the "ENGINE START STOP" switch off during initialization, it is not necessary to press the reset switch again as initialization will restart automatically when the "ENGINE START STOP" switch has been turned to IGNITION ON mode for the next time.
- If you accidentally press the reset switch when initialization is not necessary, adjust the tire inflation pressure to the specified level when the tires are cold, and conduct initialization again.

■ **Warning performance of the tire pressure warning system**

The warning of the tire pressure warning system will change in accordance with driving conditions. For this reason, the system may give a warning even if the tire pressure does not reach a low enough level, or if the pressure is higher than the pressure that was adjusted to when the system was initialized.

■ **When initialization of the tire pressure warning system has failed**

Initialization can be completed in a few minutes. However, in the following cases, the settings have not been recorded and the system will not operate properly. If repeated attempts to record tire inflation pressure settings are unsuccessful, have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

- When operating the tire pressure warning reset switch, the tire pressure warning light does not blink 3 times.
- After carrying out the initialization procedure, the tire pressure warning light blinks for 1 minute then stays on after driving for 10 minutes.

## Certification for tire pressure warning system

CE The latest "DECLARATION of CONFORMITY" (DoC) is available at the following address:
http://www.globaldenso.com/en/products/oem/index.html

Hereby, DENSO CORPORATION declares that this 13BDX is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.

DENSO CORPORATION vakuuttaa täten että 13BDX tyyppinen laite on direktiivin 1999/5/EY oleellisten vaatimusten ja sitä koskevien direktiivin muiden ehtojen mukainen.

Hierbij verklaart DENSO CORPORATION dat het toestel 13BDX in overeenstemming is met de essentiële eisen en de andere relevante bepalingen van richtlijn 1999/5/EG.

Par la présente DENSO CORPORATION déclare que l'appareil 13BDX est conforme aux exigences essentielles et aux autres dispositions pertinentes de la directive 1999/5/CE.

Härmed intygar DENSO CORPORATION att denna 13BDX står I överensstämmelse med de väsentliga egenskapskrav och övriga relevanta bestämmelser som framgår av direktiv 1999/5/EG.

Undertegnede DENSO CORPORATION erklærer herved, at følgende udstyr 13BDX overholder de væsentlige krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.

Hiermit erklärt DENSO CORPORATION, dass sich das Gerät 13BDX in Übereinstimmung mit den grundlegenden Anforderungen und den übrigen einschlägigen Bestimmungen der Richtlinie 1999/5/EG befindet.

ΜΕ ΤΗΝ ΠΑΡΟΥΣΑ DENSO CORPORATION ΔΗΛΩΝΕΙ ΟΤΙ 13BDX ΣΥΜΜΟΡΦΩΝΕΤΑΙ ΠΡΟΣ ΤΙΣ ΟΥΣΙΩΔΕΙΣ ΑΠΑΙΤΗΣΕΙΣ ΚΑΙ ΤΙΣ ΛΟΙΠΕΣ ΣΧΕΤΙΚΕΣ ΔΙΑΤΑΞΕΙΣ ΤΗΣ ΟΔΗΓΙΑΣ 1999/5/ΕΚ.

Con la presente DENSO CORPORATION dichiara che questo 13BDX è conforme ai requisiti essenziali ed alle altre disposizioni pertinenti stabilite dalla direttiva 1999/5/CE.

Por medio de la presente DENSO CORPORATION declara que el 13BDX cumple con los requisitos esenciales y cualesquiera otras disposiciones aplicables o exigibles de la Directiva 1999/5/CE.

DENSO CORPORATION declara que este 13BDX está conforme com os requisitos essenciais e outras disposições da Directiva 1999/5/CE.

Hawnhekk, DENSO CORPORATION, jiddikjara li dan 13BDX jikkonforma mal-ħtiġijiet essenzjali u ma provvedimenti oħrajn relevanti li hemm fid-Dirrettiva 1999/5/EC.

Käesolevaga kinnitab DENSO CORPORATION seadme 13BDX vastavust direktiivi 1999/5/EÜ põhinõuetele ja nimetatud direktiivist tulenevatele teistele asjakohastele sätetele.

Alulírott, DENSO CORPORATION nyilatkozom, hogy a 13BDX megfelel a vonatkozó alapvető követelményeknek és az 1999/5/EC irányelv egyéb előírásainak.

DENSO CORPORATION týmto vyhlasuje, že 13BDX spĺňa základné požiadavky a všetky príslušné ustanovenia Smernice 1999/5/ES.

DENSO CORPORATION tímto prohlašuje, že tento 13BDX je ve shodě se základními požadavky a dalšími příslušnými ustanoveními směrnice 1999/5/ES.

DENSO CORPORATION izjavlja, da je ta 13BDX v skladu z bistvenimi zahtevami in ostalimi relevantnimi določili direktive 1999/5/ES.

Šiuo DENSO CORPORATION deklaruoja, kad šis 13BDX atitinka esminius reikalavimus ir kitas 1999/5/EB Direktyvos nuostatas.

Ar šo DENSO CORPORATION deklarē, ka 13BDX atbilst Direktīvas 1999/5/EK būtiskajām prasībām un citiem ar to saistītajiem noteikumiem.

Niniejszym DENSO CORPORATION oświadcza, że 13BDX jest zgodny z zasadniczymi wymogami oraz pozostałymi stosownymi postanowieniami Dyrektywy 1999/5/EC.

Hér með lýsir DENSO CORPORATION yfir því að 13BDX er í samræmi við grunnkröfur og aðrar kröfur, sem gerðar eru í tilskipun 1999/5/EC.

DENSO CORPORATION erklærer herved at utstyret 13BDX er i samsvar med de grunnleggende krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.

С настоящето, DENSO CORPORATION, декларира, че 13BDX е в съответствие със съществените изисквания и другите приложими разпоредби на Директива 1999/5/ЕС.

Prin prezenta, DENSO CORPORATION, declară că aparatul 13BDX este in conformitate cu cerinţele esenţiale şi cu alte prevederi pertinente ale Directivei 1999/5/CE.

Ovim, DENSO CORPORATION, izjavljuje da ovaj 13BDX je usklađen sa bitnim zahtjevima i drugim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC.

Ovim DENSO CORPORATION, izjavljuje da je 13BDX u sklau s bitnim zahtjevima i drugim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC i Pravilnika o RiTT opremi (NN 25/2012).

Ovim, DENSO CORPORATION, deklariše da je13BDX u skladu sa osnovnim zahtevima i ostalim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC.

The latest "DECLARATION of CONFORMITY "(DoC) is available at the following:
DoC address : http://www.pacific-ind.co.jp/eng/products/car/tpms/doc/

CE 0891

Hereby, PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD., declares that this PMV-C210 is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.

PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD. vakuuttaa täten että PMV-C210 tyyppinen laite on direktiivin 1999/5/EY oleellisten vaatimusten ja sitä koskevien direktiivin muiden ehtojen mukainen.

Hierbij verklaart PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD. dat het toestel PMV-C210 in overeenstemming is met de essentiële eisen en de andere relevante bepalingen van richtlijn 1999/5/EG.

Par la présente PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD. déclare que l'appareil PMV-C210 est conforme aux exigences essentielles et aux autres dispositions pertinentes de la directive 1999/5/CE.

Härmed intygar PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD. att denna PMV-C210 står I överensstämmelse med de väsentliga egenskapskrav och övriga relevanta bestämmelser som framgår av direktiv 1999/5/EG.

Undertegnede PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD. erklærer herved, at følgende udstyr PMV-C210 overholder de væ sentlige krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.

Hiermit erklärt PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD., dass sich das Gerät PMV-C210 in Übereinstimmung mit den grundlegenden Anforderungen und den übrigeneinschlägigen Bestimmungen der Richtlinie 1999/5/EG befindet.

ΜΕ ΤΗΝ ΠΑΡΟΥΣΑ PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD. ΔΗΛΩΝΕΙ ΟΤΙ PMV-C210 ΣΥΜΜΟΡΦΩΝΕΤΑΙ ΠΡΟΣ ΤΙΣ ΟΥΣΙΩ ΔΕΙΣ ΑΠΑΙΤΗΣΕΙΣ ΚΑΙ ΤΙΣ ΛΟΙΠΕΣ ΣΧΕΤΙΚΕΣ ΔΙΑΤΑΞΕΙΣ ΤΗΣ ΟΔΗΓΙΑΣ 1999/5/ΕΚ.

Con la presente PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD. dichiara che questo PMV-C210 è conforme ai requisiti essenziali ed alle altre disposizioni pertinenti stabilite dalla direttiva 1999/5/CE.

Por medio de la presente PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD. declara que el PMV-C210 cumple con los requisitos esenciales y cualesquiera otras disposiciones aplicables o exigibles de la Directiva 1999/5/CE.

PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD. declara que este PMV-C210 está conforme com os requisitos essenciais e outras disposições da Directiva 1999/5/CE.

Hawnhekk, PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD., jiddikjara li dan PMV-C210 jikkonforma mal-ħtiġijiet essenzjali u ma provvedimenti oħrajn relevanti li hemm fid-Dirrettiva 1999/5/EC.

Käesolevaga kinnitab PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD. seadme PMV-C210 vastavust direktiivi 1999/5/EÜ põhinõuetele ja nimetatud direktiivist tulenevatele teistele asjakohastele sätetele.

Alulírott, PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD. nyilatkozom, hogy a PMV-C210 megfelel a vonatkozó alapvetõ követelmé nyeknek és az 1999/5/EC irányelv egyéb elõírásainak.

PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD. týmto vyhlasuje, že PMV-C210 spĺňa základné požiadavky a všetky príslušné ustanovenia Smernice 1999/5/ES.

PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD. tímto prohlašuje, že tento PMV-C210 je ve shodě se základními požadavky a dalšími p říslušnými ustanoveními směrnice 1999/5/ES.

PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD. izjavlja, da je ta PMV-C210 v skladu z bistvenimi zahtevami in ostalimi relevantnimi določili direktive 1999/5/ES.

Šiuo PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD. deklaruoja, kad šis PMV-C210 atitinka esminius reikalavimus ir kitas 1999/5/EB Direktyvos nuostatas.

Ar šo PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD. deklarē, ka PMV-C210 atbilst Direktīvas 1999/5/EK būtiskajām prasībām un citiem ar to saistītajiem noteikumiem.

Niniejszym PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD. oświadcza, że PMV-C210 jest zgodny z zasadniczymi wymogami oraz pozostałymi stosownymi postanowieniami Dyrektywy 1999/5/EC.

Hér með lýsir PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD. yfir því að PMV-C210 er í samræmi við grunnkröfur og aðrar kröfur, sem gerðar eru í tilskipun 1999/5/EC.

PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD. erklærer herved at utstyret PMV-C210 er i samsvar med de grunnleggende krav og ø vrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.

С настоящето, PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD., декларира, че PMV-C210 е в съответствие със съществените и зисквания и другите приложими разпоредби на Директива 1999/5/EC.

Prin prezenta, PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD., declară că aparatul PMV-C210 este in conformitate cu cerinţele esenţ iale şi cu alte prevederi pertinente ale Directivei 1999/5/CE.

Ovim , PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD., izjavljuje da ovaj PMV-C210 je usklađen sa bitnim zahtjevima i drugim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC.

Ovim PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD., izjavljuje da je PMV-C210 u sklau s bitnim zahtjevima i drugim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC.

Me anë të kësaj, PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO, LTD., Deklaron se ky PMV-C210 është në përputhje me kërkesat themelore dhe dispozitat e tjera përkatëse të direktivës 1999/5/EC.

## ⚠ CAUTION

**■ When inspecting or replacing tires**

Observe the following precautions to prevent accidents.
Failure to do so may cause damage to parts of the drive train, as well as dangerous handling characteristics, which may lead to an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

- Do not mix tires of different makes, models or tread patterns.
  Also, do not mix tires of remarkably different treadwear.
- Do not use tire sizes other than those recommended by Lexus.
- Do not mix differently constructed tires (radial, bias-belted or bias-ply tires).
- Do not mix summer, all season and snow tires.
- Do not use tires that have been used on another vehicle.
  Do not use tires if you do not know how they were used previously.
- Do not tow if your vehicle has a compact spare tire installed.

**■ When initializing the tire pressure warning system**

Do not push the tire pressure warning reset switch without first adjusting the tire inflation pressure to the specified level. Otherwise, the tire pressure warning light may not come on even if the tire inflation pressure is low, or it may come on when the tire inflation pressure is actually normal.

NOTICE

■ **Repairing or replacing tires, wheels, tire pressure warning valves, transmitters and tire valve caps**

- When removing or fitting the wheels, tires or the tire pressure warning valves and transmitter, contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional as the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters may be damaged if not handled correctly.
- When replacing tire valve caps, do not use tire valve caps other than those specified. The cap may become stuck.

■ **To avoid damage to the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters**

When a tire is repaired with liquid sealants, the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter may not operate properly. If a liquid sealant is used, contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional or other qualified service shop as soon as possible. Make sure to replace the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter when replacing the tire. (→P. 484)

■ **Driving on rough roads**

Take particular care when driving on roads with loose surfaces or potholes.
These conditions may cause losses in tire inflation pressure, reducing the cushioning ability of the tires. In addition, driving on rough roads may cause damage to the tires themselves, as well as the vehicle's wheels and body.

■ **If tire inflation pressure of each tire becomes low while driving**

Do not continue driving, or your tires and/or wheels may be ruined.

# Tire inflation pressure

**Make sure to maintain proper tire inflation pressure. Tire inflation pressure should be checked at least once per month. However, Lexus recommends that tire inflation pressure be checked once every two weeks.**
(→P. 617)

## ■ Effects of incorrect tire inflation pressure

Driving with incorrect tire inflation pressure may result in the following:

- Reduced fuel efficiency
- Reduced driving comfort and tire life
- Reduced safety
- Damage to the drive train

If a tire needs frequent inflating, have it checked by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

## ■ Instructions for checking tire inflation pressure

When checking tire inflation pressure, observe the following:

- Check only when the tires are cold.
  If your vehicle has been parked for at least 3 hours or has not been driven for more than 1.5 km or 1 mile, you will get an accurate cold tire inflation pressure reading.
- Always use a tire pressure gauge.
  The appearance of the tire can be misleading. In addition, tire inflation pressure that is even just a few pounds off can degrade ride and handling.
- Do not reduce tire inflation pressure after driving. It is normal for tire inflation pressure to be higher after driving.
- Never exceed the vehicle capacity weight.
  Passengers and luggage weight should be placed so that the vehicle is balanced.

## ⚠ CAUTION

**■ Proper inflation is critical to save tire performance**

Keep your tires properly inflated. Otherwise, the following conditions may occur and result in an accident causing death or serious injury:

- Excessive wear
- Uneven wear
- Poor handling
- Possibility of blowouts resulting from overheated tires
- Poor sealing of the tire bead
- Wheel deformation and/or tire separation
- A greater possibility of tire damage from road hazards

## ⚠ NOTICE

**■ When inspecting and adjusting tire inflation pressure**

Be sure to put the tire valve caps back on.
Without the valve caps, dirt or moisture could get into the valve and cause air leakage, which could result in an accident. If the caps are lost, replace them as soon as possible.

# Wheels

**If a wheel is bent, cracked or heavily corroded, it should be replaced. Otherwise, the tire may separate from the wheel or cause a loss of handling control.**

## Wheel selection

When replacing wheels, care should be taken to ensure that they are equivalent to those removed in load capacity, diameter, rim width, and inset*.

Replacement wheels are available at any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

*: Conventionally referred to as “offset”.

Lexus does not recommend using the following:

- Wheels of different sizes or types
- Used wheels
- Bent wheels that have been straightened

## Aluminum wheel precautions

- Use only Lexus wheel nuts and wrenches designed for use with your aluminum wheels.
- When rotating, repairing or changing your tires, check that the wheel nuts are still tight after driving 1600 km (1000 miles).
- Be careful not to damage the aluminum wheels when using tire chains.
- Use only Lexus genuine balance weights or equivalent and a plastic or rubber hammer when balancing your wheels.

■ **When replacing wheels (vehicles with tire pressure warning system)**

The wheels of your vehicle are equipped with tire pressure warning valves and transmitters that allow the tire pressure warning system to provide advanced warning in the event of a loss in tire inflation pressure. Whenever wheels are replaced, tire pressure warning valves and transmitters must be installed. (→P. 485)

**⚠ CAUTION**

■ **When replacing wheels**

- Do not use wheels that are a different size from those recommended in the Owner's Manual, as this may result in loss of handling control.
- Never use an inner tube in a leaking wheel which is designed for a tubeless tire. Doing so may result in an accident, causing death or serious injury.

**⚠ NOTICE**

■ **Replacing tire pressure warning valves and transmitters (vehicles with tire pressure warning system)**

- Because tire repair or replacement may affect the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters, make sure to have tires serviced by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional or other qualified service shop. In addition, make sure to purchase your tire pressure warning valves and transmitters at any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
- Ensure that only genuine Lexus wheels are used on your vehicle.
  Tire pressure warning valves and transmitters may not work properly with non-genuine wheels.

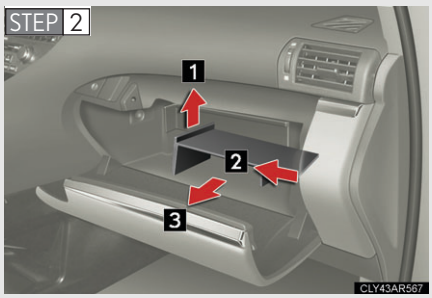
# Air conditioning filter

**The air conditioning filter must be changed regularly to maintain air conditioning efficiency.**

## Removal method

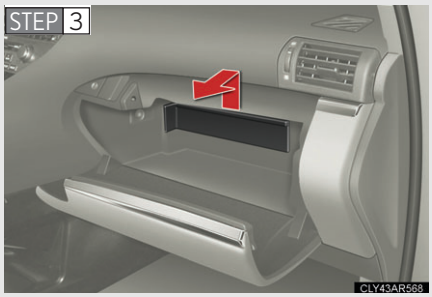
STEP 1 Turn the “ENGINE START STOP” switch off.

STEP 2



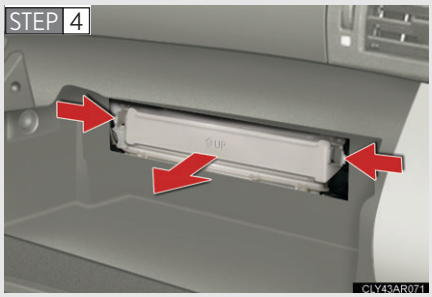

Open the glove box. Lift and remove the partition.

STEP 3



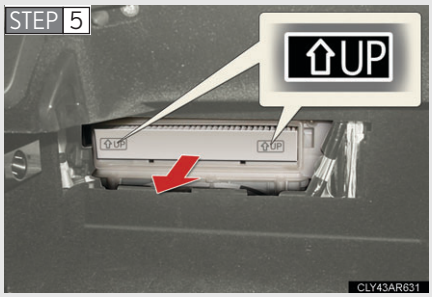

Remove the glove box cover.

STEP 4




Remove the filter cover.

STEP 5




Remove the air conditioning filter and replace it with a new one.

The "↑UP" mark shown on the filter should be pointing up.

### Checking interval

Inspect and replace the air conditioning filter according to the maintenance schedule. In dusty areas or areas with heavy traffic flow, early replacement may be required. (For scheduled maintenance information, please refer to the "Lexus Service Booklet" or "Lexus Warranty Booklet".)

### If air flow from the vents decreases dramatically

The filter may be clogged. Check the filter and replace if necessary.

**NOTICE**

### To prevent damage to the system

When using the air conditioning system, make sure that a filter is always installed.

# Electronic key battery

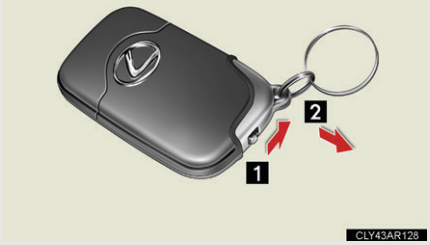
Replace the battery with a new one if it is discharged.

## You will need the following items:

- Flathead screwdriver
- Small Phillips-head screwdriver
- Lithium battery (CR1632)

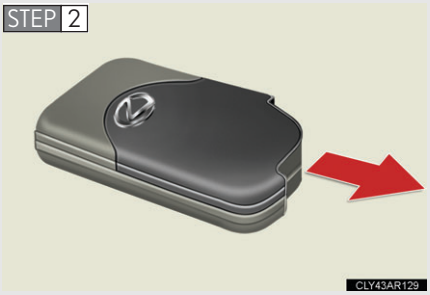
## Replacing the battery

STEP 1



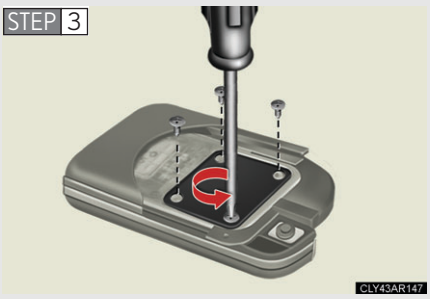

Take out the mechanical key.

STEP 2



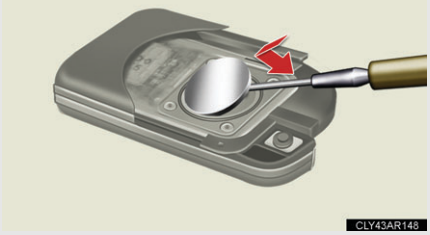

Remove the cover.

STEP 3




Remove the battery cover bolts and remove the battery cover.

STEP 4




Remove the depleted battery.

Insert a new battery with the "+" terminal facing up.

### Use a CR1632 lithium battery

- Batteries can be purchased at any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional, local electrical appliance shops or camera stores.
- Replace only with the same or equivalent type recommended by the manufacturer.
- Dispose of used batteries according to the local laws.

### If the electronic key battery is discharged

The following symptoms may occur:

- The smart entry & start system and wireless remote control will not function properly.
- The operational range is reduced.

### When the card key battery needs to be replaced (if equipped)

The battery for the card key is available only at Lexus dealers. Your Lexus dealer can replace the battery for you.

## ⚠ CAUTION

**■ Removed battery and other parts**

These parts are small and if swallowed by a child, they can cause choking. Keep away from children. Failure to do so could result in death or serious injury.

**■ Certification for the smart entry & start system**

RISK OF EXPLOSION IF BATTERY IS REPLACED BY AN INCORRECT TYPE. DISPOSE OF USED BATTERIES ACCORDING TO THE INSTRUCTIONS.

## ⚠ NOTICE

**■ For normal operation after replacing the battery**

Observe the following precautions to prevent accidents:

- Always work with dry hands.
  Moisture may cause the battery to rust.
- Do not touch or move any other components inside the remote control.
- Do not bend either of the battery terminals.

# Checking and replacing fuses

**If any of the electrical components do not operate, a fuse may have blown. If this happens, check and replace the fuses as necessary.**

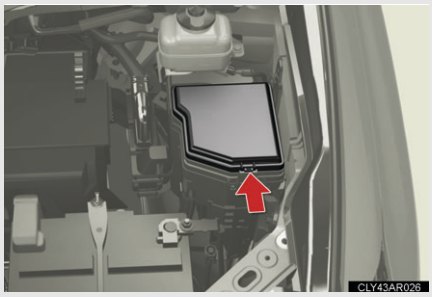
STEP 1 Turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch off.

STEP 2 After a system failure, see "Fuse layout and amperage ratings" for details about which fuse to check. (→P. 507)

STEP 3 Remove the engine compartment cover. (→P. 470)

STEP 4 Open the fuse box cover.

▶ Engine compartment



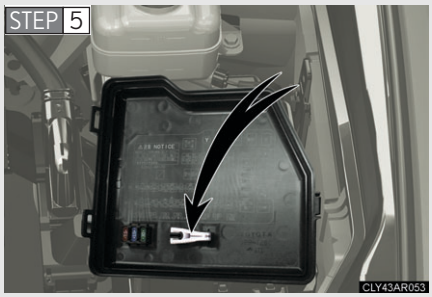

Push the tab in and lift the lid off.

▶ Driver's side instrument panel




Remove the lid.

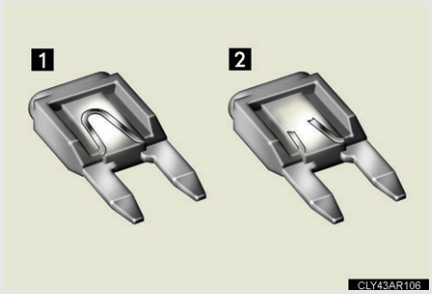
STEP 5




Remove the fuse with the pull-out tool.

STEP 6 Check if the fuse has blown.

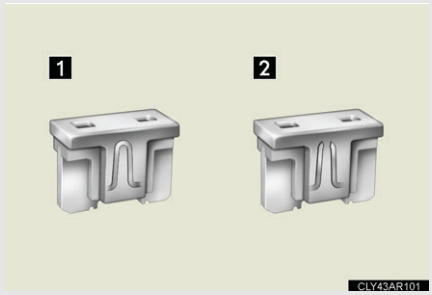
▶ Type A




1 Normal fuse
2 Blown fuse

Replace the blown fuse with a new fuse of an appropriate amperage rating. The amperage rating can be found on the fuse box lid.

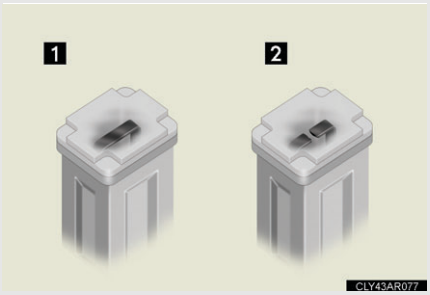
▶ Type B




1 Normal fuse
2 Blown fuse

Replace the blown fuse with a new fuse of an appropriate amperage rating. The amperage rating can be found on the fuse box lid.

▶ Type C

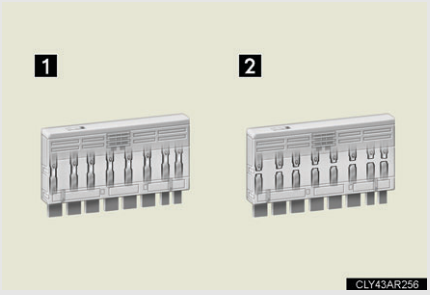



1 Normal fuse

2 Blown fuse

Replace the blown fuse with a new fuse of an appropriate amperage rating. The amperage rating can be found on the fuse box lid.

▶ Type D

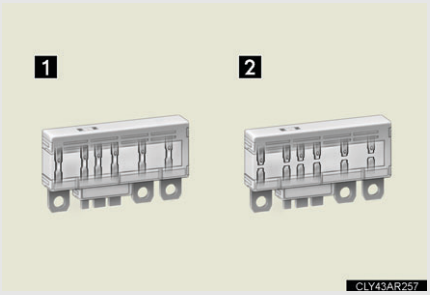



1 Normal fuse

2 Blown fuse

Replace the blown fuse with a new fuse of an appropriate amperage rating. The amperage rating can be found on the fuse box lid.

▶ Type E



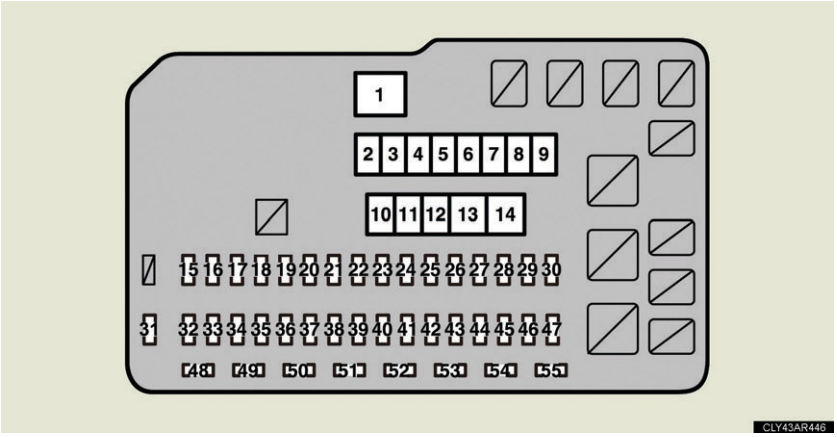

1 Normal fuse

2 Blown fuse

Replace the blown fuse with a new fuse of an appropriate amperage rating. The amperage rating can be found on the fuse box lid.

## Fuse layout and amperage ratings

### Engine compartment




| | Fuse | Ampere | Circuit |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | RDI FAN NO. 1 | 80 A | Electric cooling fans |
| 2 | RR DEF | 50 A | Rear window defogger |
| 3 | AIR SUS | 50 A | Electronically modulated air suspension |
| 4 | HEATER | 50 A | Air conditioning system |
| 5 | SPARE | 30 A | ——— |
| 6 | SPARE | 40 A | ——— |
| 7 | ABS NO. 2 | 30 A | Vehicle stability control |
| 8 | H-LP CLN | 30 A | Headlight cleaner |
| 9 | PBD | 30 A | Power back door |
| 10 | ST | 30 A | Starter system |
| 11 | PD | 50 A | A/F, H-LP RH HI, H-LP LH LO, H-LP RH LO, H-LP LH HI, HORN, S-HORN, EFI MAIN NO. 2 |

| Fuse | | Ampere | Circuit |
|---|---|---|---|
| 12 | ABS NO. 1 | 50 A | Vehicle stability control |
| 13 | EPS | 60 A | Electric power steering system |
| 14 | ALT | 140 A | IG1 MAIN, TOWING BATT, DEICER, TOWING, STOP, RDI FAN NO. 1, FILTER, RR DEF, AIR SUS, HEATER, ABS NO. 2, H-LP CLN, PBD, ECU-IG1 NO. 1, ECU-IG1 NO. 3, GAUGE NO. 1, ECU-IG1 NO. 2, EPS, FR WIP, RR WIP, FR WASH, RR WASH, RH S-HTR, LH S-HTR, TAIL, PANEL, D/L ALT B, FR FOG, FR DOOR, FL DOOR, RR DOOR, RL DOOR, PSB, P-SEAT LH, P-SEAT RH, TI&TE, FUEL OPN, DR LOCK, OBD, RR FOG, S/ROOF, 4WD, INVERTER, ECU-ACC, P/POINT, CIG, RADIO NO. 2 |
| 15 | AMP1 | 30 A | Audio system |
| 16 | EFI MAIN | 30 A | Multiport fuel injection system/ sequential multiport fuel injection system, electronic controlled transmission, EFI NO. 1, EFI NO. 2, F/PMP |
| 17 | AMP2 | 30 A | Audio system |
| 18 | IG2 MAIN | 30 A | IGN, GAUGE NO. 2, ECU IG 2 |
| 19 | IP J/B | 25 A | Power door lock system |
| 20 | STR LOCK | 20 A | Starter system |
| 21 | RAD NO. 3 | 15 A | Meters and gauges, navigation system, audio system |
| 22 | HAZ | 15 A | Emergency flashers |

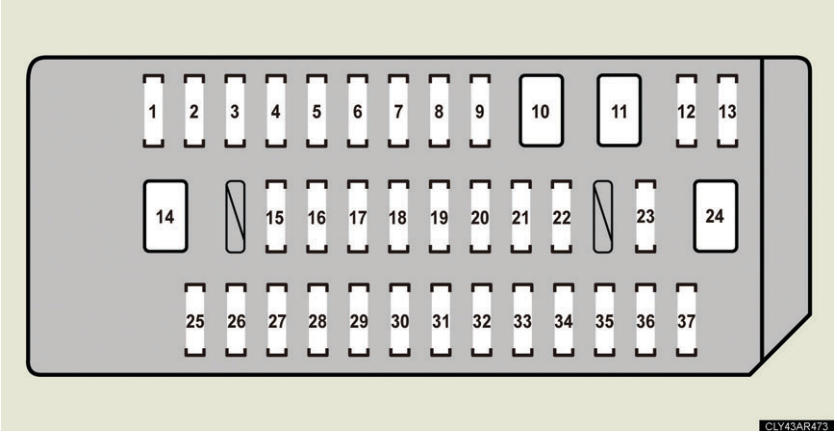
| Fuse | | Ampere | Circuit |
|---|---|---|---|
| 23 | ETCS | 10 A | Multiport fuel injection system/ sequential multiport fuel injection system |
| 24 | RAD NO. 1 | 10 A | Audio system, navigation system |
| 25 | AM2 | 7.5 A | Starter system |
| 26 | ECU-B NO. 2 | 7.5 A | Air conditioning system, audio system, vehicle stability control system, power windows |
| 27 | MAYDAY/TEL | 7.5 A | MAYDAY/TEL |
| 28 | IMMOBI | 7.5 A | IMMOBI |
| 29 | ALT-S | 7.5 A | Charging system |
| 30 | DRL | 7.5 A | Daytime running light system |
| 31 | IGN | 10 A | Multiport fuel injection system/ sequential multiport fuel injection system |
| 32 | DOME | 10 A | Vanity mirror lights, luggage compartment lights, interior lights, personal lights, door courtesy lights, footwell lights, scuff lights |
| 33 | ECU-B NO. 1 | 10 A | Tilt and telescopic steering, multiplex communication system, meters and gauges, driving position memory, power seats, power back door, head-up display, outside rear view mirror, steering sensor |
| 34 | EFI NO. 1 | 10 A | Multiport fuel injection system/ sequential multiport fuel injection system, electronic controlled transmission |

| Fuse | | Ampere | Circuit |
|---|---|---|---|
| 35 | A/F*1 | 10 A | Multiport fuel injection system/ sequential multiport fuel injection system |
| | WIP-S*2 | 7.5 A | Cruise control |
| 36 | ECU-IG1 NO. 4 | 10 A | Adaptive front-lighting system, air conditioning system, rear window defogger, vehicle stability control system, electric cooling fans |
| 37 | BK/UP LP | 7.5 A | Back-up lights |
| 38 | ECU-IG1 NO. 5 | 15 A | Air conditioning system |
| 39 | ECU-IG1 NO. 6 | 10 A | Adaptive front-lighting system, head light cleaner, cruise control, electronically modulated air suspension, vehicle stability control, air conditioning system |
| 40 | EFI NO. 2 | 10 A | Multiport fuel injection system/ sequential multiport fuel injection system |
| 41 | F/PMP*2 | 15 A | Multiport fuel injection system/ sequential multiport fuel injection system |
| 42 | DEICER | 25 A | Windshield wipers and washer |
| 43 | STOP | 7.5 A | Vehicle stability control, vehicle dynamics integrated management, stop lights, electronic controlled transmission, multiport fuel injection system/sequential multiport fuel injection system, shift lock control system, starter system |
| 44 | TOWING BATT | 20 A | Trailer battery |

| Fuse | | Ampere | Circuit |
|---|---|---|---|
| 45 | TOWING | 30 A | Trailer lights |
| 46 | FILTER | 10 A | ——— |
| 47 | IG1 MAIN | 30 A | ECU-IG1 NO. 6, BK/UP LP, ECU-IG1 NO. 5, ECU-IG1 NO. 4 |
| 48 | H-LP RH HI | 15 A | Right-hand headlight (high beam) |
| 49 | H-LP LH HI | 15 A | Left-hand headlight (high beam) |
| 50 | BIXENON | 10 A | ——— |
| 51 | H-LP RH LO | 15 A | Right-hand headlight (low beam), manual headlight leveling system |
| 52 | H-LP LH LO | 15 A | Left-hand headlight (low beam) |
| 53 | HORN | 10 A | Horn |
| 54 | EFI MAIN NO. 2*1 | 20 A | Multiport fuel injection system/ sequential multiport fuel injection system |
| | A/F*2 | | |
| 55 | S-HORN | 7.5 A | S-HORN |

*1: RX270
*2: RX350

## Driver's side instrument panel




| Fuse | | Ampere | Circuit |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | P/POINT | 15 A | Power outlet |
| 2 | ECU-ACC | 10 A | Navigation system, air conditioning system, audio system, multiplex communication system, multi-information display, head-up display |
| 3 | CIG | 15 A | Power outlet |
| 4 | RADIO NO. 2 | 7.5 A | Audio system, navigation system |
| 5 | GAUGE NO. 1 | 10 A | Emergency flashers, navigation system, head-up display, air conditioning system, charging system |
| 6 | ECU-IG1 NO. 3 | 10 A | Outside rear view mirror, windshield wipers and washer, seat heaters, moon roof, air conditioning system |

| Fuse | | Ampere | Circuit |
|---|---|---|---|
| 7 | ECU-IG1 NO. 1 | 10 A | Multiplex communication system, steering sensor, shift lock control system, tilt and telescopic steering, automatic transmission system, power back door, pre-crash safety system, vehicle stability control system, tire pressure warning system |
| 8 | S/ROOF | 30 A | Moon roof |
| 9 | FUEL OPN | 7.5 A | Fuel filler door opener |
| 10 | PSB | 30 A | Pre-crash seat belt |
| 11 | TI & TE | 30 A | Tilt and telescopic steering system |
| 12 | DR LOCK | 10 A | DR LOCK |
| 13 | FR FOG | 7.5 A | Front fog lights |
| 14 | P-SEAT LH | 30 A | Power seat (left-side) |
| 15 | 4WD | 7.5 A | AWD system |
| 16 | INVERTER | 20 A | ——— |
| 17 | RR FOG | 7.5 A | Rear fog lights |
| 18 | D/L ALT B | 25 A | Multiplex communication system, power door lock system, power back door |
| 19 | EPS | 10 A | Electric power steering system |
| 20 | ECU-IG1 NO. 2 | 10 A | Lexus parking assist-sensor, AWD system, pre-crash seat belt |

| Fuse | | Ampere | Circuit |
|---|---|---|---|
| 21 | PANEL | 10 A | Switch illumination, navigation system, electronically modulated air suspension, automatic transmission system, audio system, multi-information display, air conditioning system, multiplex communication system |
| 22 | TAIL | 10 A | Front position lights, tail lights, license plate lights, front fog lights, towing converter, rear fog lights |
| 23 | AIR SUS | 20 A | Electronically modulated air suspension |
| 24 | P-SEAT RH | 30 A | Power seat right side |
| 25 | OBD | 7.5 A | On-Board diagnosis |
| 26 | FR DOOR | 25 A | Front power window (right-side), outside rear view mirror |
| 27 | RR DOOR | 25 A | Rear power window (right-side) |
| 28 | FL DOOR | 25 A | Front power window (left-side), outside rear view mirror |
| 29 | RL DOOR | 25 A | Rear power window (left-side) |
| 30 | FR WASH | 25 A | Windshield wipers and washer |
| 31 | RR WIP | 15 A | Windshield wipers and washer |
| 32 | RR WASH | 20 A | Windshield wipers and washer |
| 33 | FR WIP | 30 A | Windshield wipers and washer |
| 34 | ECU IG2 | 10 A | Multiport fuel injection system/ sequential multiport fuel injection system, SRS airbag system, stop lights, electronic controlled transmission, steering lock system |

| Fuse | | Ampere | Circuit |
|---|---|---|---|
| 35 | GAUGE NO. 2 | 7.5 A | Gauge and meters |
| 36 | RH S-HTR | 15 A | Seat heater (right-side) |
| 37 | LH S-HTR | 15 A | Seat heater (left-side) |

■ **After a fuse is replaced**

- If the lights do not turn on even after the fuse has been replaced, a bulb may need replacement. (→P. 516)
- If the replaced fuse blows again, have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

■ **If there is an overload in the circuit**

The fuses are designed to blow, protecting the wiring harness from damage.

**⚠ CAUTION**

■ **To prevent system breakdowns and vehicle fire**

Observe the following precautions.
Failing to do so may cause damage, and possibly a fire or injury.

- Never use a fuse of a higher amperage rating than indicated, or use any other object in place of a fuse.
- Always use a genuine Lexus fuse or equivalent.
  Never replace a fuse with a wire, even as a temporary fix.
  This can cause extensive damage or even fire.
- Do not modify the fuse or fuse boxes.

**⚠ NOTICE**

■ **Before replacing fuses**

Have the cause of electrical overload determined and repaired by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional as soon as possible.

# Light bulbs

You may replace the following bulbs by yourself. The difficulty level of replacement varies depending on the bulb. If necessary bulb replacement seems difficult to perform, contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

For more information about replacing other light bulbs, contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

## Preparing for light bulb replacement

Check the wattage of the light bulb to be replaced. (→P. 619)

## Removing the engine compartment covers

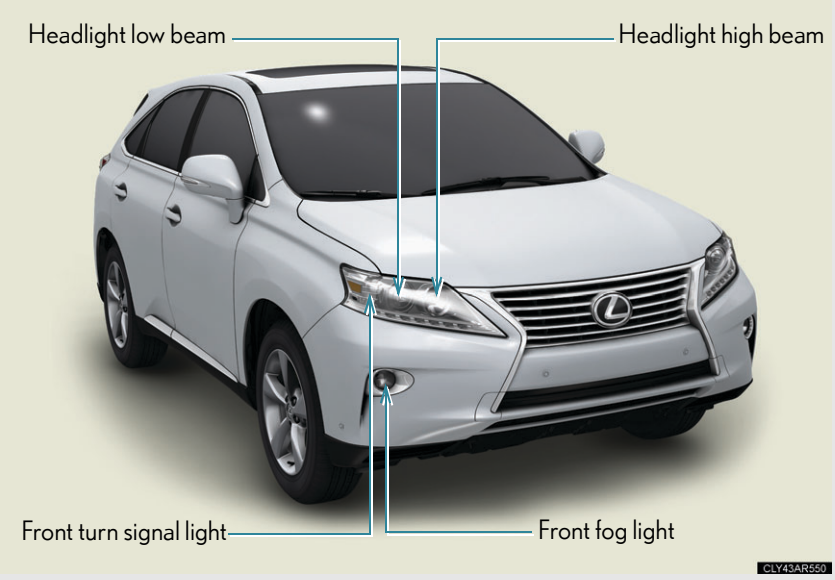
→P. 470

## Turning off the power back door main switch (if equipped).

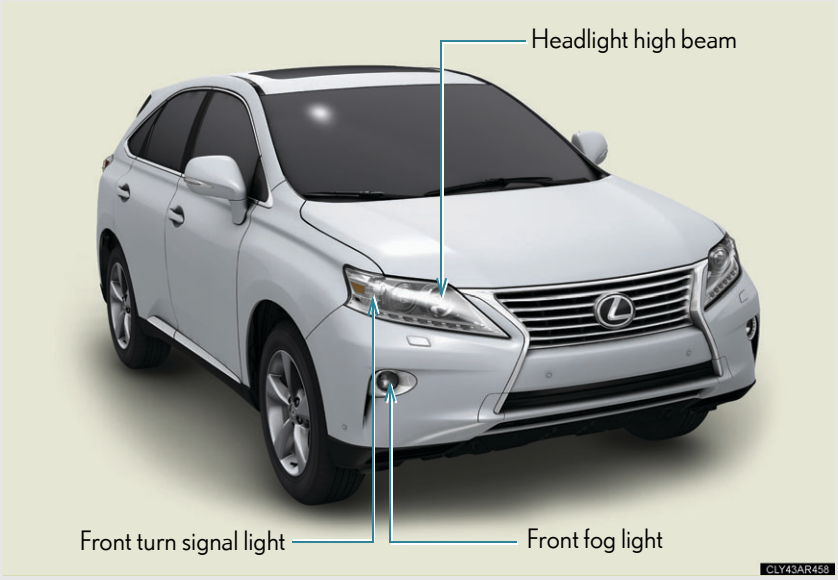
→P. 62

## Front bulb locations

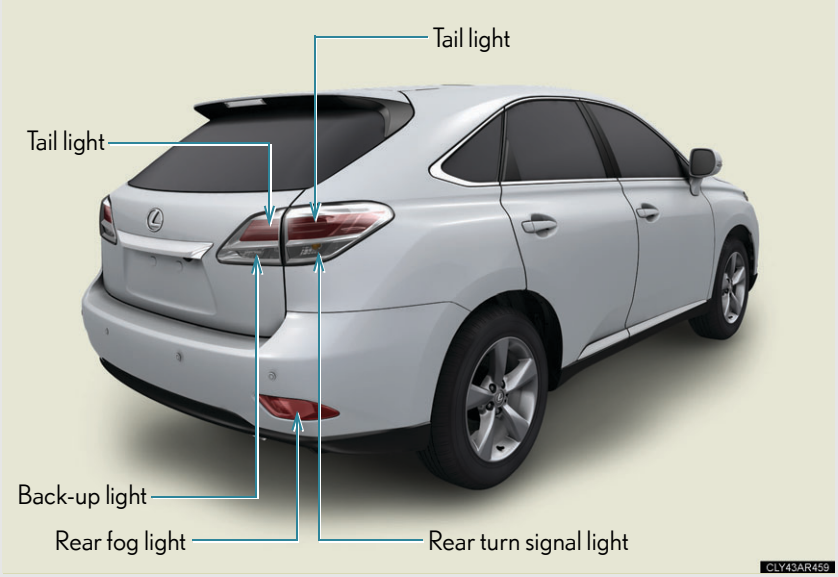
▶ Vehicles with halogen headlights



▶ Vehicles with discharge headlights



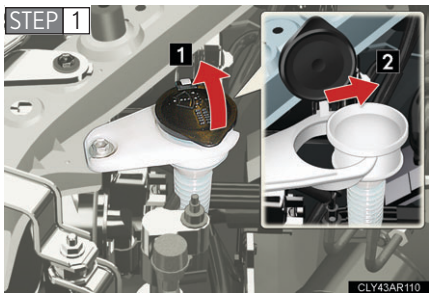

## Rear bulb locations



## Replacing light bulbs

### Headlight high beams

STEP 1

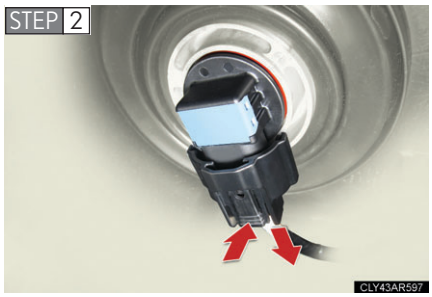



Right side:

1 Open the cap.

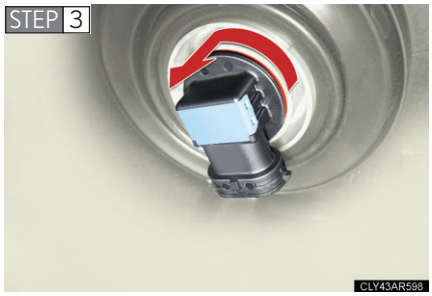
2 Move the washer fluid filler opening to allow easy access to the light bulbs.

STEP 2



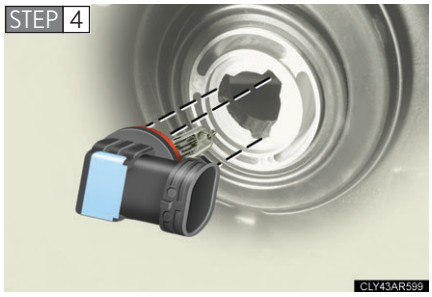

Unplug the connector while depressing the lock release.

STEP 3




Turn the bulb base counterclockwise.

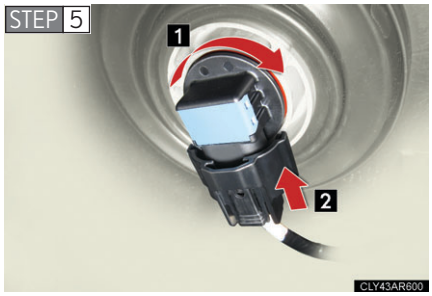
STEP 4




Replace the light bulb, and install the bulb base.

Align the 3 tabs on the light bulb with the mounting, and insert.

STEP 5




1 Turn and secure the bulb base.

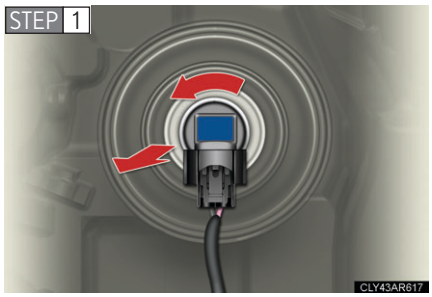
2 Connect the connector.

Shake the bulb base gently to check that it is not loose, turn the headlight high beams on once and visually confirm that no light is leaking through the mounting.

STEP 6 When replacing the right side bulb, install by conducting STEP 1 with the directions reversed.

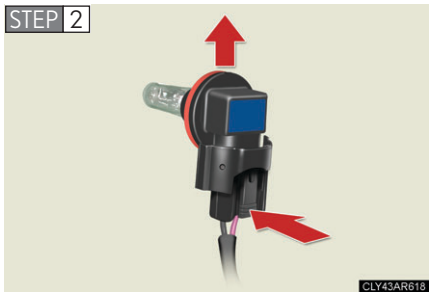
## Halogen headlight low beams (if equipped)

STEP 1



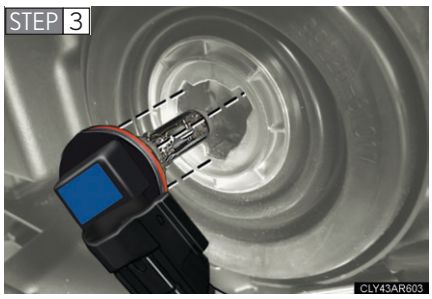

Turn the bulb base counterclockwise.

STEP 2




Unplug the connector while depressing the lock release.

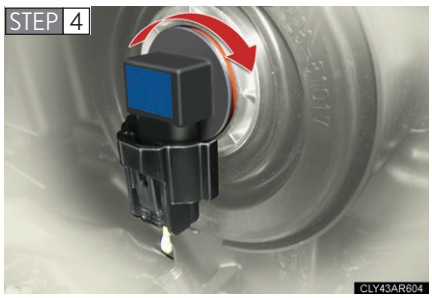
STEP 3




Replace the light bulb, and install the bulb base.

Align the 3 tabs on the light bulb with the mounting, and insert.

STEP 4

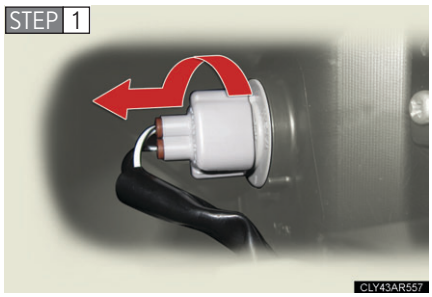



Turn and secure the bulb base.

Shake the bulb base gently to check that it is not loose, turn the headlight low beams on once and visually confirm that no light is leaking through the mounting.

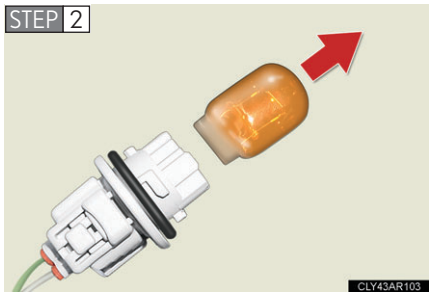
## Front turn signal light

STEP 1




Turn the bulb base counterclockwise.

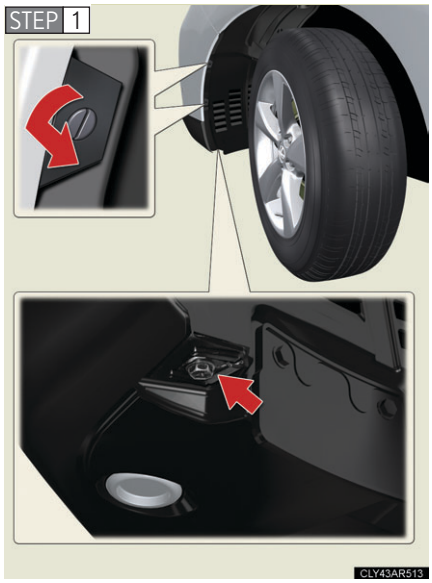
STEP 2




Remove the light bulb.

## Front fog lights

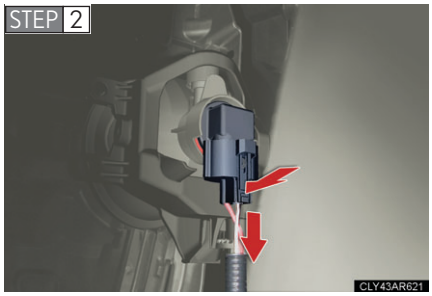
STEP 1




To allow enough working clearance, turn the steering wheel to the opposite side of the bulb to be replaced.

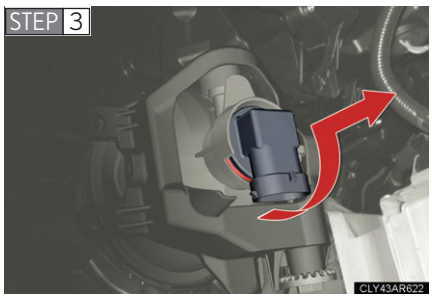
Remove the fender liner bolt and clips, and then partly remove the fender liner.

STEP 2



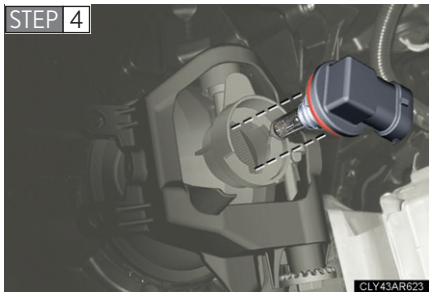

Unplug the connector while depressing the lock release.

STEP 3




Turn the bulb base counterclockwise.

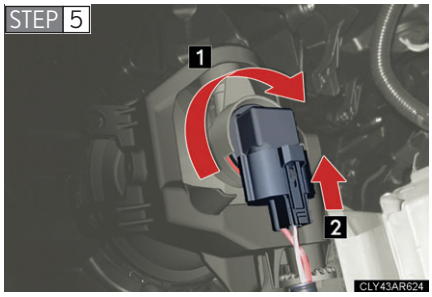
STEP 4




Replace the light bulb, and install the bulb base.

Align the 3 tabs on the light bulb with the mounting, and insert.

STEP 5




1 Turn and secure the bulb base.

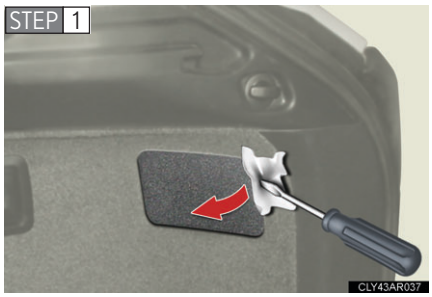
2 Connect the connector.

Shake the bulb base gently to check that it is not loose, turn the front fog lights on once and visually confirm that no light is leaking through the mounting.

STEP 6 When replacing a light bulb, install by conducting STEP 1 with the directions reversed.

## Rear turn signal and tail lights

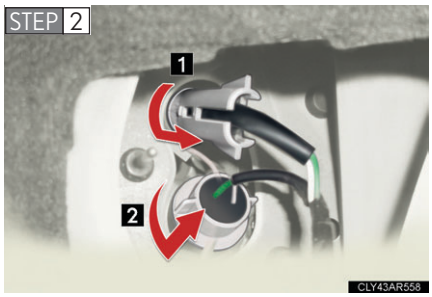
STEP 1




Remove the access hole cover.

Use a flathead screwdriver wrapped in a cloth.

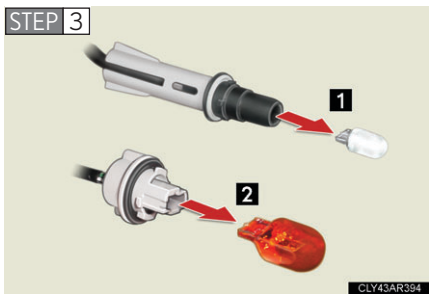
STEP 2




Turn the bulb base counterclockwise.

1 Tail light
2 Rear turn signal light

STEP 3

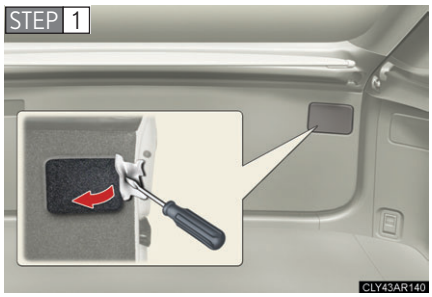



Remove the light bulb.

1 Tail light
2 Rear turn signal light

## Tail and back-up lights

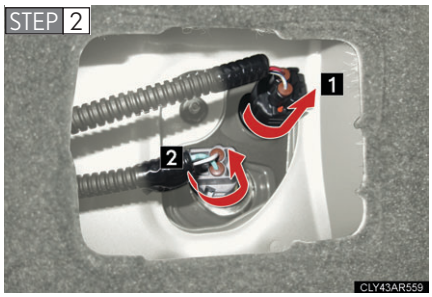
STEP 1




Remove the access hole cover.

Use a flathead screwdriver wrapped in a cloth.

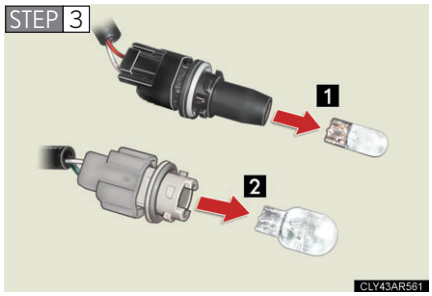
STEP 2




Turn the bulb base counterclockwise.

1 Tail light
2 Back-up light

STEP 3




Remove the light bulb.

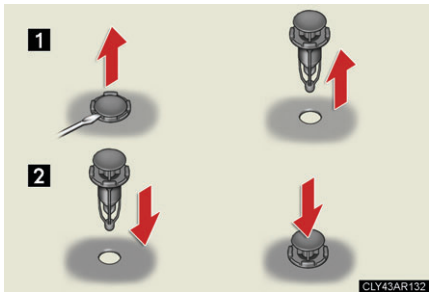
1 Tail light
2 Back-up light

## Rear fog light (right side)

STEP 1

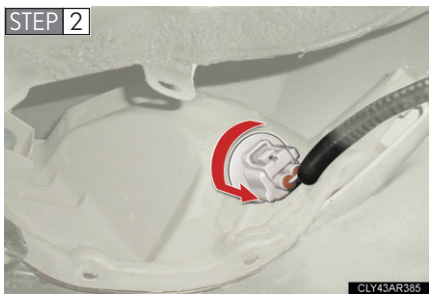



Remove the bolts using a Phillips-head screwdriver and remove the clip.



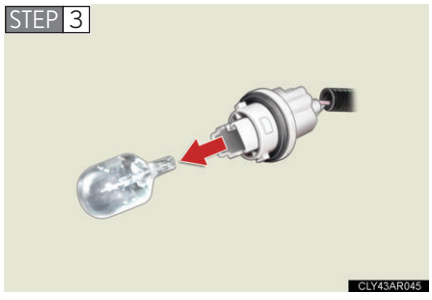

1 Removing the clip
2 Installing the clip

STEP 2




Turn the bulb base counterclockwise.

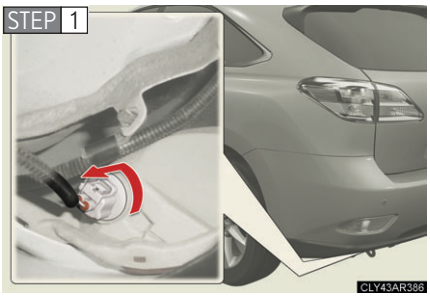
STEP 3




Remove the light bulb.

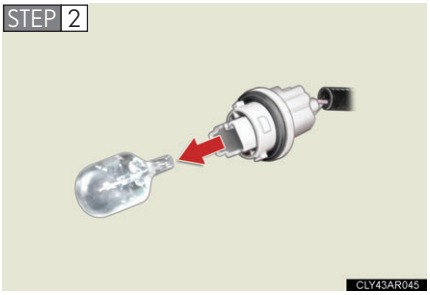
## Rear fog light (left side)

STEP 1




Turn the bulb base counterclockwise.

STEP 2




Remove the light bulb.

### Lights other than the above

If any of the lights listed below has burnt out, have it replaced by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

- Discharge headlight low beams (if equipped)
- Daytime running lights
- Front position lights
- Side turn signal lights
- Stop lights
- High mounted stoplight
- License plate lights

---

**Discharge headlights (if equipped)**

If voltage to the discharge bulbs is insufficient, the bulbs may not come on, or may go out temporarily. The discharge bulbs will come on when normal power is restored.

**LED bulbs**

The daytime running lights, front position lights, side turn signal lights, stop lights, high mounted stoplight and license plate lights consist of a number of LEDs. If any of the LEDs burn out, take your vehicle to any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional to have the light replaced.

**Condensation build-up on the inside of the lens**

Temporary condensation build-up on the inside of the headlight lens does not indicate a malfunction. Contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional, for more information in the following situations:

- Large drops of water are built up on the inside of the lens.
- Water has built up inside the headlight

## ⚠ CAUTION

### ■ Replacing light bulbs

- Turn off the lights. Do not attempt to replace the bulb immediately after turning off the lights.
  The bulbs become very hot and may cause burns.
- Do not touch the glass portion of the light bulb with bare hands. When it is unavoidable to hold the glass portion, use and hold with a clean dry cloth to avoid getting moisture and oils on the bulb.
  Also, if the bulb is scratched or dropped, it may blow out or crack.
- Fully install light bulbs and any parts used to secure them. Failure to do so may result in heat damage, fire, or water entering the headlight unit. This may damage the headlights or cause condensation to build up on the lens.




- Vehicles with discharge headlights:

  While the low beam headlights are turned on, and for a short time after they have been turned off, metal components at the rear of the headlight assembly will be extremely hot. To prevent burns, do not touch these metal components until you are certain they have cooled down.

## ⚠ CAUTION

**■ Discharge headlights (if equipped)**

- Contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional, before replacing discharge headlights (including light bulbs).
- Do not touch the discharge headlight's high voltage socket when the headlights are turned on.
  An extremely high voltage of 30000 V will be discharged and could result in serious injury or death by electric shock.
- Do not attempt to take apart or repair the low beam discharge headlight bulbs, connectors, power supply circuits, or related components.
  Doing so could result in electric shock and serious injury or death.

**■ To prevent damage or fire**

Make sure bulbs are fully seated and locked.

RX350_270_EE_48D77E.book 531 ページ ２０１４年１月２４日 金曜日 午前１０時４分

# When trouble arises 5


**5-1. Essential information**

Emergency flashers ..... 532

If your vehicle needs to be towed ..... 533

If you think something is wrong ..... 541

Fuel pump shut off system ..... 542

**5-2. Steps to take in an emergency**

If a warning light turns on or a warning buzzer sounds... ..... 543

If a warning message is displayed ..... 552

If you have a flat tire ..... 572

If the engine will not start ..... 587

If the shift lever cannot be shifted from P ..... 589

If you lose your keys ..... 590

If the electronic key does not operate properly ..... 591

If the vehicle battery is discharged ..... 594

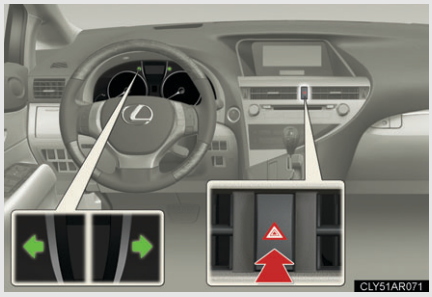
If your vehicle overheats ..... 598

If the vehicle becomes stuck ..... 601

If your vehicle has to be stopped in an emergency ..... 603

# Emergency flashers

**The emergency flashers are used to warn other drivers when the vehicle has to be stopped in the road due to a breakdown, etc.**




Press the switch.

All the turn signal lights will flash. To turn them off, press the switch once again.

## Emergency flashers

If the emergency flashers are used for a long time while the engine is not operating, the battery may discharge.

# If your vehicle needs to be towed

If towing is necessary, we recommend having your vehicle towed by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional, or a commercial towing service, using a lift-type truck or flatbed truck.
Use a safety chain system for all towing, and abide by all state/provincial and local laws.

2WD models: If towing your vehicle with a wheel-lift type truck from the front, the vehicle's rear wheels and axles must be in good conditions. (→P. 534, 539)
If they are damaged, use a towing dolly or flatbed truck.

AWD models: If towing your vehicle with a wheel-lift type truck, use a towing dolly. (→P. 534, 539)

## Situations needs to contact dealers before towing

The following may indicate a problem with your transmission. Contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, before towing.

- The engine is running but the vehicle will not move.
- The vehicle makes an abnormal sound.

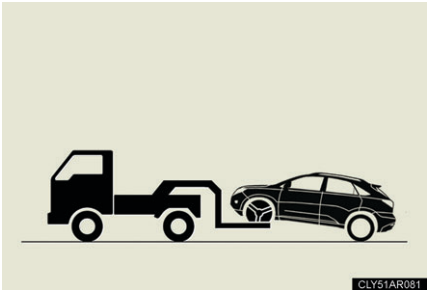
## Towing with a sling-type truck




Do not tow with a sling-type truck to prevent body damage.

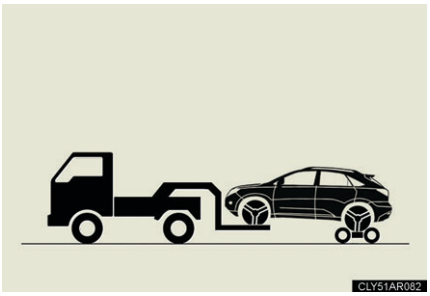
## Towing with a wheel-lift type truck

▶ From the front (2WD models)




Release the parking brake.

▶ From the front (AWD models)



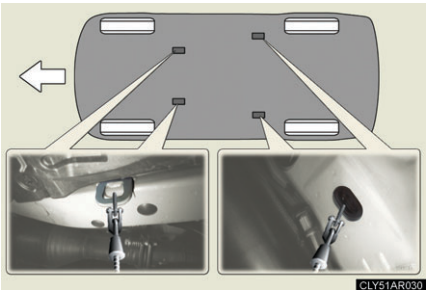

Use a towing dolly under the rear wheels.

▶ From the rear

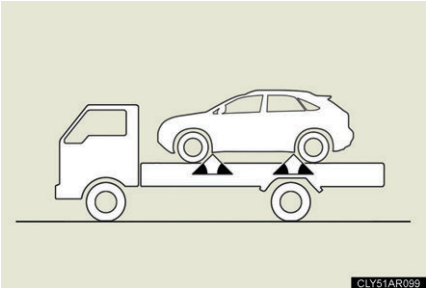



Use a towing dolly under the front wheels.

## Using a flatbed truck




If your Lexus is transported by a flatbed truck, it should be tied down at the locations shown in the illustration.




If you use chains or cables to tie down your vehicle, the angles shaded in black must be 45°.

Do not overly tighten the tie downs or the vehicle may be damaged.

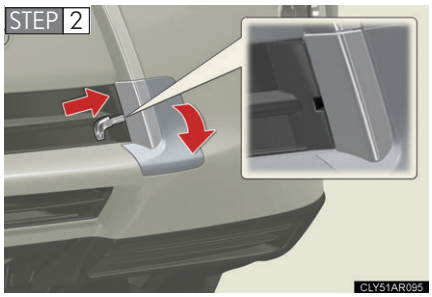
## Emergency towing

If a tow truck is not available in an emergency, your vehicle may be temporarily towed using a cable or chain secured to the emergency towing eyelet. This should only be attempted on hard surfaced roads for 80 km (50 miles) at under 30 km/h (18 mph).
A driver must be in the vehicle to steer and operate the brakes. The vehicle's wheels, drive train, axles, steering and brakes must be in good condition.

## Installing towing eyelets

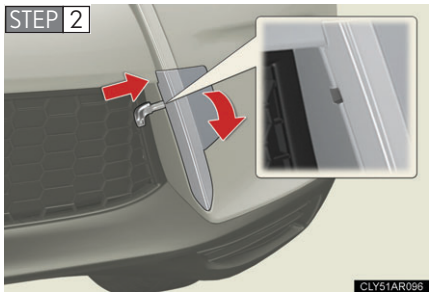
STEP 1 Take out the towing eyelet. (→P. 572)

▶ Type A



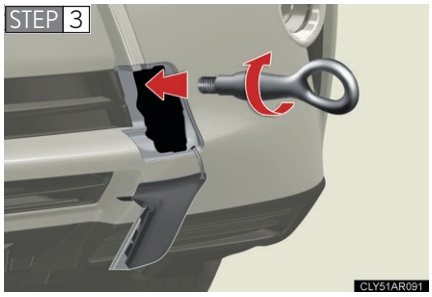

Insert the mechanical key (→P. 27) into the groove and release the claws. With the mechanical key inserted, remove the eyelet cover by pulling it towards you.

▶ Type B



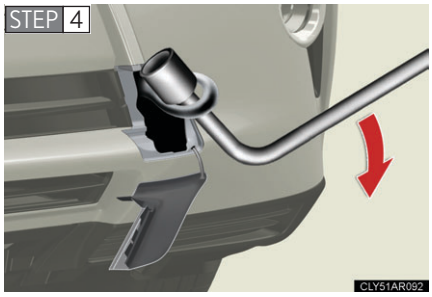

Insert the mechanical key (→P. 27) into the groove and release the claws. With the mechanical key inserted, remove the eyelet cover by pulling it towards you.

STEP 3




Insert the towing eyelet into the hole and tighten as much as possible by hand.

STEP 4




Using the tip of the wheel nut wrench, tighten down the towing eyelet securely without interfering with the bumper.

STEP 5 Securely attach a cable or chain to the towing eyelet.
Take care not to damage the vehicle body.

STEP 6 Enter the vehicle being towed and start the engine.
If the engine does not start, turn the “ENGINE START STOP” switch to IGNITION ON mode.

STEP 7 For models with electronically modulated air suspension: Change the vehicle height to “N” mode and end the vehicle height operation. (→P. 256)

STEP 8 Shift the shift lever to N and release the parking brake.
When the shift lever cannot be shifted: →P. 589

■ **While towing**

If the engine is not running, the power assist for the brakes and steering will not function, making steering and braking more difficult.

■ **Wheel nut wrench**

Wheel nut wrench is installed in the luggage compartment. (→P. 572)

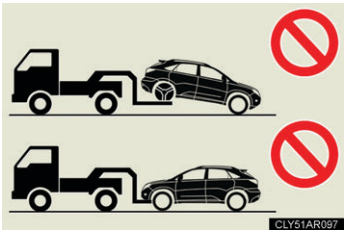
## CAUTION

Observe the following precautions.

Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

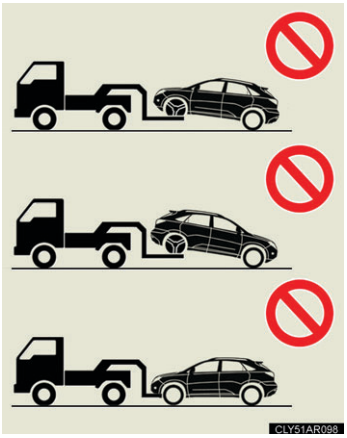
**■ When towing the vehicle**

▶ 2WD models




Be sure to transport the vehicle with the front wheels raised or with all four wheels raised off the ground.
If the vehicle is towed with the front wheels contacting the ground, the drivetrain and related parts may be damaged.

▶ AWD models




Be sure to transport the vehicle with all four wheels raised off the ground. If the vehicle is towed with the tires contacting the ground, the drivetrain or related parts may be damaged, the vehicle may fly off the truck.

## ⚠ CAUTION

**■ While towing**

- When towing using a rope, avoid sudden starts, etc. which place excessive stress on the towing hook and rope.
  The towing hook or rope may become damaged, broken debris may hit people and cause serious damage.
- Do not turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch off.
  There is a possibility that the steering wheel is locked and can not be operated.

**■ Installing towing eyelet to the vehicle**

Make sure that towing eyelet is installed securely.
If not securely installed, towing eyelet may come loose during towing.

## ⚠ NOTICE

**■ To prevent damage to the vehicle when towing using a wheel-lift type truck**

When raising the vehicle, ensure adequate ground clearance for towing at the opposite end of the raised vehicle. Without adequate clearance, the vehicle could be damaged while being towed.

**■ To prevent body damage when towing with a sling-type truck**

Do not tow with a sling-type truck, either from the front or rear.

# If you think something is wrong

**If you notice any of the following symptoms, your vehicle probably needs adjustment or repair. Contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional as soon as possible.**

## Visible symptoms

- Fluid leaks under the vehicle.
  (Water dripping from the air conditioning after use is normal.)
- Flat-looking tires or uneven tire wear
- Engine coolant temperature gauge needle continually points higher than normal.

## Audible symptoms

- Changes in exhaust sound
- Excessive tire squeal when cornering
- Strange noises related to the suspension system
- Pinging or other noises related to the engine

## Operational symptoms

- Engine missing, stumbling or running rough
- Appreciable loss of power
- Vehicle pulls heavily to one side when braking
- Vehicle pulls heavily to one side when driving on a level road
- Loss of brake effectiveness, spongy feeling, pedal almost touches the floor

# Fuel pump shut off system

**To minimize the risk of fuel leakage when the engine stalls or when an air-bag inflates upon collision, the fuel pump shut off system stops the supply of fuel to the engine.**

Follow the procedure below to restart the engine after the system is activated.

STEP 1 Turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch to ACCESSORY mode or turn it off.

STEP 2 Restart the engine.

⚠ NOTICE

■ **Before starting the engine**

Inspect the ground under the vehicle.
If you find that fuel has leaked onto the ground, the fuel system has been damaged and is in need of repair. Do not restart the engine.

**Calmly perform the following actions if any of the warning lights comes on or flashes. If a light comes on or flashes, but then goes off, this does not necessarily indicate a malfunction in the system.**

## Stop the vehicle immediately. Continuing to drive the vehicle may be dangerous.

The following warning indicates a possible problem in the brake system. Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

| Warning light | Warning light/Details |
|---|---|
|  | **Brake system warning light (warning buzzer)*** <br>• Low brake fluid <br>• Malfunction in the brake system <br>This light also comes on when the parking brake is not released. If the light turns off after the parking brake is fully released the system is operating normally. |

*: Parking brake engaged warning buzzer

→P. 557

## Stop the vehicle immediately.

The following warning indicates the possibility of damage to the vehicle that may lead to an accident. Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

| Warning light | Warning light/Details |
|---|---|
|  | **Charging system warning light** <br>Indicates a malfunction in the vehicle's charging system |

## Have the vehicle inspected immediately.

Failing to investigate the cause of the following warnings may lead to the system operating abnormally and possibly cause an accident. Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional immediately.

| Warning light | Warning light/Details |
|---|---|
|  | **Malfunction indicator lamp**<br>Indicates a malfunction in:<br>• The electronic engine control system;<br>• The electronic throttle control system; or<br>• The electronic automatic transmission control system |
|  | **SRS warning light**<br>Indicates a malfunction in:<br>• The SRS airbag system; or<br>• The seat belt pretensioner system |
|  | **ABS warning light**<br>Indicates a malfunction in:<br>• The ABS; or<br>• The brake assist system |
|  | **Electric power steering system warning light (warning buzzer)**<br>Indicates a malfunction in the EPS (Electric Power Steering) system |

| Warning light | Warning light/Details |
|---|---|
| PCS (Flashes) | **Pre-crash safety system warning light (if equipped)**<br>Indicates a malfunction in the pre-crash safety system<br>The warning light will operate as follows, even when the system is not malfunctioning:<br>• The light will flash quickly when the system is operating. (→P. 280)<br>• The light will turn on when the pre-crash braking is disabled. (→P. 281)<br>• The light will turn on when the system cannot temporarily be used. (→P. 557) |
|  | **Slip indicator**<br>Indicates a malfunction in:<br>• The VSC system;<br>• The TRC system; or<br>• The hill-start assist control system |
| AFS OFF (Flashes) | **"AFS OFF" indicator (if equipped)**<br>Indicates a malfunction in the adaptive front-lighting system |

## Follow the correction procedures.

After taking the specified steps to correct the suspected problem, check that the warning light goes off.

| Warning light | Warning light/Details | Correction procedure |
|---|---|---|
|  | **Open door warning light (warning buzzer)*1**<br>Indicates that one or more of the doors is not fully closed. | Check that all the doors are closed. |
|  | **Low fuel level warning light**<br>Indicates remaining fuel is approximately 10.7 L (2.8 gal., 2.3 Imp. gal.) or less | Refuel the vehicle. |
|  <br>(On the instrument panel) | **Driver's seat belt reminder light (warning buzzer)*2**<br>Warns the driver to fasten his/her seat belt. | Fasten the seat belt. |
|  <br>(On the center panel) | **Front passenger's seat belt reminder light (warning buzzer)*2**<br>Warns the front passenger to fasten his/her seat belt. | Fasten the seat belt. |
|  | **Master warning light**<br>A buzzer sounds and the warning light comes on and flashes to indicate that the master warning system has detected a malfunction. | →P. 552 |

| Warning light | Warning light/Details | Correction procedure |
|---|---|---|
|  | **Tire pressure warning light (if equipped)** | |
| | When the light comes on: Low tire inflation pressure such as<br>• Natural causes (→P. 548)<br>• Flat tire (→P. 572) | Adjust the tire inflation pressure (including the full-size spare tire) to the specified level.<br>The light will turn off after a few minutes. In case the light does not turn off even if the tire inflation pressure is adjusted, have the system checked by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional. |
| | When the light comes on after blinking for 1 minute: Malfunction in the tire pressure warning system (→P. 550) | Have the system checked by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional. |

*1: Open door warning buzzer:

The open door warning buzzer sounds to alert one or more of the doors is not fully closed (with the vehicle having reached a speed of 5 km/h [3 mph]). (→P. 557)

*2: Driver's and front passenger's seat belt buzzer:

The driver's and front passenger's seat belt buzzer sounds to alert the driver and front passenger that his or her seat belt is not fastened. The buzzer sounds for 30 seconds after the vehicle reaches a speed of 20 km/h (12 mph). Then, if the seat belt is still unfastened, the buzzer will sound in a different tone for 90 more seconds.

■ **If the malfunction indicator lamp comes on while driving**

For some models, the malfunction indicator lamp will come on if the fuel tank becomes completely empty. If the fuel tank is empty, refuel the vehicle immediately. The malfunction indicator lamp will go off after several trips.

If the malfunction indicator lamp does not go off, contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional as soon as possible.

■ **Front passenger detection sensor, passenger seat belt reminder and warning buzzer**

- If luggage is placed on the front passenger seat, the front passenger detection sensor may cause the warning light to flash and the warning buzzer to sound even if a passenger is not sitting in the seat.
- If a cushion is placed on the seat, the sensor may not detect a passenger, and the warning light may not operate properly.

■ **Electric power steering system warning light (warning buzzer)**

When the battery charge becomes insufficient or the voltage temporarily drops, the electric power steering system warning light may come on and the warning buzzer may sound.

■ **When the tire pressure warning light comes on**

Check the tire inflation pressure and adjust to the appropriate level. Pushing the tire pressure warning reset switch will not turn off the tire pressure warning light.

■ **The tire pressure warning light may come on due to natural causes**

The tire pressure warning light may come on due to natural causes such as natural air leaks and tire inflation pressure changes caused by temperature. In this case, adjusting the tire inflation pressure will turn off the warning light (after a few minutes).

### When a tire is replaced with a spare tire

▶ Vehicles with a compact spare tire

The compact spare tire is not equipped with a tire pressure warning valve and transmitter. If a tire goes flat, the tire pressure warning light will not turn off even though the flat tire has been replaced with the spare tire. Replace the spare tire with the repaired tire and adjust the tire inflation pressure. The tire pressure warning light will go off after a few minutes.

▶ Vehicles with a full-size spare tire

The spare tire is also equipped with the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter. The tire pressure warning light will turn on if the tire inflation pressure of the spare tire is low. If a tire goes flat, even though the flat tire is replaced with the spare tire, the tire pressure warning light does not turn off. Replace the spare tire with the repaired tire and adjust to the proper tire inflation pressure. The tire pressure warning light will turn off after a few minutes.

### If the tire pressure warning system is not functioning

The tire pressure warning system will be disabled in the following conditions:

(When the condition becomes normal, the system will work properly.)

- If tires not equipped with tire pressure warning valves and transmitters are used
- If the ID code on the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters is not registered in the tire pressure warning computer
- If the tire inflation pressure is 500 kPa (5.1 kgf/cm$^2$ or bar, 73psi) or higher

The tire pressure warning system may be disabled in the following conditions:

(When the condition becomes normal, the system will work properly.)

- If electronic devices or facilities using similar radio wave frequencies are nearby
- If a radio set at similar frequencies is in use in the vehicle
- If a window tint that affects the radio wave signals is installed
- If there is a lot of snow or ice on the vehicle, in particular around the wheels or wheel housings
- If non-genuine Lexus wheels are used (Even if you use Lexus wheels, the tire pressure warning system may not work properly with some types of tires.)

- If tire chains are used
- Vehicles with a full-size spare tire: If the spare tire is in a location subject to poor radio wave signal reception
- Vehicles with a full-size spare tire: If a large metallic object which can interfere with signal reception is put in the luggage compartment

**■ If the tire pressure warning light frequently comes on after blinking for 1 minute**

If the tire pressure warning light frequently comes on after blinking for 1 minute when the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode, have it checked by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

**■ Customization**

The vehicle speed linked seat belt reminder buzzer can be disabled.
(Customizable features →P. 622)

## ⚠ CAUTION

**■ When the electric power steering system warning light comes on**

The steering wheel may become extremely heavy.
If the steering wheel becomes heavier than usual when operating, hold firmly and operate using more force than usual.

**■ If the tire pressure warning light comes on**

Be sure to observe the following precautions. Failure to do so could cause loss of vehicle control and result in death or serious injury.

- Stop your vehicle in a safe place as soon as possible. Adjust the tire inflation pressure immediately.
- If the tire pressure warning light comes on even after tire inflation pressure adjustment, it is probable that you have a flat tire. Check the tires. If a tire is flat, change it with the spare tire and have the flat tire repaired by the nearest authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
- Avoid abrupt maneuvering and braking. If the vehicle tires deteriorate, you could lose control of the steering wheel or the brakes.

**■ If a blowout or sudden air leakage should occur**

The tire pressure warning system may not activate immediately.

NOTICE

**■ To ensure the tire pressure warning system operates properly**

Do not install tires with different specifications or makers, as the tire pressure warning system may not operate properly.

# If a warning message is displayed

**If a warning is shown on the multi-information display, stay calm and perform the following actions:**




1 Master warning light

The master warning light also comes on or flashes in order to indicate that a message is currently being displayed on the multi-information display.

2 Multi-information display

If any of the warning lights comes on again after the following actions have been performed, contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

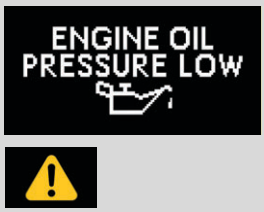
## Stop the vehicle immediately. Continuing to drive the vehicle may be dangerous.

The following warning indicates a possible problem in the brake system. Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

| Warning message | Details |
|---|---|
| BRAKE MALFUNCTION  | **Indicates the following:**<br>• The brake fluid level is low; or,<br>• The brake system is malfunctioning.<br>A buzzer also sounds. |

## Stop the vehicle immediately.

A buzzer sounds and a warning message is shown on the multi-information display. The following warning indicates the possibility of damage to the vehicle that may lead to an accident. Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

| Warning message | Details |
|---|---|
|  | **Indicates abnormal engine oil pressure**<br>The warning light may come on if the engine oil pressure is too low. |
|  <br>(Flashes)<br>(AWD models) | **Indicates the AWD system has overheated** |

## Have the vehicle inspected immediately.

A buzzer sounds and a warning message is shown on the multi-information display. Failure to investigate the cause of the following warnings may lead to the system operating abnormally and possibly cause an accident. Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional immediately.

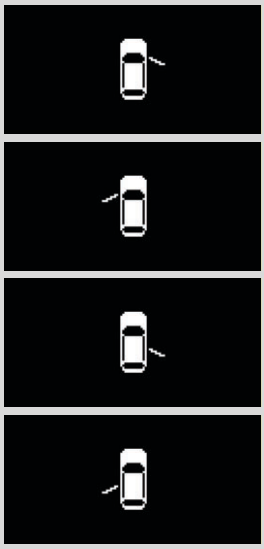
| Warning message | Details |
|---|---|
| CHECK AWD SYSTEM  (AWD models) | **Indicates a malfunction in the AWD system** |
| CHECK STEERING LOCK SYSTEM  | **Indicates a malfunction in the steering lock system** |
| CHECK AIR SUSPENSION SYSTEM  (If equipped) | **Indicates a malfunction in the electronically modulated air suspension system** |

| Warning message | Details |
|---|---|
| CHECK AFS SYSTEM<br>AFS OFF (Flashes)<br>(If equipped) | **Indicates a malfunction in the adaptive front lighting system** |
| CHECK BRAKE LAMP SYSTEM<br>(If equipped) | **Indicates a malfunction in the brake lights system** |
| CHECK PCS SYSTEM<br>PCS (Flashes)<br>(If equipped) | **Indicates a malfunction in the pre-crash safety system** |
| CHECK SONAR<br>(If equipped) | **Indicates a malfunction in the Lexus parking assist-sensor**<br>The malfunctioning assist-sensor is flashing. |

| Warning message | Details |
|---|---|
| CHECK CRUISE CONTROL SYSTEM  | **Indicates a malfunction in the cruise control system or the radar cruise control system (If equipped)** Press the “ON-OFF” button once to deactivate the system, and then press the button again to reactivate the system. |
| CHECK HEADLIGHT LEVELING SYSTEM  (If equipped) | **Indicates a malfunction in the automatic headlight leveling system** |
| CHECK SRS SYSTEM AIRBAG  | **Indicates a malfunction in:** • The SRS airbag system; or, • The seat belt pretensioner system |
| CHECK ABS | **Indicates a malfunction in:** • The ABS; or, • The brake assist system |
| CHECK POWER STEERING SYSTEM  | **Indicates a malfunction in the EPS (Electric Power Steering) system** |

## Follow the correction procedures.

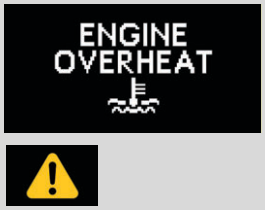
A buzzer sounds and a warning message is shown on the multi-information display. After taking the specified steps to correct the suspected problem, check that the warning message goes off.

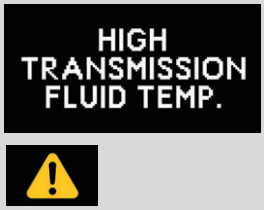
| Warning message | Details | Correction procedure |
|---|---|---|
|  | **Indicates that one or more of the doors is not fully closed**<br>The system also indicates which doors are not fully closed.<br>If the vehicle reaches a speed of 5 km/h (3 mph), a buzzer sounds to indicate that the door(s) are not yet fully closed. | Make sure that all the doors are closed. |
|  | **Indicates that the hood is not fully closed**<br>If the vehicle reaches a speed of 5 km/h (3 mph), a buzzer sounds to indicate that the hood is not yet fully closed. | Close the hood. |

| Warning message | Details | Correction procedure |
|---|---|---|
|  | **Indicates that the back door is not fully closed**<br>If the vehicle reaches a speed of 5 km/h (3 mph), a buzzer sounds to indicate that the back door is not yet fully closed. | Close the back door. |
| MOONROOF OPENED<br>  (Flashes)<br>(If equipped) | **Indicates that the moon roof is not fully closed (with the "ENGINE START STOP" switch off, and the driver's door open)** | Close the moon roof. |
| RELEASE PARKING BRAKE | **Indicates that the parking brake is still engaged**<br>If the vehicle reaches a speed of 5 km/h (3 mph),  flashes and a buzzer sounds to indicate that the parking brake is still engaged. | Release the parking brake. |
| LOW WASHER FLUID | **Indicates that the washer fluid level is low** | Add washer fluid. |

| Warning message | Details | Correction procedure |
|---|---|---|
| LOW ENGINE OIL LEVEL<br>(RX350) | **Indicates that engine oil level is low**<br>A buzzer also sounds. | Check the level of engine oil, and add if necessary. |
| AWD DISABLED<br>(Flashes)<br>(AWD models) | **Indicates that the AWD system is not currently functional**<br>A buzzer also sounds. | Reduce vehicle speed or stop the vehicle in a safe place until the warnings clear.<br>In this case, do not stop the engine. |
| PCS TEMPORARILY NOT AVAILABLE<br>PCS<br>(If equipped) | **Indicates that the pre-crash safety system is not currently functional because the grille or the sensor is dirty.**<br>This message also appears when the pre-crash safety system is not functional due to overheating. | • Check the grille and the sensor and clean them if they are dirty.<br>• In case of overheating, the system will become functional once the system cools down. |
| CLEAN SONAR<br>(If equipped) | **Indicates that Lexus parking assist-sensor is dirty or covered with ice**<br>A buzzer also sounds.<br>The site of the malfunction and the vehicle image are flashing. | Clean the sensor. |

| Warning message | Details | Correction procedure |
|---|---|---|
| CLEAN RADAR SENSOR  (If equipped) | **Indicates that the radar cruise control sensor is dirty or covered with ice** A buzzer also sounds. | Clean the sensor. |
| CRUISE CONTROL NOT AVAILABLE  (If equipped) | **Indicates that the radar cruise control system is unable to judge vehicle-to-vehicle distance** A buzzer also sounds. | • Switch driving mode to normal.<br>• If the windshield wipers are on, turn them off or set them to a mode other than "AUTO" or high speed wiper operation. |
| BRAKE! PCS (Flashes) (If equipped) | **Indicates that there is a high possibility of a frontal collision, or that the pre-crash braking function is operating** A buzzer also sounds. At the same time, BRAKE! will appear on the head-up display (the image flashes). | Slow the vehicle by applying the brakes. |

| Warning message | Details | Correction procedure |
|---|---|---|
|  (Flashes) (If equipped) | **Indicates that your vehicle is nearing the vehicle ahead (in radar cruise mode)** A buzzer also sounds. At the same time,  will appear on the head-up display (the image flashes). | Slow the vehicle by applying the brakes. |
|  | **Indicates that the engine has overheated** A buzzer also sounds. | Stop and check. (→P. 598) |
|  | **Indicates that remaining fuel is approximately 10.7 L (2.8 gal., 2.3 Imp. gal.) or less** | Refuel the vehicle. |
|  (Flashes) | **Indicates that the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned off or turned to ACCESSORY mode and the driver's door is opened while the lights are turned on.** | Turn the lights off. |

| Warning message | Details | Correction procedure |
|---|---|---|
|  | **Road surface may be freezing.** | Check road surface and drive carefully. |
|  | **Indicates that the automatic transmission fluid temperature is too high**<br>A buzzer also sounds. | Stop the vehicle in a safe place, shift the shift lever to "P" and wait until the light goes off.<br>If the light goes off, you may start the vehicle again. If the light does not go off, contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional. |

## Have the malfunction repaired immediately

After taking the specified steps to correct the suspected problem, check that the warning message and light go off.

| Interior buzzer | Exterior buzzer | Warning message | Details | Correction procedure |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Sounds once | — | KEY NOT DETECTED  (Flashes) | The electronic key is not detected when an attempt is made to start the engine. | Confirm the location of the electronic key. |

| Interior buzzer | Exterior buzzer | Warning message | Details | Correction procedure |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Sounds once | Sounds 3 times | KEY NOT DETECTED | The electronic key was carried outside the vehicle and a door other than the driver's door was opened and closed while the "ENGINE START STOP" switch was in a mode other than off. | Bring the electronic key back into the vehicle. |
| | | (Flashes) | The driver's door was opened and closed while the electronic key was not in the vehicle, the shift lever was in P and the "ENGINE START STOP" switch was not turned off. | Turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch off or bring the electronic key back into the vehicle. |

| Interior buzzer | Exterior buzzer | Warning message | Details | Correction procedure |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Sounds once | Sounds once | KEY NOT DETECTED<br>TURN POWER OFF<br>(Displayed alternately)<br>(Flashes) | An attempt was made to exit the vehicle with the electronic key and lock the doors without first turning the "ENGINE START STOP" switch off. | Turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch off and lock the doors again. |
| Sounds once | — | KEY NOT DETECTED<br>(Flashes) | An attempt was made to start the engine without the electronic key being present, or the electronic key was not functioning normally.<br>An attempt was made to drive when the regular key was not inside the vehicle. | Confirm that the electronic key is inside the vehicle. |

| Interior buzzer | Exterior buzzer | Warning message | Details | Correction procedure |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Continuous | — | SHIFT TO P RANGE<br>(Flashes) | The driver's door was opened when the shift lever was not in P and the "ENGINE START STOP" switch was not turned off. | Shift the shift lever to P. |
| Continuous | Continuous | SHIFT TO P RANGE<br>KEY NOT DETECTED<br>(Displayed alternately)<br>(Flashes) | The driver's door was opened and closed while the electronic key was not in the vehicle, the shift lever was not in P and the "ENGINE START STOP" switch was not turned off. | • Shift the shift lever to P.<br>• Bring the electronic key back into the vehicle. |

| Interior buzzer | Exterior buzzer | Warning message | Details | Correction procedure |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Sounds once | Continuous | | An attempt was made to lock the doors using the smart entry & start system while the electronic key was still inside the vehicle. | Retrieve the electronic key from the vehicle and lock the doors again. |
| | | KEY DETECTED IN VEHICLE (Flashes) | An attempt was made to lock either front door by opening a door and putting the inside lock button into the lock position then closing the door by pulling on the outside door handle with the electronic key still inside the vehicle. | |

| Interior buzzer | Exterior buzzer | Warning message | Details | Correction procedure |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Sounds once | — | DEPRESS BRAKE PEDAL, TOUCH ENGINE SWITCH WITH KEY<br>(Flashes) | • When the doors were unlocked with the mechanical key and then the "ENGINE START STOP" switch was pressed, the electronic key could not be detected in the vehicle.<br>• The electronic key could not be detected in the vehicle even after the "ENGINE START STOP" switch was pressed two consecutive times. | Touch the electronic key to the "ENGINE START STOP" switch while depressing the brake pedal. |
| Sounds once | — | SHIFT TO P RANGE TO START<br>(Flashes) | An attempt was made to start the engine with the shift lever in an incorrect position. | Shift the shift lever to P and start the engine. |

| Interior buzzer | Exterior buzzer | Warning message | Details | Correction procedure |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Sounds once | — | SHIFT TO P RANGE AND PUSH ENGINE SWITCH TO TURN POWER OFF  (Flashes) | An attempt was made to turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch off when the shift lever was not in P. | To turn off the engine, first shift the shift lever to P and then turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch off. |
| — | — | AUTO POWER OFF TO CONSERVE BATTERY | Power was turned off due to the automatic power off function. | Next time when starting the engine, increase the engine speed slightly and maintain that level for approximately 5 minutes to recharge the battery. |
| Sounds once | — | KEY BATTERY LOW  | The electronic key has a low battery. | Replace the electronic key battery. (→P. 501) |

| Interior buzzer | Exterior buzzer | Warning message | Details | Correction procedure |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Sounds once | — | DEPRESS BRAKE PEDAL AND PUSH ENGINE SWITCH TO START | The driver's door was opened and closed with the "ENGINE START STOP" switch turned off and then the "ENGINE START STOP" switch was put in ACCESSORY mode twice without the engine being started. | Press the "ENGINE START STOP" switch while depressing the brake pedal. |
| | | (Flashes) | During an engine starting procedure in the event that the electronic key was not functioning properly (→P. 592), the "ENGINE START STOP" switch was touched with the electronic key. | Press the "ENGINE START STOP" switch within 10 seconds of the buzzer sounding. |

| Interior buzzer | Exterior buzzer | Warning message | Details | Correction procedure |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Sounds once | — | STEERING LOCK ACTIVE<br>(Flashes) | The steering lock could not be released within 3 seconds of the "ENGINE START STOP" switch being pressed. | Press the "ENGINE START STOP" switch while depressing the brake pedal and moving the steering wheel left and right. |

■ **Warning message in radar cruise mode (if equipped)**

In the following cases, the warning message may not be displayed even if vehicle-to-vehicle distance decreases:

- When your vehicle and the vehicle ahead are traveling at the same speed or the vehicle ahead is traveling more quickly than your vehicle
- When the vehicle ahead is traveling at a very low speed
- Immediately after cruise control speed is set
- At the instant the accelerator pedal is depressed

# If you have a flat tire

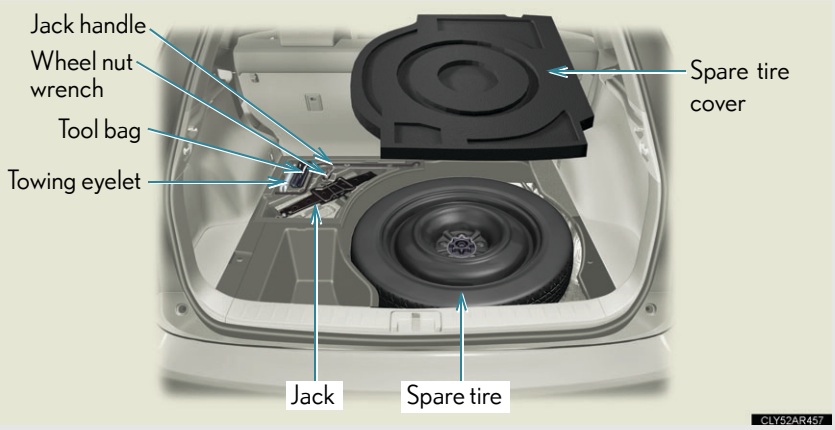
**Your vehicle is equipped with a spare tire. The flat tire can be replaced with the spare tire.**

## Before jacking up the vehicle

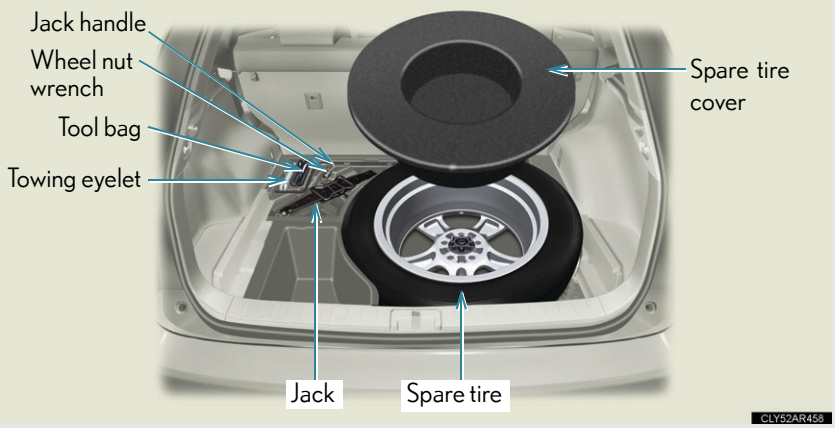
- Stop the vehicle on a hard, flat surface.
- Set the parking brake.
- Shift the shift lever to P.
- Vehicles with electronically modulated air suspension: Turn off the height control. (→P. 256)
- Stop the engine.
- Turn on the emergency flashers.

## Location of the spare tire, jack and tools

▶ Vehicles with a compact spare tire



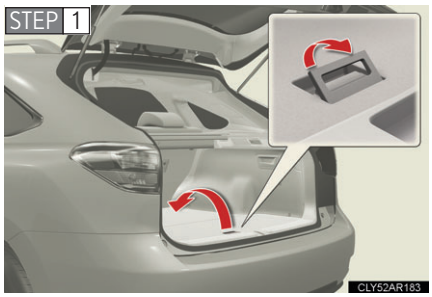

▶ Vehicles with a full-size spare tire



## Taking out the jack

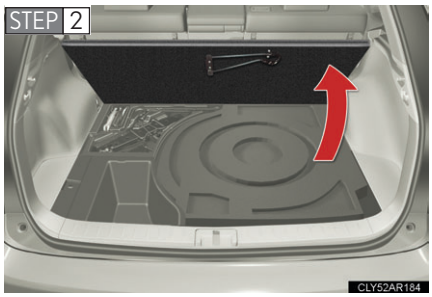
▶ Vehicles with a compact spare tire

STEP 1



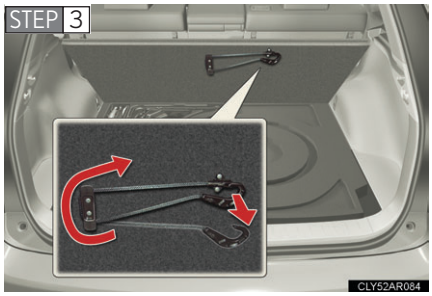

Pull the lever upward to fold back the front part of the deck board.

STEP 2



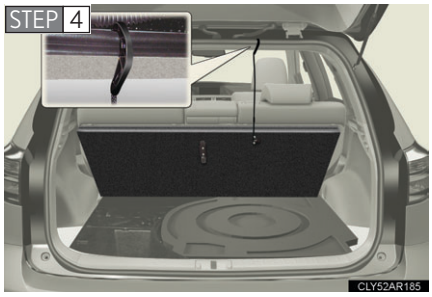

Pull the folded deck board upright.

STEP 3



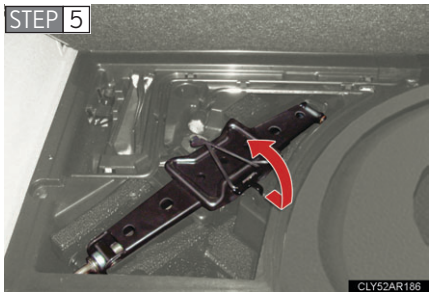

Pull on the attached hook to extend the string.

STEP 4




Use the hook to secure the deck board as shown in the illustration.

STEP 5




Remove the jack after removing the hook.

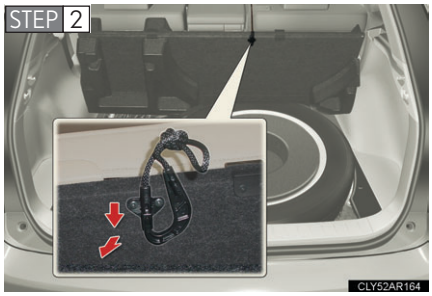
▶ Vehicles with a full-size spare tire

STEP 1



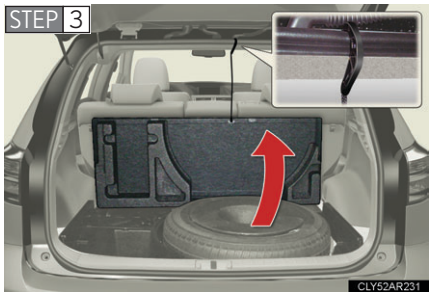

Pull the lever upward to fold back the front part of the deck board.

STEP 2



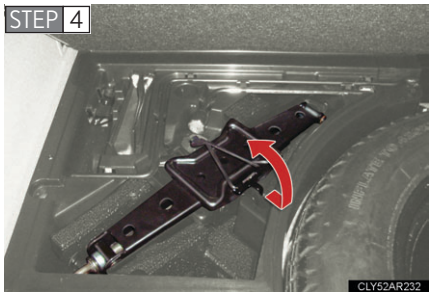

Pull on the attached hook to extend the string.

STEP 3




Use the hook to secure the deck board as shown in the illustration.

STEP 4




Remove the jack after removing the hook.

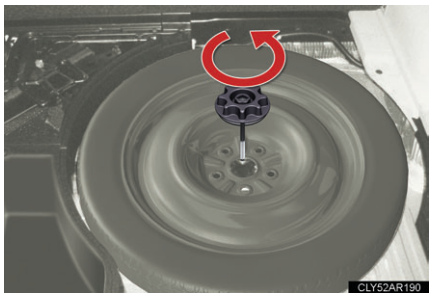
## Taking out the spare tire

STEP 1 Lift up the deck board. (See “Taking out the jack” for details.)

STEP 2 Remove the spare tire cover.

STEP 3 Loosen the center fastener that secures the spare tire.

▶ Vehicles with a compact spare tire

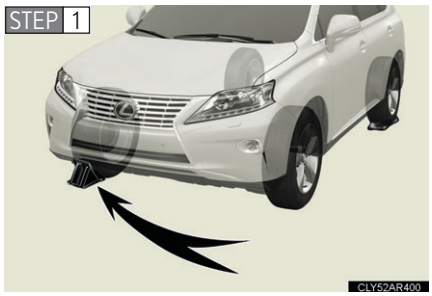



▶ Vehicles with a full-size spare tire



## Replacing a flat tire

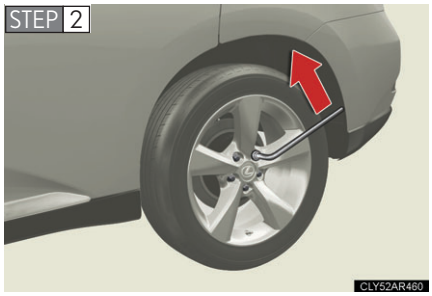
STEP 1




Chock the tires.

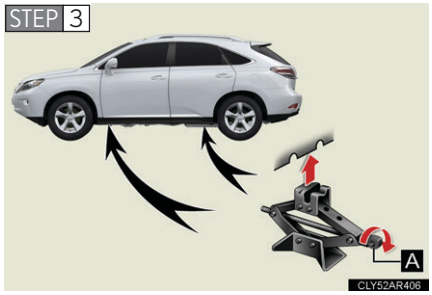
| Flat tire | | Wheel chock positions |
|---|---|---|
| Front | Left-hand side | Behind the rear right-hand side tire |
| | Right-hand side | Behind the rear left-hand side tire |
| Rear | Left-hand side | In front of the front right-hand side tire |
| | Right-hand side | In front of the front left-hand side tire |

STEP 2



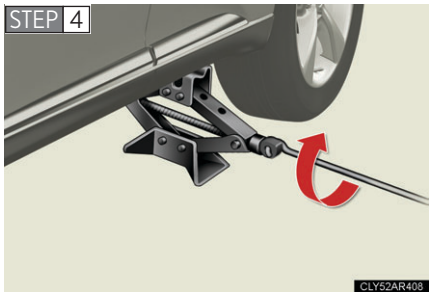

Slightly loosen the wheel nuts (one turn).

STEP 3



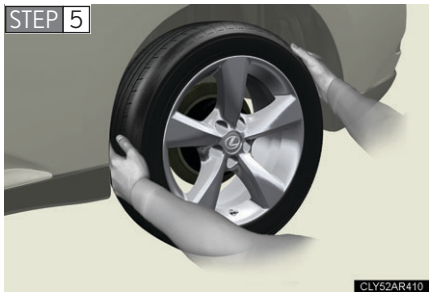

Turn the tire jack portion “A” by hand until the notch of the jack is in contact with the jack point.

STEP 4




Raise the vehicle until the tire is slightly raised off the ground.

STEP 5

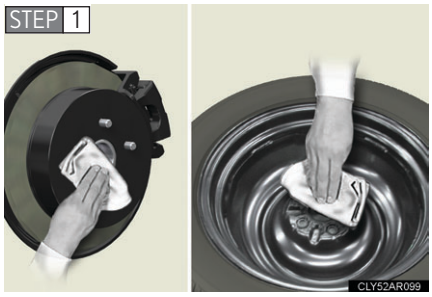



Remove all the wheel nuts and the tire.

When resting the tire on the ground, place the tire so that the wheel design faces up to avoid scratching the wheel surface.

## Installing the spare tire

STEP 1

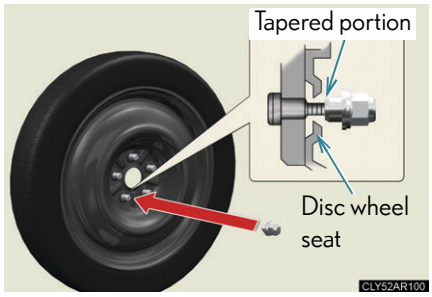



Remove any dirt or foreign matter from the wheel contact surface.

If foreign matter is on the wheel contact surface, the wheel nuts may loosen while the vehicle is in motion, causing the tire to come off.

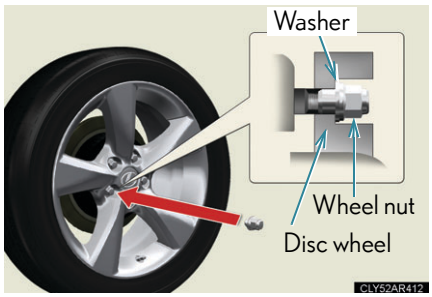
STEP 2 Install the spare tire and loosely tighten each wheel nut by hand by approximately the same amount.

▶ Vehicles with a compact spare tire

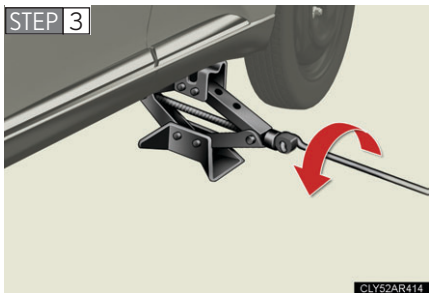



Tighten the nuts until the tapered portion comes into loose contact with the disc wheel seat.

▶ Vehicles with a full-size spare tire

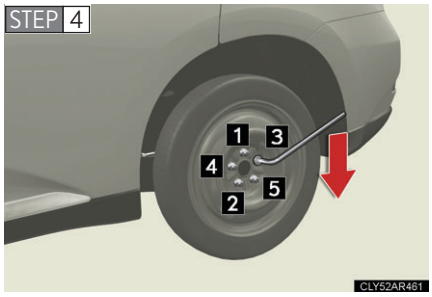



Turn the nuts until the washers come into contact with the wheel.




Lower the vehicle.

STEP 4




Firmly tighten each wheel nut two or three times in the order shown in the illustration.

**Tightening torque:**
103 N•m (10.5 kgf•m, 76 ft•lbf)

STEP 5 Stow the flat tire, tire jack and all tools.

---

### The compact spare tire (if equipped)

- The compact spare tire is identified by the label "TEMPORARY USE ONLY" on the tire sidewall.
  Use the compact spare tire temporarily, and only in an emergency.
- Make sure to check the tire inflation pressure of the compact spare tire. (→P. 617)

### When using the compact spare tire (if equipped)

As the compact spare tire is not equipped with a tire pressure warning valve and transmitter, low inflation pressure of the spare tire will not be indicated by the tire pressure warning system. Also, if you replace the compact spare tire after the tire pressure warning light comes on, the light remains on.

### If you have a flat front tire on a road covered with snow or ice (vehicles with a compact spare tire)

Install the compact spare tire on one of the rear wheels of the vehicle. Perform the following steps and fit tire chains to the front tires:

STEP 1 Replace a rear tire with the compact spare tire.

STEP 2 Replace the flat front tire with the tire removed from the rear of the vehicle.

STEP 3 Fit tire chains to the front tires.

### After completing the tire change (vehicles with tire pressure warning system)

The tire pressure warning system must be reset. (→P. 485)

## Certification for the jack

### DECLARATION OF "CE" CONFORMANCE

### EC Declaration of Conformity

1. The undersigned, Mr. Tony Fabiano, representing the manufacturer, herewith declares that the machinery described below fulfils all the relevant provisions of:

   - Directive 2006/42/EC, on Machinery

2. Description of the machinery

   a) Part Name: Jack Sub-Assy Pantograph
   b) Part Number: 09111-OE011 (FNG P/N 0300206)
   c) Function: lifting motor vehicle
   d) Vehicle Model: 415A
   e) Vehicle Type: Crossover SUV
   f) Serial Number: Not Applicable
   g) OEM: Lexus, a division of Toyota Motor Corporation

3. Manufacturer:

   Flex-N-Gate / Ventra, 75 Reagens Industrial Court, RR # 1 Bradford, ON, Canada L4A 2Z4

4. Person authorised to compile the technical file:

   Joan Grifoll
   Product Engineer
   FNG - BARCELONA
   Avda de la Riera, 7-9
   Sant Just Desvern, Barcelona
   Spain 08960

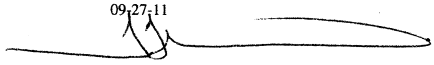
5. Applicable Harmonizing Standards:

   None

6. Other Standards or Specifications:

   Toyota Test Specification: TSF 9501G, Test Method for Car Jack Strength, Class C1, Rev. 6, April 2008

7. Done at: Bradford, Canada
8. Date: 09-27-11



Tony Fabiano
Director of Engineering
Flex-N-Gate/Ventra
Bradford Product Development Centre

## ⚠ CAUTION

**■ Using the tire jack**

Improper use of the tire jack may cause the vehicle to suddenly fall off the jack, leading to death or serious injury.

- Do not use the tire jack for any purpose other than replacing tires or installing and removing tire chains.
- Only use the tire jack that comes with this vehicle for replacing a flat tire. Do not use it on other vehicles, and do not use other tire jacks for replacing tires on this vehicle.
- Always check that the tire jack is securely set to the jack point.
- Do not put any part of your body under the vehicle while it is supported by the jack.
- Do not start or run the engine while your vehicle is supported by the jack.
- Do not raise the vehicle while someone is inside.
- When raising the vehicle, do not put an object on or under the jack.
- Do not raise the vehicle to a height greater than that required to replace the tire.
- Use a jack stand if it is necessary to get under the vehicle.
- Vehicles with electronically modulated air suspension: Be sure to turn off the height control and stop the engine.

Take particular care when lowering the vehicle to ensure that no one working on or near the vehicle may be injured.

## ⚠ CAUTION

### ■ Replacing a flat tire

● Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may result in serious injury:

- Do not touch the disc wheels or the area around the brakes immediately after the vehicle has been driven.
  After the vehicle has been driven the disc wheels and the area around the brakes will be extremely hot. Touching these areas with hands, feet or other body parts while changing a tire, etc. may result in burns.
- Do not attach a heavily damaged wheel ornament, as it may fly off the wheel while the vehicle is moving.

● Failure to follow these precautions could cause the wheel nuts to loosen and the tire to fall off, resulting in death or serious injury.

- Never use oil or grease on the wheel bolts or wheel nuts.
  Oil and grease may cause the wheel nuts to be excessively tightened, leading to bolt or disc wheel damage. In addition, the oil or grease can cause the wheel nuts to loosen and the wheel may fall off, causing a serious accident. Remove any oil or grease from the wheel bolts or wheel nuts.
- Have the wheel nuts tightened with a torque wrench to 103 N•m (10.5 kgf•m, 76 ft•lbf) as soon as possible after changing wheels.
- When installing a tire, only use wheel nuts that have been specifically designed for that wheel.
- If there are any cracks or deformations in the bolt screws, nut threads or bolt holes of the wheel, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional immediately.

### ■ Replacing a flat tire for vehicles with power back door

In cases such as when replacing tires, make sure to turn off the power back door main switch (→P. 62). Failure to do so may cause the back door to operate unintentionally if the power back door switch is accidentally touched, resulting in hands and fingers being caught and injured.

## ⚠ CAUTION

**■ When using the compact spare tire**

- Remember that the compact spare tire provided is specifically designed for use with your vehicle. Do not use your compact spare tire on another vehicle.
- Do not use more than one compact spare tire simultaneously.
- Replace the compact spare tire with a standard tire as soon as possible.
- Avoid sudden acceleration, abrupt steering, sudden braking and shifting operations that cause sudden engine braking.

**■ When the compact spare tire is attached**

The vehicle speed may not be correctly detected, and the following systems may not operate correctly:

- ABS & Brake assist
- VSC
- VSC+ (if equipped)
- TRC
- VDIM (if equipped)
- Lexus parking assist-sensor (if equipped)
- Navigation system (if equipped)
- Cruise control (if equipped)
- Dynamic radar cruise control (if equipped)
- Electronically modulated air suspension (if equipped)
- PCS (Pre-Crash Safety system) (if equipped)

Also, not only can the following system not be utilized fully, but it may even negatively affect the drive-train components:

- AWD system (if equipped)

**■ Speed limit when using the compact spare tire**

Do not drive at speeds in excess of 80 km/h (50 mph) when a compact spare tire is installed on the vehicle.

The compact spare tire is not designed for driving at high speeds. Failure to observe this precaution may lead to an accident causing death or serious injury.

## NOTICE

**■ Do not drive the vehicle with a flat tire**

Do not continue driving with a flat tire.
Driving even a short distance with a flat tire can damage the tire and the wheel beyond repair.

**■ Be careful when driving over bumps with the compact spare tire installed on the vehicle.**

The vehicle becomes lower when driving with the compact spare tire compared to when driving with standard tires. Be careful when driving over uneven road surfaces.

**■ Driving with tire chains and the compact spare tire**

Do not fit tire chains to the compact spare tire.
Tire chains may damage the vehicle body and adversely affect driving performance.

**■ When replacing the tires (vehicles with tire pressure warning system)**

When removing or fitting the wheels, tires or the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter, contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional as the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter may be damaged if not handled correctly.

**■ To avoid damage to the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters (vehicles with tire pressure warning system)**

When a tire is repaired with liquid sealants, the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter may not operate properly. If a liquid sealant is used, contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional or other qualified service shop as soon as possible. Make sure to replace the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter when replacing the tire. (→P. 484)

# If the engine will not start

**If the engine will not start even though correct starting procedures are being followed (→P. 180), consider each of the following points.**

## The engine will not start, even though the starter motor operates normally.

One of the following may be the cause of the problem:

- There may not be sufficient fuel in the vehicle's tank.
  Refuel the vehicle.
- The engine may be flooded.
  Try to restart the engine again following correct starting procedures. (→P. 180)
- There may be a malfunction in the engine immobilizer system. (→P. 115)

## The starter motor turns over slowly, the interior lights and headlights are dim, or the horn does not sound or sounds at a low volume.

One of the following may be the cause of the problem:

- The battery may be discharged. (→P. 594)
- The battery terminal connections may be loose or corroded.

## The starter motor does not turn over.

The engine starting system may be malfunctioning due to an electrical problem such as an open circuit or a blown fuse. However, an interim measure is available to start the engine. (→P. 588)

### The starter motor does not turn over, the interior lights and headlights do not turn on, or the horn does not sound.

One of the following may be the cause of the problem:

- One or both of the battery terminals may be disconnected.
- The battery may be discharged. (→P. 594)
- There may be a malfunction in the steering lock system.

Contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional if the problem cannot be repaired, or if repair procedures are unknown.

## Emergency start function

When the engine does not start, the following steps can be used as an interim measure to start the engine if the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is functioning normally:

STEP 1 Set the parking brake.

STEP 2 Shift the shift lever to P.

STEP 3 Turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch to ACCESSORY mode.

STEP 4 Press and hold the "ENGINE START STOP" switch for about 15 seconds while depressing the brake pedal firmly.

Even if the engine can be started using the above steps, the system may be malfunctioning. Have the vehicle checked by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

# If the shift lever cannot be shifted from P

**If the shift lever cannot be shifted with your foot on the brake pedal, there may be a problem with the shift lock system (a system to prevent accidental operation of the shift lever). Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional immediately.**

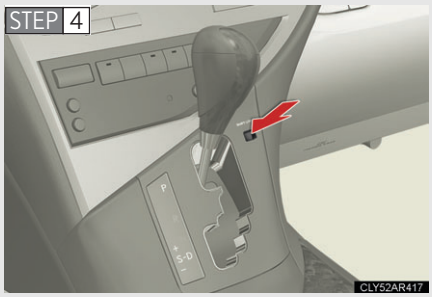
**The following steps may be used as an emergency measure to ensure that the shift lever can be shifted:**

STEP 1 Set the parking brake.

STEP 2 Turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch to ACCESSORY mode.

STEP 3 Depress the brake pedal.

STEP 4




Press the shift lock override button.

The shift lever can be shifted while the button is pressed.

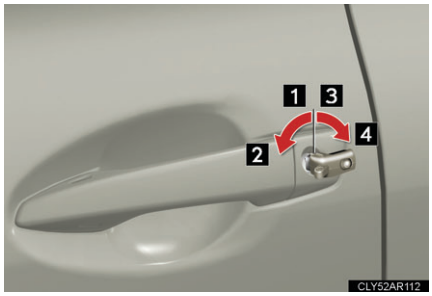
# If you lose your keys

New genuine Lexus keys can be made by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional, using one of the other keys and the key number stamped on your key number plate.

# If the electronic key does not operate properly

If communication between the electronic key and vehicle is interrupted (→P. 37) or the electronic key cannot be used because the battery is depleted, the smart entry & start system and wireless remote control cannot be used. In such cases, the doors can be opened and the engine can be started by following the procedure below.

## Locking and unlocking the side doors and key linked functions




Use the mechanical key (→P. 27) in order to perform the following operations (driver's door only):

1 Locks all the doors

2 Closes the windows and moon roof (turn and hold)

3 Unlocks all the doors

For some models:
An alarm will sound if the alarm is set. (→P. 122)

4 Opens the windows and moon roof (turn and hold)

## Starting the engine

STEP 1 Ensure that the shift lever is in P and depress the brake pedal.

STEP 2







Touch the Lexus emblem side of the electronic key to the "ENGINE START STOP" switch.

If any of the doors is opened or closed after the key is being touched to the switch, an alarm will sound to indicate that the start function cannot detect the electronic key.

STEP 3 Press the "ENGINE START STOP" switch within 10 seconds of the buzzer sounding, keeping the brake pedal depressed.

In the event that the "ENGINE START STOP" switch still cannot be operated, contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

■ **Stopping the engine**

Shift the shift lever to P and press the "ENGINE START STOP" switch as you normally do when stopping the engine.

■ **Replacing the key battery**

As the above procedure is a temporary measure, it is recommended that the electronic key battery be replaced immediately when the battery is depleted.
(→P. 501)

■ **Alarm**

Using the mechanical key to lock the doors will not set the alarm system.
If a door is unlocked using the mechanical key when the alarm system is set, the alarm may be triggered. (→P. 122)

■ **Changing "ENGINE START STOP" switch modes**

Within 10 seconds of the buzzer sounding, release the brake pedal and press the "ENGINE START STOP" switch.
The engine does not start and modes will be changed each time the switch is pressed. (→P. 181)

# If the vehicle battery is discharged

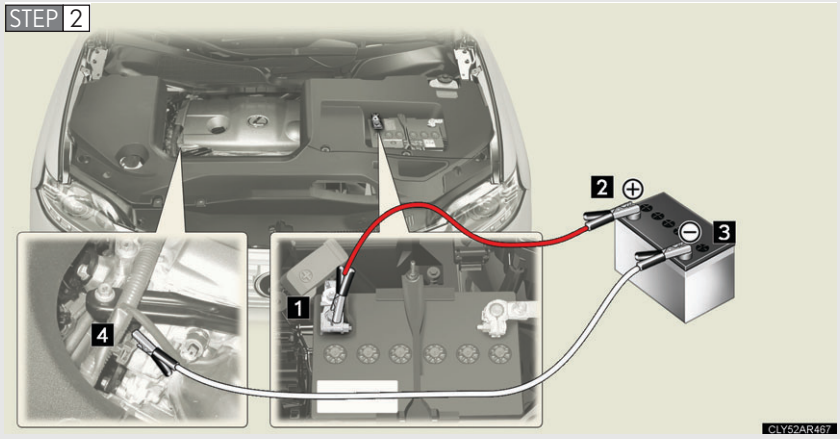
**The following procedures may be used to start the engine if the vehicle's battery is discharged.**
**You can also call any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.**

If you have a set of jumper (or booster) cables and a second vehicle with a battery, you can jump start your vehicle by following the steps below.

STEP 1 Open the hood. Remove the battery cover. (→P. 471)

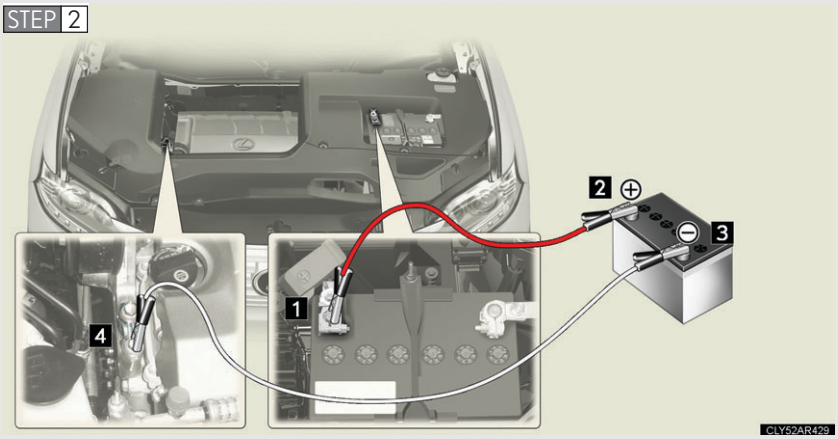
▶ RX270

STEP 2



▶ RX350

STEP 2




Connect the jumper cables according to the following procedure:

1 Connect a positive jumper cable clamp to the positive (+) battery terminal on your vehicle.

2 Connect a positive jumper cable clamp to the positive (+) battery terminal on the second vehicle.

3 Connect a negative cable clamp to the negative (-) battery terminal on the second vehicle.

4 Connect the clamp at the other end of the negative cable to a solid, stationary, unpainted metallic point away from the battery and any moving parts, as shown in the illustration.

STEP 3 Start the engine of the second vehicle. Increase the engine speed slightly and maintain that level for approximately 5 minutes to recharge the battery of your vehicle.

STEP 4 Open and close any of the doors with the “ENGINE START STOP” switch off.

STEP 5 Maintain the engine speed of the second vehicle and start the engine of your vehicle by turning the “ENGINE START STOP” switch to IGNITION ON mode.

STEP 6 Once the vehicle's engine has started, remove the jumper cables in the exact reverse order from which they were connected.

Once the engine starts, have the vehicle inspected at any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional as soon as possible.

### Starting the engine when the battery is discharged

The engine cannot be started by push-starting.

### To prevent battery discharge

- Turn off the headlights and the audio system while the engine is off.
- Turn off any unnecessary electrical components when the vehicle is running at a low speed for an extended period, such as in heavy traffic.

### When the battery is removed or discharged

- The power back door must be initialized. (if equipped) (→P. 633)
- Make sure that the key is not inside the vehicle when recharging or replacing the battery. The key may be locked in the vehicle if the alarm is activated. (→P. 125)

### Charging the battery

The electricity stored in the battery will discharge gradually even when the vehicle is not in use, due to natural discharge and the draining effects of certain electrical appliances. If the vehicle is left for a long time, the battery may discharge, and the engine may be unable to start. (The battery recharges automatically during driving.)

## ⚠ CAUTION

**■ Avoiding battery fires or explosions**

Observe the following precautions to prevent accidentally igniting the flammable gas that may be emitted from the battery:

- Make sure each jumper cable is connected to the correct terminal and that it is not unintentionally in contact with any other than the intended terminal.
- Do not allow the + and - clamps of the jumper cables to come into contact with each other.
- Do not smoke, use matches, cigarette lighters or allow open flame near the battery.

**■ Battery precautions**

The battery contains poisonous and corrosive acidic electrolyte, while related parts contain lead and lead compounds. Observe the following precautions when handling the battery:

- When working with the battery, always wear safety glasses and take care not to allow any battery fluids (acid) to come into contact with skin, clothing or the vehicle body.
- Do not lean over the battery.
- In the event that battery fluid comes into contact with the skin or eyes, immediately wash the affected area with water and seek medical attention.
  Place a wet sponge or cloth over the affected area until medical attention can be received.
- Always wash your hands after handling the battery support, terminals, and other battery-related parts.
- Do not allow children near the battery.

## ⚠ NOTICE

**■ When handling jumper cables**

When connecting the jumper cables, ensure that they do not become entangled in the cooling fans or belt.

# If your vehicle overheats

The following may indicate that your vehicle is overheating.

- "ENGINE OVERHEAT" is shown on the multi-information display.
- Steam comes out from under the hood.

## Correction procedures

STEP 1 Stop the vehicle in a safe place and turn off the air conditioning system, and then stop the engine.

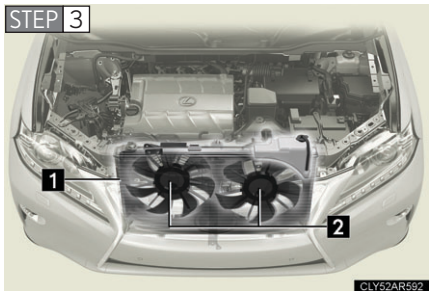
STEP 2 If you see steam:

Carefully lift the hood after the steam subsides.

If you do not see steam:

Carefully lift the hood.

STEP 3



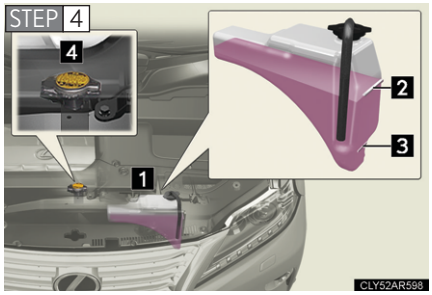

After the engine has cooled down sufficiently, inspect the hoses and radiator core (radiator) for any leaks.

1 Radiator

2 Cooling fans

If a large amount of coolant leaks, immediately contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

STEP 4



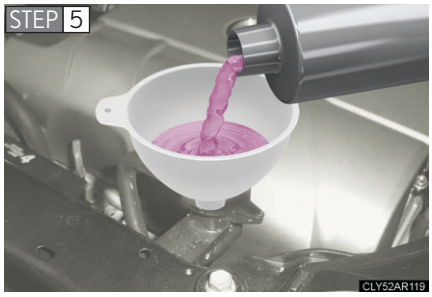

The coolant level is satisfactory if it is between the "FULL" and "LOW" lines on the reservoir.

1 Reservoir

2 "FULL" line

3 "LOW" line

4 "Radiator cap




Add coolant if necessary.
(→P. 470)

Water can be used in an emergency if coolant is unavailable.

STEP 6 Start the engine and turn the air conditioning system on to check that the radiator cooling fans operate and to check for coolant leaks from the radiator or hoses.

The fans operate when the air conditioning system is turned on immediately after a cold start. Confirm that the fans are operating by checking the fan sound and air flow. If it is difficult to check these, turn the air conditioning system on and off repeatedly.
(The fans may not operate in freezing temperatures.)

STEP 7 If the fans are not operating:

Stop the engine immediately and contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

If the fans are operating:

Have the vehicle inspected at the nearest authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

## ⚠ CAUTION

**■ To prevent an accident or injury when inspecting under the hood of your vehicle**

- If steam is seen coming from under the hood, do not open the hood until the steam has subsided. The engine compartment may be very hot, causing serious injuries such as burns.
- Keep hands and clothing (especially a tie, a scarf or a muffler) away from the fans and belts. Failure to do so may cause the hands or clothing to be caught, resulting in serious injury.
- Do not loosen the radiator cap while the engine and radiator are hot.
  Serious injury, such as burns, may result from hot coolant and steam released under pressure.

## ⚠ NOTICE

**■ When adding engine coolant**

Wait until the engine has cooled down before adding engine coolant.
When adding coolant, do so slowly. Adding cool coolant to a hot engine too quickly can cause damage to the engine.

**■ To prevent damage to the cooling system**

Observe the following precautions:

- Avoid contaminating the coolant with foreign matter (such as sand or dust etc.).
- Do not use any coolant additives.

# If the vehicle becomes stuck

**Carry out the following procedures if the tires spin or the vehicle becomes stuck in mud, dirt or snow:**

STEP 1 Stop the engine. Set the parking brake and shift the shift lever to P.

STEP 2 Remove the mud, snow or sand from around the front wheels.

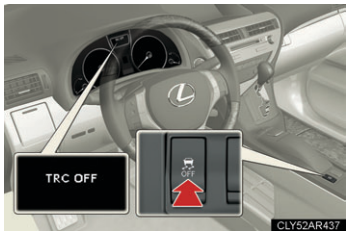
STEP 3 Place wood, stones or some other material under the front wheels to help provide traction.

STEP 4 Restart the engine.

STEP 5 AWD models: Activate all-wheel drive lock mode. (→P. 277)

STEP 6 Shift the shift lever to the D or R position and release the parking brake. Then, while exercising caution, depress the accelerator pedal.

## ■ When it is difficult to free the vehicle




Press the VSC off switch to turn off TRC.

## ⚠ CAUTION

**■ When attempting to free a stuck vehicle**

If you choose to push the vehicle back and forth to free it, make sure the surrounding area is clear to avoid striking other vehicles, objects or people. The vehicle may also lunge forward or lunge back suddenly as it becomes free. Use extreme caution.

**■ When shifting the shift lever**

Be careful not to shift the shift lever with the accelerator pedal depressed.
This may lead to unexpected rapid acceleration of the vehicle that may cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

## ⚠ NOTICE

**■ To avoid damage to the transmission and other components**

- Avoid spinning the front wheels and depressing the accelerator pedal more than necessary.
- If the vehicle remains stuck even after these procedures are performed, the vehicle may require towing to be freed.

# If your vehicle has to be stopped in an emergency

**Only in an emergency, such as if it becomes impossible to stop the vehicle in the normal way, stop the vehicle using the following procedure:**

STEP 1 Steadily step on the brake pedal with both feet and firmly depress it.

Do not pump the brake pedal repeatedly as this will increase the effort required to slow the vehicle.

STEP 2 Shift the shift lever to N.

▶ If the shift lever is shifted to N

STEP 3 After slowing down, stop the vehicle in a safe place by the road.

STEP 4 Stop the engine.

▶ If the shift lever cannot be shifted to N

STEP 3 Keep depressing the brake pedal with both feet to reduce vehicle speed as much as possible.

STEP 4




Press and hold for 2 seconds or more, or press briefly 3 times or more

CLY52AR464

To stop the engine, press and hold the "ENGINE START STOP" switch for 2 consecutive seconds or more, or press it briefly 3 times or more in succession.

STEP 5 Stop the vehicle in a safe place by the road.

## ⚠ CAUTION

**■ If the engine has to be turned off while driving**

Power assist for the brakes and steering wheel will be lost, making the brake pedal harder to depress and the steering wheel heavier to turn. Decelerate as much as possible before turning off the engine.

RX350_270_EE_48D77E. book　605 ページ　２０１４年１月２４日　金曜日　午前１０時４分

# Vehicle specifications 6

**6-1. Specifications**

Maintenance data (fuel, oil level, etc.)..... 606

Fuel information ..... 620

**6-2. Customization**

Customizable features..... 622

**6-3. Initialization**

Items to initialize..... 633

## Dimensions and weights

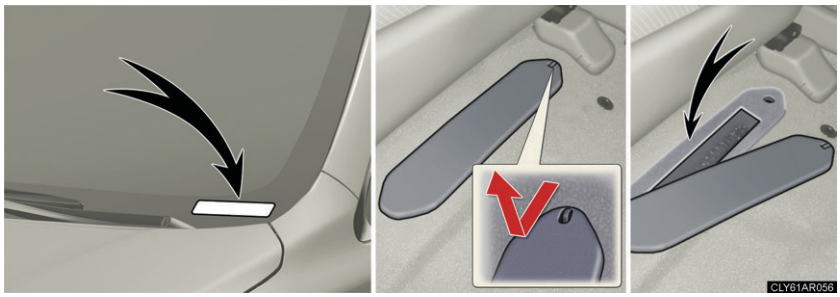
| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Overall length | | 4770 mm (187.8 in.) |
| Overall width | | 1885 mm (74.2 in.) |
| Overall height*1 | | 1685 mm (66.3 in.)*2<br>1690 mm (66.5 in.)*3<br>1720 mm (67.7 in.)*4<br>1725 mm (67.9 in.)*5 |
| Wheelbase | | 2740 mm (107.9 in.) |
| Tread | Front | 1630 mm (64.1 in.) |
| | Rear | 1625 mm (64.0 in.) |
| Gross vehicle mass | | ▶ RX270<br>2410 kg (5313 lb.)<br>▶ RX350<br>2545 kg (5611 lb.) |
| Maximum permissible axle capacity | Front | 1490 kg (3285 lb.) |
| | Rear | 1490 kg (3285 lb.) |
| Drawbar load*6 | | 80 kg (176 lb.) |
| Towing capacity*6 | With brake | 2000 kg (4409 lb.) |
| | Without brake | 750 kg (1653 lb.) |

*1: Unladen vehicles
*2: Vehicles without panoramic roof and roof rails
*3: Vehicles with panoramic roof
*4: Vehicles with roof rails and electronically modulated air suspension
*5: Vehicles with roof rails but without electronically modulated air suspension
*6: RX350 only

## Vehicle identification

### Vehicle identification number

The vehicle identification number (VIN) is the legal identifier for your vehicle. This is the primary identification number for your Lexus. It is used in registering the ownership of your vehicle.




This number is stamped on the top left of the instrument panel and under the right-hand front seat.

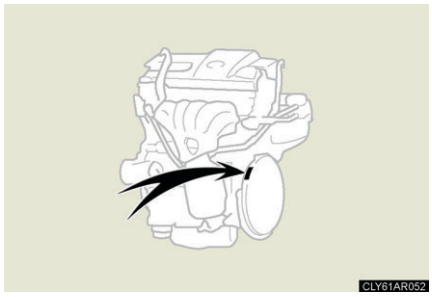



This number is also on the manufacturer's label.

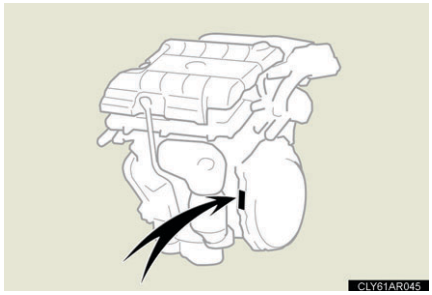
## Engine number

The engine number is stamped on the engine block as shown.

▶ RX270




▶ RX350



## Engine

▶ RX270

| | |
|---|---|
| Model | 1AR-FE |
| Type | 4-cylinder in line, 4-cycle, gasoline |
| Bore and stroke | 90.0 × 105.0 mm (3.54 × 4.13 in.) |
| Displacement | 2672 $cm^3$ (163.0 cu.in.) |
| Drive belt tension | Automatic adjustment |

▶ RX350

| | |
|---|---|
| Model | 2GR-FE |
| Type | 6-cylinder V type, 4-cycle, gasoline |
| Bore and stroke | 94.0 × 83.0 mm (3.70 × 3.27 in.) |
| Displacement | 3456 $cm^3$ (210.9 cu.in.) |
| Drive belt tension | Automatic adjustment |

## Fuel

| | |
|---|---|
| Fuel type | EU area:<br>Unleaded gasoline conforming to European standard EN228 only<br>Except EU area:<br>Unleaded gasoline only |
| Research octane number | 95 or higher |
| Fuel tank capacity (Reference) | 72 L (19.0 gal., 15.8 Imp. gal.) |

## Lubrication system

▶ RX270

| | |
|---|---|
| Oil capacity (Drain and refill — reference*) | |
| With filter | 4.4 L (4.6 qt., 3.9 Imp. qt.) |
| Without filter | 4.0 L (4.2 qt., 3.5 Imp. qt.) |

▶ RX350

| | |
|---|---|
| Oil capacity (Drain and refill — reference*) | |
| With filter | 6.1 L (6.4 qt., 5.4 Imp. qt.) |
| Without filter | 5.7 L (6.0 qt., 5.0 Imp. qt.) |

*: The engine oil capacity is a reference quantity to be used when changing the engine oil. Warm up and turn off the engine, wait more than 5 minutes, and check the oil level on the dipstick.

### Engine oil selection

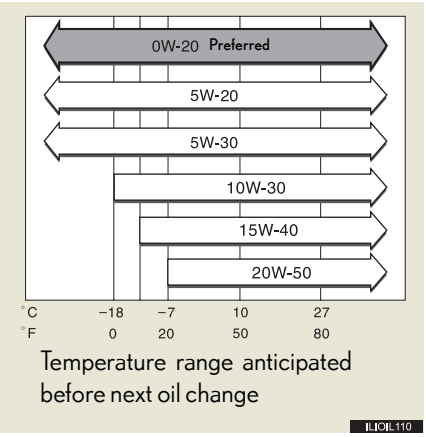
"Toyota Genuine Motor Oil" is used in your Lexus vehicle. Lexus recommends the use of approved "Toyota Genuine Motor Oil". Another motor oil of matching quality can also be used.

Oil grade:

0W-20, 5W-20, 5W-30 and 10W-30:
API grade SL "Energy-Conserving", SM "Energy-Conserving" or SN "Resource-Conserving"; or ILSAC multigrade engine oil

15W-40 and 20W-50:
API grade SL, SM or SN multigrade engine oil

Recommended viscosity (SAE):




Temperature range anticipated before next oil change

SAE 0W-20 is filled into your Lexus vehicle at manufacturing, and the best choice for good fuel economy and good starting in cold weather.

If SAE 0W-20 oil is not available, SAE 5W-30 oil may be used. However, it should be replaced with SAE 0W-20 at the next oil change.

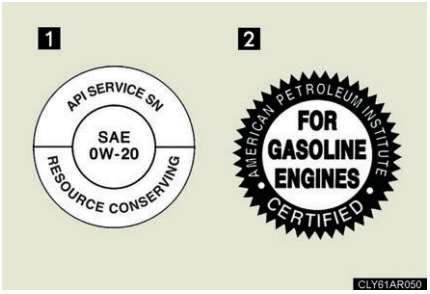
If you use SAE 10W-30 or a higher viscosity engine oil in extremely low temperatures, the engine may become difficult to start, so SAE 0W-20, 5W-20 or 5W-30 engine oil is recommended.

Oil viscosity (0W-20 is explained here as an example):

- The 0W in 0W-20 indicates the characteristic of the oil which allows cold startability. Oils with a lower value before the W allow for easier starting of the engine in cold weather.
- The 20 in 0W-20 indicates the viscosity characteristic of the oil when the oil is at high temperature. An oil with a higher viscosity (one with a higher value) may be better suited if the vehicle is operated at high speeds, or under extreme load conditions.

How to read oil container labels:

Either or both API registered marks are added to some oil containers to help you select the oil you should use.




### 1 API Service Symbol

Top portion: “API SERVICE SN” means the oil quality designation by American Petroleum Institute) (API).

Center portion: “SAE 0W-20” means the SAE viscosity grade.

Lower portion: “Resource-Conserving” means that the oil has fuel-saving and environmental protection capabilities.

### 2 ILSAC Certification Mark

The International Lubricant Specification Advisory Committee (ILSAC) Certification Mark is displayed on the front of the container.

## Cooling system

| | |
|---|---|
| Capacity | ▶ RX270<br>6.7 L (7.1 qt., 5.9 Imp. qt.)<br>▶ RX350<br>9.5 L (10.0 qt., 8.4 Imp. qt.) |
| Coolant type | Use either of the following:<br>• "Toyota Super Long Life Coolant"<br>• A similar high-quality ethylene glycol-based non-silicate, non-amine, non-nitrite, and non-borate coolant with long-life hybrid organic acid technology<br>Do not use plain water alone. |

## Ignition system

| | |
|---|---|
| Spark plug<br>Make | ▶ RX270<br>DENSO SK16HR11<br>▶ RX350<br>DENSO FK20HR11 |
| Gap | 1.1 mm (0.043 in.) |

**NOTICE**

**■ Iridium-tipped spark plugs**

Use only iridium-tipped spark plugs. Do not adjust the spark plug gap.

## Electrical system

| | |
|---|---|
| Battery<br>Specific gravity reading at 20°C (68°F): | 1.250—1.290 Fully charged<br>1.160—1.200 Half charged<br>1.060—1.100 Discharged |
| Charging rates<br>Quick charge<br>Slow charge | <br>15 A max.<br>5 A max. |

## Automatic Transaxle

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Fluid capacity* | RX270 | 6.5 L (6.9 qt., 5.7 Imp. qt.) |
| | RX350 | 6.7 L (7.1 qt., 5.9 Imp. qt.) |
| Fluid type | | Toyota Genuine ATF WS |

*: The fluid capacity is a reference quantity. If replacement is necessary, contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

### ⚠ NOTICE

**■ Automatic transmission fluid type**

Using automatic transmission fluid other than “Toyota Genuine ATF WS” may cause deterioration in shift quality, locking up of your transmission accompanied by vibration, and ultimately damage to the automatic transmission of your vehicle.

## Transfer (RX350)

| | |
|---|---|
| Oil capacity | 0.8 L (0.8 qt., 0.7 Imp. qt.) |
| Oil type and viscosity* | Toyota Genuine Differential gear oil LT 75W-85 GL-5 or equivalent |

*: Your Lexus vehicle is filled with "Toyota Genuine Differential Gear Oil" at the factory. Use Lexus approved "Toyota Genuine Differential Gear Oil" or an equivalent oil of matching quality that satisfies the above specifications. Please contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional for further details.

## Rear differential (RX350)

| | |
|---|---|
| Oil capacity | 0.5 L (0.5 qt., 0.4 Imp. qt.) |
| Oil type and viscosity* | Toyota Genuine Differential gear oil LT 75W-85 GL-5 or equivalent |

*: Your Lexus vehicle is filled with "Toyota Genuine Differential Gear Oil" at the factory. Use Lexus approved "Toyota Genuine Differential Gear Oil" or an equivalent oil of matching quality that satisfies the above specifications. Please contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional for further details.

## Brakes

| | |
|---|---|
| Pedal clearance *1 | 88 mm (3.5 in.) Min. |
| Pedal free play | 1—6 mm (0.04—0.24 in.) |
| Parking brake pedal travel *2 | 7—10 clicks |
| Fluid type | SAE J1703 or FMVSS No. 116 DOT 3 or, SAE J1704 or FMVSS No. 116 DOT 4 |

*1: Minimum pedal clearance when depressed with a force of 500 N (51 kgf, 112 lbf) while the engine is running

*2: Parking brake pedal travel when depressed with a force of 300 N (31 kgf, 67.5 lbf)

## Steering

| | |
|---|---|
| Free play | Less than 30 mm (1.2 in.) |

## Tires and wheels

▶ Type A

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Tire size | 235/60R18 103V, T165/90D18 107M (spare) | | |
| Tire inflation pressure (front and rear) (recommended cold tire inflation pressure) | Vehicle speed | Front wheel kPa (kgf/cm$^2$ or bar, psi) | Rear wheel kPa (kgf/cm$^2$ or bar, psi) |
| | More than 160 km/h (100 mph) | 240 (2.4, 35) | 260 (2.6, 38) |
| | 160 km/h (100 mph) or less | 220 (2.2, 32) | 220 (2.2, 32) |
| Tire inflation pressure (spare) (recommended cold tire inflation pressure) | 420 kPa (4.2 kgf/cm$^2$ or bar, 60 psi) | | |
| Wheel size | 18 × 7 1/2J, 18 × 4T (spare) | | |
| Wheel nut torque | 103 N•m (10.5 kgf•m, 76 ft•lbf) | | |

▶ Type B

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Tire size | 235/60R18 103V | | |
| Tire inflation pressure (recommended cold tire inflation pressure) | Vehicle speed | Front wheel kPa (kgf/cm$^2$ or bar, psi) | Rear wheel kPa (kgf/cm$^2$ or bar, psi) |
| | More than 160 km/h (100 mph) | 240 (2.4, 35) | 260 (2.6, 38) |
| | 160 km/h (100 mph) or less | 220 (2.2, 32) | 220 (2.2, 32) |
| Wheel size | 18 × 7 1/2J | | |
| Wheel nut torque | 103 N•m (10.5 kgf•m, 76 ft•lbf) | | |

▶ Type C

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Tire size | 235/55R19 101V, T165/90D18 107M (spare) | | |
| Tire inflation pressure (front and rear) (recommended cold tire inflation pressure) | Vehicle speed | Front wheel kPa (kgf/cm$^2$ or bar, psi) | Rear wheel kPa (kgf/cm$^2$ or bar, psi) |
| | More than 160 km/h (100 mph) | 250 (2.5, 36) | 280 (2.8, 41) |
| | 160 km/h (100 mph) or less | 220 (2.2, 32) | 220 (2.2, 32) |
| Tire inflation pressure (spare) (recommended cold tire inflation pressure) | 420 kPa (4.2 kgf/cm$^2$ or bar, 60 psi) | | |
| Wheel size | 19 × 7 1/2J, 18 × 4T (spare) | | |
| Wheel nut torque | 103 N•m (10.5 kgf•m, 76 ft•lbf) | | |

▶ Type D

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Tire size | 235/55R19 101V | | |
| Tire inflation pressure (recommended cold tire inflation pressure) | Vehicle speed | Front wheel kPa (kgf/cm$^2$ or bar, psi) | Rear wheel kPa (kgf/cm$^2$ or bar, psi) |
| | More than 160 km/h (100 mph) | 250 (2.5, 36) | 280 (2.8, 41) |
| | 160 km/h (100 mph) or less | 220 (2.2, 32) | 220 (2.2, 32) |
| Wheel size | 19 × 7 1/2J | | |
| Wheel nut torque | 103 N•m (10.5 kgf•m, 76 ft•lbf) | | |

## Light bulbs

| | Light bulbs | W | Type |
|---|---|---|---|
| Exterior | Headlights | | |
| | High beam | 65 | A |
| | Low beam (discharge bulbs)* | 35 | B |
| | Low beam (halogen bulbs)* | 55 | C |
| | Front turn signal lights | 21 | D |
| | Front fog lights | 19 | E |
| | Rear turn signal lights | 21 | D |
| | Tail lights | 5 | F |
| | Back-up lights | 16 | F |
| | Rear fog lights | 21 | F |
| | Outer foot lights | 5 | F |
| Interior | Vanity lights | 8 | F |
| | Front interior lights | 5 | F |
| | Rear interior light | 8 | F |
| | Luggage compartment lights | 5 | F |
| | Door courtesy lights | 5 | F |
| | Footwell lights | 3.8 | F |

A: H9 halogen bulbs
B: D4S discharge bulbs
C: H11 halogen bulbs
D: Wedge base bulbs (amber)
E: H16 halogen bulbs
F: Wedge base bulbs (clear)
*: If equipped

# Fuel information

**EU area:**
**Your vehicle must use only unleaded gasoline conforming to European standard EN228.**
**For optimum engine performance, select unleaded gasoline with a Research Octane Number of 95 or higher.**

**Except EU area:**
**Your vehicle must use only unleaded gasoline.**
**For optimum engine performance, select unleaded gasoline with a Research Octane Number of 95 or higher.**

## ■ Fuel tank opening for unleaded gasoline

To help prevent incorrect fueling, your Lexus has a fuel tank opening that only accommodates the special nozzle on unleaded fuel pumps.

## ■ If premium gasoline is not available

If this premium type cannot be obtained, you can use unleaded gasoline with a Research Octane Number as low as 91.

The use of such gasoline may cause the engine to knock or drastically reduce output to protect itself while driving with a heavy load. To avoid this, refill the tank with premium unleaded gasoline as soon as possible.

## ■ If your engine knocks

- Consult any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
- You may occasionally notice light knocking for a short time while accelerating or driving uphill. This is normal and there is no need for concern.

NOTICE

■ Notice on fuel quality

- Do not use improper fuels. If improper fuels are used, the engine will be damaged.
- Do not use leaded gasoline.
  Leaded gasoline will cause the three-way catalytic converter to lose its effectiveness and the emission control system to function improperly.
- Gasoline engine (EU area): Bioethanol fuel sold under names such as “E50” or “E85” and fuel containing a large amount of ethanol should not be used. The use of these fuels will damage the vehicle's fuel system. In case of any doubt, ask any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
- Gasoline engine (except EU area): Bioethanol fuel sold under names such as “E50” or “E85” and fuel containing a large amount of ethanol should not be used. Your vehicle can use gasoline mixed with 10% max ethanol. The use of fuel with more than 10% ethanol content (E10) will damage the vehicle’s fuel system. You must ensure that refueling is carried out only from a source where fuel specification and quality can be guaranteed. In case of any doubt, ask any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

# Customizable features

**Your vehicle includes a variety of electronic features that can be personalized to suit your preferences. Programming of these preferences can be performed by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.**

**It is also possible to customize certain vehicle features yourself using the multi-information switches and the navigation system screen.**

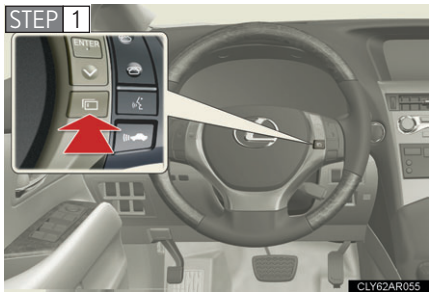
Some function settings are changed simultaneously with other functions being customized. Contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional for further details.

## Customizing vehicle features

It is possible to customize certain vehicle features using the multi-information switches.*

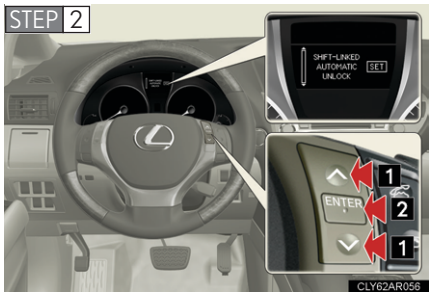
*: For instructions on customizing vehicle features using the navigation system screen, refer to the “Navigation System Owner’s Manual”.

When customizing vehicle features, ensure that the vehicle is parked in a safe place with the shift lever in P and the parking brake set.



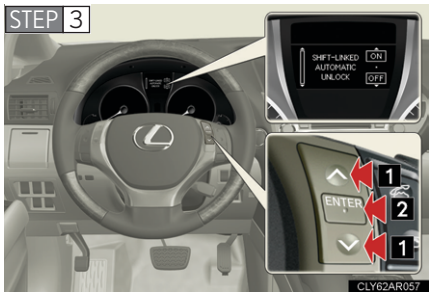

Press and hold the menu switch of the multi-information switches to display customize mode.

STEP 2




1 Press the "∧" or "∨" switch to select the item to be customized.
2 Press the "ENTER" switch to confirm.

STEP 3




1 Press the "∧" or "∨" switch to select the desired setting for the item being customized.
2 Press the "ENTER" switch to confirm.

When customization is completed, press the menu switch to clear the customization screen.

## Customizable Features

1 Vehicles with a navigation system: Settings that can be changed using the screen of the navigation system

2 Vehicles with a navigation system: Settings that can be changed using the multi-information switches

3 Vehicles without a navigation system: Settings that can be changed using the multi-information switches

4 Settings that can be changed by authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional for further details

Definition of symbols: O = Available, – = Not available

| Item | Function | Default setting | Customized setting | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Door lock (→P. 56, 591) | Unlocking using a key | All doors unlocked in one step | Driver's door unlocked in one step, all doors unlocked in two steps | O | – | – | O |
| | Shifting gears to P unlocks all doors | Off | On | O | – | O | O |
| | Opening driver's door unlocks all doors | On | Off | O | – | O | O |

| Item | Function | Default setting | Customized setting | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Smart entry & start system and wireless remote control (→P. 31, 53) | Operation signal (emergency flashers) | On | Off | ○ | – | ○ | ○ |
| | Time elapsed before the automatic door lock function is activated if a door is not opened after being unlocked | 30 seconds | 60 seconds | ○ | – | ○ | ○ |
| | | | 120 seconds | | | | |
| Smart entry & start system (→P. 31) | Smart door unlocking | Driver's door | All the doors | ○ | – | ○ | ○ |
| | Smart entry & start system | On | Off | ○ | – | ○ | ○ |
| | Open door warning buzzer | On | Off | – | – | – | ○ |
| Wireless remote control (→P. 53) | Unlocking operation | All doors unlocked in one step | Driver's door unlocked in one step, all doors unlocked in two steps | ○ | – | ○ | ○ |

| Item | Function | Default setting | Customized setting | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Automatic light control system (→P. 217) | Light sensor sensitivity | Standard | -2 to 2 | ○ | – | ○ | ○ |
| | Light reminder buzzer | On | Off | – | – | – | ○ |
| | Daytime running light system | On | Off | ○ | – | ○ | ○ |
| | Time that the low beam headlights are on when the vehicle is parked | 30 seconds | 60 seconds | – | – | – | ○ |
| | | | 90 seconds | | | | |
| | | | 120 seconds | | | | |

| Item | Function | Default setting | Customized setting | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Illumination (→P. 417) | Time elapsed before the interior lights turn off | 15 seconds | 7.5 seconds | ○ | – | ○ | ○ |
| | | | 30 seconds | | | | |
| | Time elapsed before the exterior lights turn off | 15 seconds | 7.5 seconds | ○ | – | ○ | ○ |
| | | | 30 seconds | | | | |
| | Operation when the doors are unlocked | On | Off | – | – | – | ○ |
| | Operation after the “ENGINE START STOP” switch turned off | On | Off | – | – | – | ○ |
| | Operation when you approach the vehicle with the electronic key on your person | On | Off | – | – | – | ○ |

| Item | Function | Default setting | Customized setting | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Illumination (→P. 417) | Wireless remote control linked exterior lights when the surrounding area is dark | On | Off | – | – | – | O |
| | Interior light control | On | Off | O | – | O | O |
| | Exterior light control | On | Off | O | – | O | O |
| | Shift lever lights | On | Off | – | – | – | O |
| Seat belt reminder (→P. 546) | Vehicle speed linked seat belt reminder buzzer | On | Off | – | – | – | O |

| Item | Function | Default setting | Customized setting | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Automatic air conditioning system (→P. 314) | Switching between outside air and recirculated air mode linked to "AUTO" switch operation | Auto | Manual | O | – | – | O |
| | A/C auto switch operation | Auto | Manual | O | – | – | O |
| | Exhaust gas sensor sensitivity | Standard | -3 to 3 | O | – | – | O |
| Driving position memory (→P. 81) | Driver's seat movement when exiting the vehicle (on some models) | Full | Off | O | – | O | O |
| | | | Partial | | | | |
| | Selecting whether the driver's door or all doors are linked to the power easy access system | Driver's door | All the doors | – | – | – | O |
| Meter (→P. 171) | Eco Driving Indicator Light | On | Off | – | O | O | O |
| Multi-information display (→P. 208) | Window close suggestion mode | On | Off | – | O | O | O |

| Item | Function | Default setting | Customized setting | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Power windows (→P. 101) | Mechanical key linked operation | On | Off | – | – | – | O |
| | Wireless remote control linked operation | Off | On | – | – | – | O |
| | Wireless remote control linked opening buzzer | On | Off | – | – | – | O |
| Moon roof (→P. 104) | Mechanical key linked operation | On | Off | – | – | – | O |
| | Wireless remote control linked operation* | On | Off | – | – | – | O |
| | Linked operation of components when door key is used | Slide only | Tilt only | – | – | – | O |
| | Linked operation of components when wireless remote control is used | Slide only | Tilt only | – | – | – | O |

| Item | Function | Default setting | Customized setting | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Turn signal lever (→P. 193) | Times of flashing of the lane change signal flashers | 3 | 5 | O | – | – | O |
| | | | 7 | | | | |
| | | | 9 | | | | |
| | | | 11 | | | | |
| | | | Off | | | | |
| Lexus parking assist-sensor (→P. 248) | Buzzer volume | 3 | 1 to 5 | O | – | – | O |
| | Detection distance of the front center sensors | Far | Near | O | – | – | O |
| | Detection distance of the rear center sensors | Far | Near | O | – | – | O |
| | Display setting (when Lexus parking assist-sensor is operating) | All sensors displayed | No sensors displayed | O | – | – | O |

*: This function cannot be customized unless power window operation using the wireless remote control is enabled.

## Multi-information display (→P. 203)

Settings that can be changed using the multi-information switches

| Available units* |
| --- |
| miles (MPG), km (km/l), km (l/100 km) |

| Available languages* |
| --- |
| English, French, Spanish, Russia, Chinese German and Italian |

*: The settings vary according to the country or area that the vehicle was sold in.

**■ In the following situations, customize mode will automatically be turned off.**

- A warning message appears after the customize mode screen is displayed.
- The “ENGINE START STOP” switch is turned off.
- The vehicle begins to move while the customize mode screen is displayed.

### ⚠ CAUTION

**■ Cautions during customization**

As the engine needs to be running during customization, ensure that the vehicle is parked in a place with adequate ventilation. In a closed area such as a garage, exhaust gases including harmful carbon monoxide (CO) may collect and enter the vehicle. This may lead to death or a serious health hazard.

### NOTICE

**■ During customization**

To prevent battery discharge, ensure that the engine is running while customizing features.

# Items to initialize

**The following item must be initialized for normal system operation after such cases as the battery being reconnected, or maintenance is performed on the vehicle.**

| Item | When to initialize | Reference |
|---|---|---|
| Power back door (if equipped) | • After reconnecting or changing the battery<br>• After changing a fuse | P. 60 |
| Tire pressure warning system (if equipped) | • When rotating the tires<br>• When changing tire pressure (such as when changing traveling speed, load weight, etc.)<br>• When changing the tire size | P. 484 |

RX350_270_EE_48D77E.book 635 ページ ２０１４年１月２４日 金曜日 午前１０時４分

# Index

**Abbreviation ..... 636**

**Alphabetical index..... 637**

**What to do if... ..... 650**

For vehicles with a navigation system, refer to the "Navigation System Owner's Manual" for information regarding the equipment listed below.

- Navigation system
- Air conditioning controls
- Windshield wiper de-icer
- Lexus parking assist monitor
- Audio/video system
- Rear window and outside rear view mirror defogging

# Abbreviation/Acronym list

| ABBREVIATIONS | MEANING |
|---|---|
| 2WD | 2 Wheel Drive |
| 4WD | 4 Wheel Drive |
| A/C | Air Conditioning |
| ABS | Anti-lock Brake System |
| AFS | Adaptive Front-lighting System |
| AI-SHIFT | Artificial Intelligence Shift control |
| AWD | All Wheel Drive |
| CRS | Child Restraint System |
| DISP | Display |
| ECO | Economy/Ecology |
| ECT | Electronic Controlled Transmission |
| ELR | Emergency Locking Retractor |
| EPS | Electric Power Steering |
| GVM | Gross Vehicle Mass |
| LED | Light Emitting Diode |
| MPAC | Maximum Permissible Axle Capacity |
| PCS | Pre-Crash Safety system |
| PWR | Power |
| SRS | Supplemental Restraint System |
| TRC | Traction Control |
| VDIM | Vehicle Dynamics Integrated Management |
| VIN | Vehicle Identification Number |
| VSC | Vehicle Stability Control |

# Alphabetical index


A

A/C*
- Air conditioning filter....499
- Automatic air conditioning system*....314

ABS....271

ACCESSORY mode....180

Active torque control
- 4WD mode....271

Adaptive front lighting system....219

AFS....219

Air conditioning filter....499

Air conditioning system*
- Air conditioning filter....499
- Automatic air conditioning system*....314

Airbags
- Airbag manual on/off system....163
- Airbag operating conditions....133
- Airbag precautions for your child....137
- Airbag warning light....544
- Curtain shield airbag operating conditions....134
- Curtain shield airbag precautions....137
- General airbag precautions....137
- Locations of airbags....131
- Modification and disposal of airbags....141
- Proper driving posture....129, 137
- Side airbag operating conditions....134
- Side airbag precautions....137
- SRS airbags....131

Alarm....122

All-wheel drive lock switch....277

Antenna....329

Anti-lock brake system....271

Armrest....441

Assist grips....443

Audio input....379

Audio system*
- Antenna....329
- Audio input....379
- AUX port....379
- Bluetooth® audio system....361
- CD player/changer....330
- Hands-free system for mobile phone....384
- iPod....344
- MP3/WMA disc....337
- Optimal use....377
- Portable audio device....379
- Radio....326
- Steering wheel audio switch....381
- USB memory....353
- USB port....344, 353

Automatic air conditioning system*
- Air conditioning filter....499
- Air conditioning system*....314

Automatic headlight leveling system....220


*: For vehicles with a navigation system, refer to the “Navigation System Owner’s Manual”.

Automatic light control system ..... 217
Automatic transmission
Automatic transmission ..... 186
If the shift lever cannot be shifted from P ..... 589
S mode ..... 189
AUX port ..... 379
Auxiliary boxes ..... 428, 446

B
Back door
Back door ..... 60
Wireless remote control ..... 53
Back-up lights
Replacing light bulbs ..... 516
Wattage ..... 619
Battery
Checking ..... 479
If the vehicle has a discharged battery ..... 594
Preparing and checking before winter ..... 296
Bluetooth® audio* ..... 361
Bluetooth® phone* ..... 391
Bottle holders ..... 422
Brake
Emergency brake signal ..... 272
Fluid ..... 616
Parking brake ..... 194
Brake assist ..... 271
Break-in tips ..... 170

C
Card key ..... 26
Care
Exterior ..... 452
Interior ..... 455
Seat belts ..... 456
Cargo hooks ..... 446
CD changer
CD ..... 330
MP3 disc ..... 337
WMA disc ..... 337
CD player ..... 330
Chains ..... 296
Child restraint system
Baby seats, definition ..... 142
Baby seats, installation ..... 152
Child seats, definition ..... 142
Child seats, installation ..... 152
Installing CRS with ISOFIX rigid anchor ..... 157
Installing CRS with seat belts ..... 153
Installing CRS with top straps ..... 158
Junior seats, definition ..... 142
Junior seats, installation ..... 152

Child safety
Airbag precautions....137
Back door precautions....66
Child restraint system....142
Child-protectors....57
How your child should wear the seat belt....91
Installing child restraints....152
Moon roof precautions....107
Power window lock switch....101
Power window precautions....103
Removed electronic key battery precautions....503
Seat belt precautions....92
Seat heater precautions....440
Battery precautions....481, 594
Child-protectors....57
Cleaning
Exterior....452
Interior....455
Seat belts....456
Clock*....432
Coat hooks....442
Coin holder....427
Condenser....478
Console box....426
Coolant
Engine coolant....477
Cooling system
Engine overheating....598
Cornering assist sensors....248
Cruise control
Cruise control....230
Dynamic radar cruise control....234
Cup holders....423
Curtain shield airbags....131
Customizable features....622

D

Daytime running light system....220
Defogger*
Rear window....321
Side mirror....321
Dimensions....606
Display
Multi-information display....203
Trip information....206
Warning message....552
Do-it-yourself maintenance....461
Door courtesy lights
Door courtesy lights....417
Wattage....619
Door lock
Back door....60
Side door....56
Wireless remote control....53
Door pockets....422

*: For vehicles with a navigation system, refer to the “Navigation System Owner’s Manual”.

Doors
Back door....60
Door lock....31, 53, 56
Door windows....101
Double locking system....121
Power back door....60
Side door....56
Side mirrors....98
Driver's seat belt reminder light....546
Driving
Break-in tips....170
Correct posture....129
Procedures....168
Utility vehicle precautions....289
Winter driving tips....296
Driving position memory....81

E

Electric power steering....271
Electric sunshade....108
Electronic features control....203
Electronic key
If the electronic key does not operate properly....591
Electronic sunshade....108
Electronically modulated air suspension....256
Emergency brake signal....272
Emergency flashers
Switch....532
Emergency, in case of
If a warning buzzer sounds....543
If a warning light turns on....543
If a warning message is displayed....552
If the back door opener is inoperative....65
If the electronic key does not operate properly....591
If the engine will not start....587
If the shift lever cannot be shifted from "P"....589
If the vehicle has a discharged battery....594
If you have a flat tire....572
If you lose your keys....590
If you think something is wrong....541
If your vehicle becomes stuck....601
If your vehicle has to be stopped in an emergency....603
If your vehicle needs to be towed....533
If your vehicle overheats....598
Engine
Accessory mode....180
Compartment....468
Engine switch....180
Hood....465
How to start the engine....180
Identification number....607
If the engine will not start....587
Ignition switch....180
Overheating....598

Engine compartment cover ..... 470
Engine coolant
Capacity ..... 613
Checking ..... 477
Preparing and checking before winter ..... 296
Engine oil
Capacity ..... 610
Checking ..... 472
Preparing and checking before winter ..... 296
Engine switch ..... 180
EPS ..... 271

F
Floor mat ..... 444
Fluid
Washer ..... 482
Fog lights
Replacing light bulbs ..... 516
Switch ..... 222
Wattage ..... 619
Footwell light ..... 417
Front fog lights
Replacing light bulbs ..... 516
Switch ..... 222
Wattage ..... 619
Front passenger's seat belt reminder light ..... 546
Front position lights
Replacing light bulbs ..... 516
Switch ..... 217
Front seats
Adjustment ..... 73
Driving position memory ..... 81
Flattening seatbacks ..... 74
Front turn signal lights
Replacing light bulbs ..... 516
Wattage ..... 619
Fuel
Capacity ..... 609
Fuel gauge ..... 196
Fuel pump shut off system ..... 542
Information ..... 620
Refueling ..... 110
Type ..... 609
Fuel door ..... 110
Fuel filler door ..... 110
Fuel pump shut off system ..... 542
Fuses ..... 504

G
Gauges ..... 196
Glove box ..... 421

H
Hands-free system for mobile phone* ..... 391
Hazard lights
Switch ..... 532
Head restraints
Adjusting ..... 87
Headlight cleaner ..... 229

*: For vehicles with a navigation system, refer to the “Navigation System Owner’s Manual”.

Headlights
Discharge headlight precautions 530
Replacing light bulbs 516
Switch 217
Wattage 619
Head-up display
Display contrast adjustment switch 212
Display position adjustment switch 212
Head-up display main switch 212
Heaters
Seat heaters 439
Side mirror* 321
Steering wheel 437
Height control
Electronically modulated air suspension 256
Hill-start assist control 271
Hood 465
Hooks
Cargo 446
Coat 442
Horn 195
HUD
Display contrast adjustment switch 212
Display position adjustment switch 212
Head-up display main switch 212

I
Identification
Engine 607
Vehicle 607
Ignition switch 180
Illuminated entry system 417
Immobilizer system 115
Indicator lights 198
Initialization
Items to initialize 633
Inside rear view mirror 96
Instrument panel light control buttons 197
Interior lights
Interior lights 417
Switch 418
Wattage 619
iPod* 344

J
Jack
Positioning a floor jack 466
Vehicle-equipped jack 572
Jack handle 572

K
Keyless entry ..... 53
Keys
Electronic key ..... 26
Engine switch ..... 180
If the electronic key does not operate properly ..... 591
If you lose your keys ..... 590
Key number ..... 26
Keyless entry ..... 53
Keys ..... 26
Mechanical key ..... 26
Wireless remote control key ..... 53

L
Lexus parking assist monitor*
Licence plate lights
Wattage ..... 619
Light bulbs
Replacing ..... 516
Wattage ..... 619
Lights
Door courtesy lights ..... 417
Emergency flasher switch ..... 532
Fog light switch ..... 222
Hazard light switch ..... 532
Headlights switch ..... 217
Interior light switch ..... 418
Luggage compartment light ..... 63
Outer foot lights ..... 417
Overhead courtesy light ..... 418
Personal light switch ..... 418
Replacing light bulbs ..... 516
Scuff lights ..... 417
Shift lever light ..... 417
Turn signal lever ..... 193
Vanity lights ..... 431
Wattage ..... 619
Lock steering column ..... 183
Luggage compartment lights
Switch ..... 63
Wattage ..... 619
Luggage cover ..... 448

M
Maintenance
Do-it-yourself maintenance ..... 461
Maintenance data ..... 606
Maintenance requirements ..... 458
Meter
Instrument panel light control ..... 197
Meters ..... 196
Mirrors
Inside rear view mirror ..... 96
Side mirror heaters* ..... 321
Side mirrors ..... 98
Vanity mirrors ..... 431
Moon roof ..... 104
MP3 disc* ..... 337
Multi-display light control ..... 434
Multi-information display
Displays item ..... 206
Switches ..... 203
Trip information ..... 206
Window close suggestion mode ..... 208

*: For vehicles with a navigation system, refer to the “Navigation System Owner’s Manual”.

O
Odometer ... 196
Oil
Engine oil ... 472
Opener
Back door ... 60
Fuel filler door ... 110
Hood ... 465
Outer foot lights
Outer foot lights ... 417
Wattage ... 619
Outside rear view mirrors
Adjusting and folding ... 98
Mirror position memory ... 81
Outside temperature display* ... 433
Overhead courtesy lights
Overhead courtesy lights ... 417
Wattage ... 619
Overheating, Engine ... 598

P
Paddle shift switches ... 186
Parking assist sensors ... 248
Parking brake ... 194
Parking lights
Replacing light bulbs ... 516
Switch ... 217
Wattage ... 619
PCS
Function ... 280
Pre-crash braking off switch ... 281
Warning light ... 544
Personal lights
Switch ... 418
Phone* ... 391
Power back door ... 60
Power easy access system ... 84
Power outlet ... 435
Power windows ... 101
Pre-crash safety system
Function ... 280
Pre-crash braking off switch ... 281
Warning light ... 544

R
Radar cruise control ... 234
Radiator ... 478
Radio* ... 326
RDS ... 327
Rear fog lights
Replacing light bulbs ... 516
Switch ... 222
Wattage ... 619
Rear seat
Adjustment ... 77
Folding down ... 77
Rear seat entertainment system*
Rear turn signal lights
Replacing light bulbs ... 516
Wattage ... 619
Rear view monitor system ... 263
Rear window defogger* ... 321
Rear window wiper ... 227
Remote Touch*

Replacing
Electronic key battery....501
Fuses....504
Light bulbs....516
Tires....572
Wireless remote control battery....501
Roof luggage carrier....295

S

Scuff lights....417
Seat belts
Adjusting the seat belt....89
Child restraint system installation....152
Cleaning and maintaining the seat belts....456
Emergency locking retractor....91
How to wear your seat belt....89
How your child should wear the seat belt....91
Pregnant women, proper seat belt use....92
Reminder light....546
Seat belt pretensioners....92
Seat heaters....439
Seat position memory....81
Seat ventilators....439
Seats
Adjustment....73, 77
Adjustment precautions....76, 79
Child seats/child restraint system installation....152
Cleaning....455
Flattening seatbacks....74
Head restraint....87
Power easy access system....84
Properly sitting in the seat....129
Seat heaters....439
Seat position memory....81
Seat ventilators....439
Service reminder indicators....198
Shift lever
Automatic transmission....186
If the shift lever cannot be shifted from "P"....589
Shift lever light....417
Shift lock system....589
Side airbags....131
Side mirror
Adjusting and folding....98
Mirror position memory....81
Side monitor*
Side turn signal lights
Wattage....619

*: For vehicles with a navigation system, refer to the "Navigation System Owner's Manual".

Smart entry & start system
Entry function....31
Starting the engine....180
Spare tire
Inflation pressure....617
Storage location....572
Spark plug....613
Specifications....606
Speedometer....196
Steering
Column lock release....183
Steering wheel
Adjustment....94
Audio switches*....381
Heated steering wheel....437
Power easy access system....84
Steering wheel position memory....81
Storage feature....420
Stuck vehicle
If your vehicle becomes stuck....601
Sun visors....430
Sunshade
Roof....105, 108
Switch
Airbag manual on/off switch....163
Display contrast adjustment switch....212
Display position adjustment switch....212
ECT SNOW switch....188
Emergency flasher switch....532
Engine switch....180
ENTER switch....203
Fog light switch....222
Hazard light switch....532
Head-up display main switch....212
Heated steering wheel switch....437
Ignition switch....180
Light switches....217
Menu switch....203
Paddle shift switches....186
Power back door switch....60
Power door lock switch....56
Power window switch....101
Pre-crash braking off switch....281
Rear window wiper and washer switch....227
Window lock switch....101
Wiper and washer switch....223

T

Tachometer
- Tachometer ... 196

Tail lights
- Replacing light bulbs ... 516
- Switch ... 217
- Wattage ... 619

Talk switch* ... 392

Telephone switch* ... 392

Telephone* ... 391

Theft deterrent system
- Alarm ... 122
- Double locking system ... 121
- Immobilizer system ... 115

Tire inflation pressure ... 495

Tires
- Chains ... 296
- Checking ... 483
- If you have a flat tire ... 572
- Inflation pressure ... 495
- Inflation pressure sensor ... 484
- Replacing ... 572
- Rotating tires ... 483
- Size ... 617
- Snow tires ... 296
- Spare tire ... 572
- Tire pressure warning system ... 483, 546

Tools ... 572

Towing
- Emergency towing ... 536
- Trailer towing ... 300, 311

Traction control ... 271

Trailer towing ... 300, 311

TRC ... 271

Trip information display ... 206

Trip meter ... 196

Turn signal lights
- Replacing light bulbs ... 516
- Switch ... 193
- Wattage ... 619

U

Under tray ... 429

USB port ... 344, 353

V

Vanity lights
- Vanity lights ... 431
- Wattage ... 619

Vanity mirrors ... 431

VDIM ... 272

Vehicle dynamics integrated management ... 272

Vehicle identification number ... 607

Vehicle stability control ... 271

VSC ... 271

W

Warning buzzers
- Brake system ... 543
- Key reminder ... 563
- Open door ... 546
- Open moon roof reminder ... 557
- Pre-crash braking ... 280
- Seat belt reminder ... 546

*: For vehicles with a navigation system, refer to the “Navigation System Owner’s Manual”.

Warning lights
Anti-lock brake system....544
Automatic headlight leveling system....220
Brake assist system....544
Brake system....543, 544
Charging system....543
Electric power steering....544
Electronic engine control system....544
Low fuel level....546
Low tire pressure....546
Malfunction indicator lamp....544
Master warning light....546
Open door....546
Pre-crash safety system....544
Pretensioners....544
Seat belt reminder light....546
SRS airbags....544
Tire pressure....546

Warning messages
Adaptive front lighting system....554
Anti-lock brake system....554
Automatic transmission fluid....557
AWD system....553, 554, 557
Brake lamp system....554
Brake system....552
Dynamic radar cruise control system....554, 557
Electric power steering....554
Electronically modulated air suspension....554
Engine oil level....557
Engine oil pressure....553
Engine overheat....557
Headlight leveling....554
Hood....557
Lexus parking assist-sensor....554, 557
Light reminder....557
Low fuel....557
Moon roof....557
Open door....557
Parking brake....557
Pre-crash safety system....554, 557
Smart entry & start system....563
SRS airbags....554
Steering lock....554
Washer fluid....557

Washer
Checking ..... 482
Preparing and checking before winter ..... 296
Switch ..... 223
Washing and waxing ..... 452
Weight ..... 606
Wheels ..... 497
Window glasses ..... 101
Window lock switch ..... 101
Windows
Power windows ..... 101
Rear window defogger* ..... 321
Washer ..... 223
Window close suggestion mode ..... 208
Windshield wiper de-icer* ..... 322
Windshield wipers ..... 223
Wireless remote control key
Replacing the battery ..... 501
Wireless remote control ..... 53
WMA disc* ..... 337

*: For vehicles with a navigation system, refer to the “Navigation System Owner’s Manual”.

# What to do if...

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
|  | A tire punctures | P. 572 | If you have a flat tire |
|  | The engine does not start | P. 587 | If the engine will not start |
| | | P. 115 | Engine immobilizer system |
| | | P. 594 | If the vehicle battery is discharged |
|  | The shift lever cannot be moved out | P. 589 | If the shift lever cannot be shifted from P |
|  | The engine coolant temperature gauge enters the red zone | P. 598 | If your vehicle overheats |
|  | Steam can be seen coming from under the hood | | |
|  | The key is lost | P. 590 | If you lose your keys |
|  | The battery runs out | P. 594 | If the vehicle battery is discharged |
|  | The doors cannot be locked | P. 56 | Side doors |
| | | P. 60 | Back door |
|  | The horn begins to sound | P. 122 | Alarm |
|  | The vehicle is stuck in mud or sand | P. 601 | If the vehicle becomes stuck |

A warning light or indicator light comes on

P. 543 If a warning light turns on or a warning buzzer sounds...

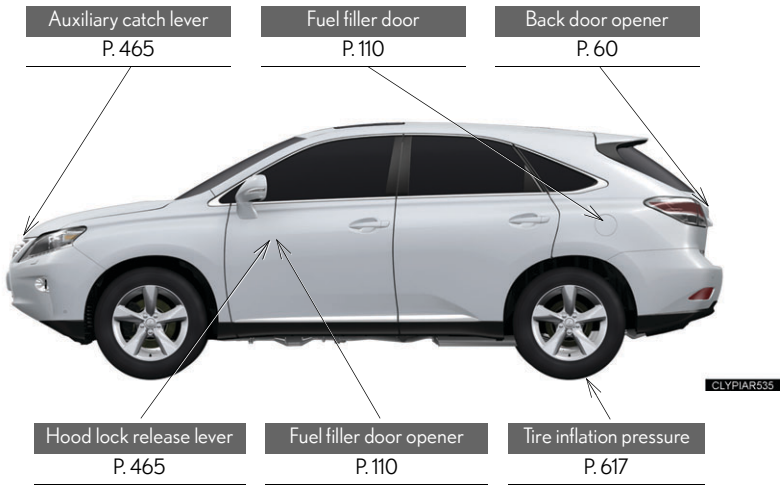



■Warning lights

| | |
|---|---|
| ABS warning light P. 544 | Driver's seat belt reminder light (on the instrument panel) P. 546 |
| Brake system warning light P. 543 | Front passenger's seat belt reminder light (on the center panel) P. 546 |
| Low fuel level warning light P. 546 | Master warning light P. 546 |
| SRS warning light P. 544 | Electric power steering system warning light P. 544 |
| Open door warning light P. 546 | Pre-crash safety system warning light* P. 544 |
| Malfunction indicator lamp P. 544 | Tire pressure warning light P. 546 |
| "AFS OFF" indicator* P. 544 | Slip indicator P. 544 |
| Charging system warning light P. 543 | |

*: The light flashes to indicate a malfunction.

## GAS STATION INFORMATION




| | |
|---|---|
| Fuel tank capacity (Reference) | 72 L (19.0 gal., 15.8 Imp. gal.) |
| Fuel type | EU area:<br>Unleaded gasoline conforming to European standard EN228 only<br>Except EU area:<br>Unleaded gasoline only　P. 609 |
| Cold tire inflation pressure | P. 617 |
| Engine oil capacity (Drain and refill — reference) | P. 610 |
| Engine oil type | “Toyota Genuine Motor Oil” or equivalent　P. 610 |